Quality Assurance Project Plan
Huron River – Flat Rock-Huroc Dam Removal Feasibility Study

Grantee: Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority

Funding Source: NA22NMF4630144

QAPP Prepared By:

Jason Bibby, Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority
Tyler Mitchell, Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority
Jeff Tyson, Great Lakes Fishery Commission
Bruce Hammond, Engineering Representative for the City of Flat Rock
Janeen McDermott, GEI Project and QA Manager
Brendan Cousino, LimnoTech Project and QA Manager
Fredd Ziobron, MCA Project and QA Manager

Submitted: June 2, 2023
Revised and Re-Submitted: June 12, 2023

The signatories have reviewed and approved the Quality Assurance Project Plan for HCMA's project titled Flat Rock-Huroc Dam Removal Feasibility Study:

Jason Bibby, HCMA Project and QA Manager	6/12/2023 Date
Tyler Mitchell, HCMA QA Manager	6/14/2023 Date
Jeff Tyson, GLFC QA Manager	6/13/2023 Date
Bruce Hammond, City of Flat Rock Rep QA Manager	6/12/2023 Date
Janeen McDermott, GEI Project and QA Manager	6/12/2023 Date

6/13/2023

Brendan Cousino, LimnoTech Project and QA Manager | Date

6/14/2023

Fredd Ziobron, MCA Project and QA Manager | Date

HEATLIE.TERRY.S.1230473559 Digitally signed by HEATLIE.TERRY.S.1230473559 Date: 2023.06.12 16:00:00 -04'00'

Terry Heatlie, NOAA Technical Monitor | Date

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDICES

1 QAPP Organization and Management

1.1 Distribution List

This Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) will be distributed and implemented by all project partners listed in **Table 1**. The QAPP will also be placed in a field binder and made available to all field staff involved in the project. Digital files of the data and reports will be compiled and made available to people and organizations upon request.

Table 1. Contact Information for Key Personnel

Name	Responsibility	Address	Phone/e-mail
Jason Bibby, HCMA	Project and QA Manager	13000 High Ridge Drive Brighton, MI 48114-9058	jason.bibby@metroparks.com 734-646-1814
Tyler Mitchell, HCMA	QA Manager	13000 High Ridge Drive Brighton, MI 48114-9058	tyler.mitchell@metroparks.com 810-494-6019
Jeff Tyson, GLFC	QA Manager	2200 Commonwealth Blvd., Suite 100, Ann Arbor, MI, 48105	jtyson@glfc.org 734-649-2033
Bruce Hammond, City of Flat Rock Rep	QA Manager	25500 Gibraltar Rd. Flat Rock, MI 48134	bhammond@charlesraines.com 734-285-7510
Janeen McDermott, GEI Consultants, Inc	Project and QA Manager	9282 General Drive Suite 180 Plymouth, MI 48170	Jmcdermott@geiconsultants.com 740-243-5403
Brendan Cousino, LimnoTech	Project and QA Manager	501 Avis Dr #1, Ann Arbor, MI 48108	Bcousino@limno.com 734-332-1200
Fredd Ziobron, MCA	Project and QA Manager	45345 Five Mile Rd, Plymouth, MI 48170	fziobron@metroca.net 517-245-3402
Terry Heatlie, NOAA	Technical Monitor	4840 S. State Rd. Ann Arbor MI 48108-9719	Terry.Heatlie@noaa.gov 734-741-2211

1.2 Project/Task Organization

In addition to approving this document, the Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority (HCMA) QA Manager will oversee all aspects of this project including data collection, conceptual dam disposition alternatives development, and public outreach. The HCMA Project Manager and GEI Project Manager will oversee and supervise their respective parts of the project. Data collected for this project by LimnoTech, Metro Consulting Associates, and GEI Consultants, Inc. (GEI) including but not limited to, wetland delineation, topographic and bathymetric surveys, hydraulic modeling, sediment sampling for contaminants, and archaeological survey is subject to review by the HCMA Quality Assurance Manager / Project Manager. Refer to section **3.2** (Data Review, Validation, & Verification) for further discussion.

HCMA will serve as the grant administrators for this project. GEI will complete the wetland delineation, archaeological survey, hydraulic modeling, and development/assessment of alternatives. LimnoTech will complete sediment data collection, sampling, and bathymetric surveys. Metro Consulting Associates will complete the topographic survey and real estate evaluation. NOAA is providing funding, QAPP review, QA/AC, and technical input to the project. Roles of key personnel are provided in **Table 2**.

Table 2. Roles and Key Personnel

Name	Organization	Role
Jason Bibby	HCMA	Project and QA Manager
Tyler Mitchell	HCMA	QA Manager
Jeff Tyson	GLFC	QA Manager
Bruce Hammond	City of Flat Rock Rep	QA Manager
Janeen McDermott	GEI Consultants, Inc	Project and QA Manager
Brendan Cousino	LimnoTech	Project and QA Manager
Fredd Ziobron	MCA	Project and QA Manager
Terry Heatlie	NOAA	Technical Monitor

Project # NA22NMF4630144 **Organizational Chart**

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Terry Heatlie
Technical Monitor

Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority

Tyler Mitchell
Chief of Natural Resources and Regulatory Compliance

Jason Bibby
System Planner

Great Lakes Fishery Commission

Jeff Tyson
Project Manager and QA Manager

Engineering Rep for City of Flat Rock

Bruce Hammond
Project Manager and QA Manager

GEI Consultants, Inc

Janeen McDermott
Project Manager and QA Manager

LimnoTech

Brendan Cousino
Project Manager and QA Manager

Metro Consulting Associates

Fredd Ziobron
Project Manager and QA Manager

1.3 Problem Definition/Background

The Flat Rock and Huroc Dams are aging dams on the Huron River which currently block fish passage and are a liability to the Huron-Clinton Metropolitan Authority who owns the Flat Rock Dam and the City of Flat Rock, who owns the Huroc Dam.

This project helps address the Great Lakes Restoration Initiative's (GLRI) goal to protect and restore communities of native aquatic and terrestrial species important to the Great Lakes by increasing the connectivity of habitats that support important Great Lakes aquatic species. The first step of the project is to develop a feasibility study that considers alternatives for the Huroc and Flat Rock dams that will allow for fish passage and reconnect important tributary habitat to Great Lakes species while also minimizing the risk of sea lamprey infestation to the extent possible and necessary. The feasibility study will explore multiple options for accomplishing these goals. Goals of the feasibility study include:

- Reduce or remove HCMA's liability associated with the Flat Rock Dam
- Allow for the passage of native species such as lake sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*), walleye (*Sander vitreus*), and white bass (*Morone chrysops*)
- Minimize the risk of sea lamprey infestation to the extent possible and necessary

Other potential goals that will be evaluated during the feasibility study include:

- Uncovering "unique and rare" high gradient bedrock substrate that is inundated by the Flat Rock Reservoir (MDNR, Huron River Assessment, 1995).
- Enhancement of the Huron River Water Trail through the removal of a challenging portage at the Flat Rock Dam. The portage currently requires advance coordination to unlock a gate. Alternatives that allow for small craft passage may enhance the user experience of the water trail.
- Replenishment of sediment and coastal wetlands along Lake Erie and Point Mouillee. These coastal areas provide critical habitat for migratory waterfowl, dissipate energy at the confluence of the Huron River with Lake Erie, and provides recreation opportunities for fishing, bird watching, and waterfowl hunting.
- Increased suitable habitat for federally endangered Snuffbox (*Epioblasma triquetra*) mussels (and their primary host fish Logperch [*Percina caprodes*]) that have been documented in the Huron River a short distance downstream of the project site.

The project goals stated simply, are to maximize passage of native and desirable fish species while minimizing the risk of sea lamprey infestation; allow for small recreational watercraft passage; reduce liability associated with the dams; and, if possible, provide access to the "unique and rare" habitat identified by the Michigan DNR in 1995.

1.4 Project Task/Description

To embark on the first step to achieving the goals discussed in section **1.3** the following 4 major tasks are proposed:

- Review of all existing data and data collection
- Development of dam disposition alternatives
- Evaluation of the challenges and opportunities for each alternative
- Extensive stakeholder and public engagement process

The project will include the review of all existing reports, as-built plan, and data for the dams, adjacent infrastructure, and Huron River in proximity to the project. Additional data collection will be required to further assess the impacts of the proposed alternatives. This data collection will include wetland delineation, topographic and bathymetric surveys, review of adjacent property deeds and riparian rights, depth of refusal measurements of impounded sediment, and preliminary sediment sampling to assess the quality of the sediment behind the dams and downstream. Once all existing data and data collection efforts have been completed, four dam disposition alternatives will be developed that include a ‘no action’ alternative, full dam removal with active restoration, full dam removal with passive restoration, and partial dam removal. The impacts on hydraulics, environmental, ecosystem, public utilities, economic, and restoration costs will be assessed for each alternative to provide the project team with the information needed to make an informed decision for the selection of a preferred alternative that meets the goals of the project. Concurrent with this process, the project team and consultant team will be conducting an extensive public outreach effort to solicit for input from and inform key stakeholders as well as the public about the overall purpose and process of this project. Once alternatives have been developed and a draft feasibility study has been prepared, the project team and consultant team will once again engage key stakeholders and the public to present the information gathered.

Data collection methods are discussed in further detail in Section **2.1**.

1.4.1 Required Regulatory Permits

It is expected that the following permits will be needed for completion of this project:

- Michigan Department of Environment, Great Lakes, and Energy (EGLE) Joint Permit Application for sediment cores

1.4.2 Project Area

The project area is located in the City of Flat Rock in Wayne County, Michigan. The project includes the Flat Rock Dam, Huroc Dam, their associated impoundments, and the reach of the Huron River downstream to Telegraph Road. This project area is approximately 320-acres (Figure 1).

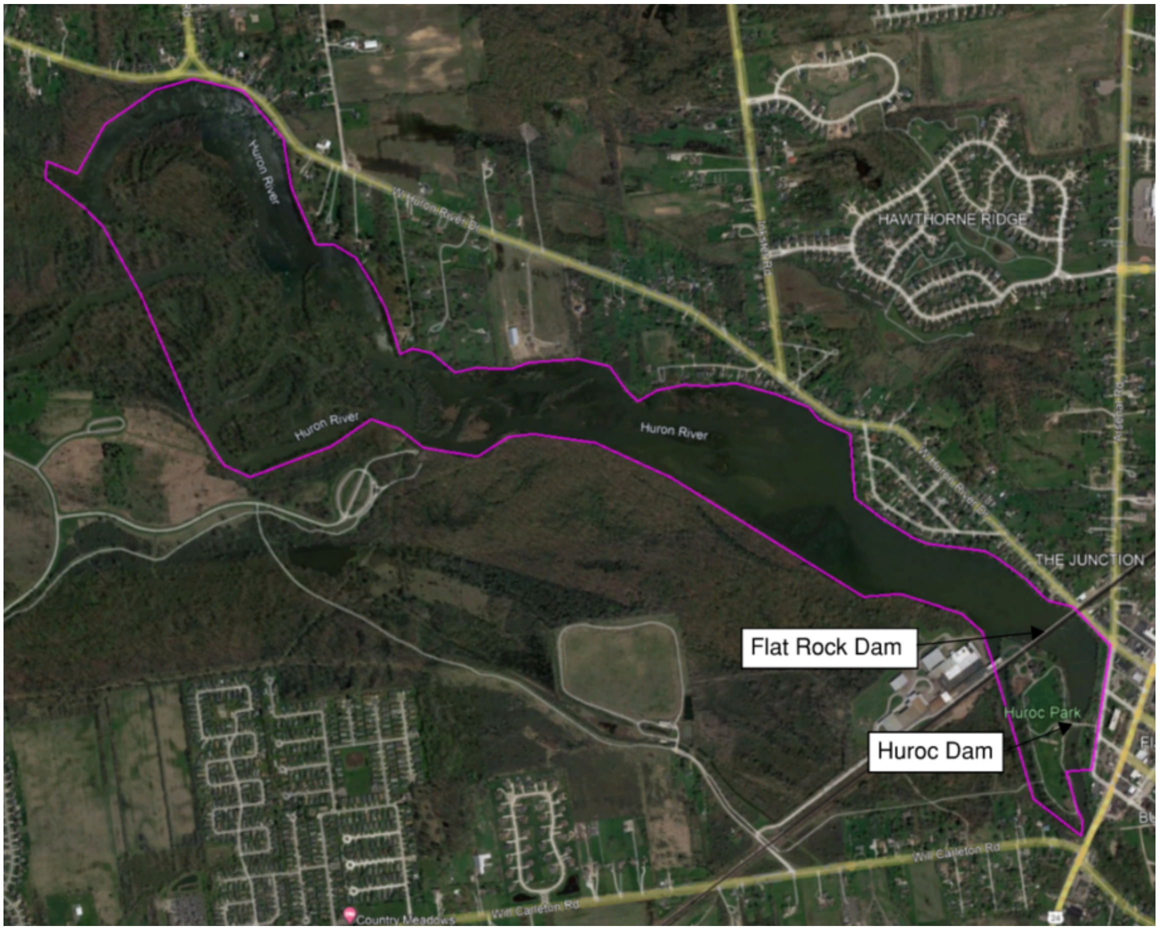


Figure 1. Location Map

1.4.3 Schedule

Table 3. Project Schedule

	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter	5th Quarter	6th Quarter
	Apr-Jun 2023	Jul-Sept 2023	Oct-Dec 2023	Jan-Mar 2024	Apr-Jun 2024
Data Collection and Feasibility Study					
QAPP Development	X				
Topographic and Bathymetric Survey	X	X			
Depth of Refusal Survey	X	X			
Wetland Delineation	X	X			
Sediment Sampling for Contaminants.	X	X			
Feasibility Study: Development of Alternatives		X	X		
Feasibility Study: Assessment of Alternatives			X	X	X

1.5 Training Requirements

Specialized training is required for many of these data quality objectives. The topographic survey will be completed by a subcontractor that holds a Professional Land Surveyor (PLS) license.

All field staff performing wetland delineations will by trained in the use of the USACE Wetland Delineation Manual (1987) and corresponding Northcentral and Northeast Regional Supplement, Version 2.0 (2012). If delineations are not performed by a certified Professional Wetland Scientist (PWS) they will be reviewed by a PWS.

Sediment samples will be collected by personnel with familiarity and experience collecting field samples. Samples will be analyzed by a lab with National Environmental Laboratory Accreditation Conference (NELAC) accreditation.

2 DATA COLLECTION & QUALITY STANDARDS

2.1 Field Data Collection Requirements

Data represented in **Table 4** will be collected to inform the feasibility study, dam removal and restoration design, and provide the necessary information for the project team to select a preferred alternative. Each data type is further detailed within its respective section along with sampling frequency and duplicate number. Data has been classified as informational data since this will be used to inform the project team on existing site conditions for baseline information.

Table 3. Project Data Collection Summary

Data Type	Number of Samples	Number of Sampling Events	Data Classification
Topographic and Bathymetric Surveys	1 survey of Huron River at 100' increments along the length of the impoundment	1	Informational
Depth of Refusal	1 survey of Huron River impounded sediment behind Flat Rock and Huroc Dams	1	Informational
Wetland Delineation	1 survey of designated 320-acre site	1	Informational
Sediment Sampling for Contaminants	10 samples	1	Informational

*Exact restoration area is yet to be defined

2.1.1 Topographic and Bathymetric Survey

A detailed topographic / bathymetric survey of the Flat Rock and Huroc Impoundments and Huron River immediately upstream and downstream of the impoundments will be conducted by MCA (topographic survey) and LimnoTech (bathymetric survey) and combined with existing upland LIDAR (contour) data on-file with Wayne County to create a comprehensive base-map of the project area.

The topographic survey will be collected by drone and ground shot survey points. Survey data will be collected in NAVD 88, State Plane Michigan South coordinate system and the survey area includes Huroc Park, Flat Rock Dam, Huroc Dam, road/railroad bridge immediately downstream of the Flat Rock Dam, Pedestrian Bridge on top of the Huroc Dam and cross section of the Huron River between the dams and approximately 400 feet downstream of the Huroc Dam. Cross sections of the Flat Rock Dam tailrace and cross sections of the Huron River upstream will also be collected. Each cross section will include the top of bank, bottom of bank, centerline of channel (thalweg), and water surface elevation. The specific data metrics that will be captured for the fish passage barrier removal are outlined in **Table 5**.

Table 5. NOAA Tier 1 Monitoring Guidance for Fish Passage Barrier Removal

Passability Metrics	Guidance	Data Collection Method	Documentation
Channel Width	3 channel cross sections: upstream of the dam, downstream of the dam, and across the dam crest	Bathymetry, Topographic Survey, and Record Drawings	Include the average channel width for pre- (existing conditions) and post- (proposed alternatives) implementation
Channel Slopes	Longitudinal profile from just upstream of the influence of the dam to just downstream of its influence	Topographic and Bathymetric Survey	Compare pre- (existing conditions) and post- (proposed alternatives) implementation average channel slopes and identify maximum channel slope on plotted longitudinal profiles
Maximum Jump Height	Identify maximum jump heigh within project reach	Topographic and Bathymetric Survey, and Record Drawings	Identify maximum jump height for pre- (existing conditions) and post- (proposed alternatives) implementation longitudinal profile plots

The invert elevations, dimensions, material type, road surface and general condition of all bridge crossings will also be recorded. Dam crest elevations, top and bottom of concrete walls, and dam apron elevations (if accessible) will also be collected. Additionally, other manmade objects such as fence lines and gates, utilities, edges of roadway/sidewalk, and edge of buildings will be collected. Contours, at one-foot intervals, will be shown throughout the site.

A bathymetric survey of the Huron River will be conducted between Telegraph Road and the Huroc dam, between Flat Rock Dam and Huroc Dam, and upstream of the Flat Rock Dam to approximately two miles upstream. The topographic, bathymetric, and LiDAR survey data will be combined in AutoCAD to produce a project area existing conditions map with one-foot contours throughout.

2.1.2 Depth of Refusal

LimnoTech will be performing a depth of refusal survey within the impoundments behind the Flat Rock and Huroc Dams.

Depth of refusal survey locations will be laid out in cross sections spaced at approximately 100 to 200 feet, and at locations of changing channel geomorphology. Probing will be conducted at a minimum of five locations per cross section by boat using customized refusal probes. These data will be used to estimate pre-dam channel and floodplain surfaces when possible, and to aid in development of an accurate estimate of the accumulated sediment volume, and the spatial distribution of the sediment deposition throughout the impoundments.

This survey will be performed using a probing rod, with demarcations at 0.1 foot intervals for measurement of the water depth, and the depth to the refusal surface. The depth of refusal survey will be performed by a 2-person crew from a flat-bottom jon boat, and will follow the following procedures for data collection:

1. Initialize GPS position tracking
    a. Ensure GPS unit is as close as possible to the actual point of poling
    b. Begin logging points when in position for poling (multiple points will cancel out any error associated with a single position point)

2. Determine water depth and record in GPS and/or field log book
    a. Insert tile probe vertically into the water column
    b. Note tile probe depth mark at the water surface when the probe contacts the sediment/water interface
    c. Note any observations regarding suspected sediment composition based on sound (no sound suggests silt, infer sand or gravel from surface roughness and sound of the probe from the sediment/water interface)

3. Determine depth of refusal and record in GPS and/or field log book
    a. Insert tile probe past the sediment-water interface using “reasonable human force” until refusal.
    b. Note tile probe depth mark at the water surface

4. Stop GPS position tracking after collection of at least 10 points and record all latitude/longitude coordinates in GPS and/or field log book prior to moving to the next poling location

2.1.3 Wetland Delineation

GEI wetland ecologists will perform on-site investigations to delineate wetlands according to criteria defined by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual

(Version 2.0): Northcentral and Northeast Regions (January 2012) (Appendix A and B). This wetland delineation protocol is the method accepted by EGLE. Since the project areas are located on private property, GEI will not flag wetland boundaries but will locate wetland boundaries using Global Positioning System (GPS). GPS mapping will be conducted with the ArcGIS Collector application and a Trimble R1 GNSS receiver to facilitate sub-meter accuracy and will be completed concurrently with the wetland delineations. The adjacent habitats will be surveyed for invasive plant species and locations marked using GPS and ArcGIS Collector to record species, area, and density of plants.

2.1.4 Sediment Sampling for Contaminants

LimnoTech will collect ten (10) samples of the sediment that has been accumulated within the impoundments upstream of the Flat Rock and Huroc Dams.

The locations of the proposed sediment cores will be determined following the completion of the topographic and bathymetric survey as described in section 2.1.1 and the Depth of Refusal survey as described in section 2.1.2. Those will be used to determine the locations within the impoundments where soft sediments have deposited and allow for planning the proposed sampling locations to characterize the areas where the majority of the impounded sediment has collected. A map will be prepared with the proposed sampling locations, and the coordinates for each proposed sampling location will be provided to the sampling crew. The sampling crew will navigate to each proposed sampling location using an on-board global positioning system (GPS) with sub-meter accuracy. The sampling crew will check the GPS unit for accuracy daily prior to use.

Within the impoundments, sediment cores will be collected via vibracore technology to refusal depth at each location. The vibration created by the vibracore head displaces the sediment around the outside of the core sampler allowing the core tube to penetrate the sediment column. The estimated depth of core penetration into the sediments will be measured and recorded. Care will be taken when removing the core tube in order to prevent the loss of collected sediment. Once the core bottom reaches the water surface, the bottom of the core will be securely capped and taped if necessary. Once the core tube is removed from the vibracore head, the top of the core tube will be secured in the same manner.

Once the cores have been advanced to refusal (hardpan) the following information will be documented:

- Estimated depth of core penetration into the sediment
- Visual characterization
- Core lengths
- Sediment recoveries

Boring logs be prepared based on the visual characterization of the material in the core sample.

At each sampling location, surface water depth will be measured to the nearest tenth of a foot prior to sediment sampling by using a weighted measuring tape or other rigid measuring device.

LimnoTech personnel observing sample collection will be responsible to prepare documentation of the sample collection, which will be required to include, but not be limited to, the following items:

- Location of sampling point with location identification number
- Geographic coordinates of sampling point in the World Geodetic System 1984
- Date and military time of collection
- Names of the field personnel conducting sampling or measurement
- Water depth
- Sediment depth
- Sediment recovery
- Type of sample or measurement
- Any field measurements taken
- Field observations, especially any notice of stained sediment
- References, such as maps or photographs of the sampling site
- Any procedural steps taken that deviate from those presented in the QAPP.

Photographs may be periodically taken onsite to document field events with a digital camera. Photographs will be periodically downloaded for storage and/or printing. Photographs will be dated and photologs will be developed.

Sediment sample processing will be performed on the shore immediately following the collection of each sample. Modified Level D PPE (i.e., Tyvek, safety glasses, work boots, and nitrile gloves) will be worn during the core processing. The sample processing area will be set up for supporting and cutting the core tubes, homogenizing (i.e., mixing) the sediment, and placing it into laboratory supplied sample containers. Sample container labeling, lithology logging, and compositing will also be performed.

The collected cores will be split lengthwise for examination and sampling. This will be performed with a portable cutting tool or knife, cutting into the core liner wall with care to minimize disturbance of the sediment core itself. Once open, the sediment core will be digitally photographed and lithologically logged from the top of the core (sediment surface) to the bottom (recovery depth), representing a vertical profile of the soft sediment. A composite sample will be created from each core by subsampling sediment from each foot of the core. The composite sample will be stored in an ice filled cooler, and then will be submitted to the laboratory for analysis. The number of samples collected will be tracked in order to ensure the number of samples equals the 10 proposed samples within the project area (not including QA/QC).

Each core will be removed individually from the core and placed in a decontaminated stainless steel bowl or aluminum pan and homogenized by mixing with a blade or spoon. Aliquots of the homogenized material will then be containerized and preserved and submitted to the laboratory for analysis with appropriate chain-of-custody procedures observed. Excessive aquatic vegetation, debris, and biota will be removed from the samples before the samples are placed in appropriate containers. Equipment that is re-used (e.g., cutting tools, broad knife, spatula, bowls, etc.) will be decontaminated in accordance with standard decontamination procedure.

A separate composite sample will be prepared to be sent to a geotechnical laboratory for physical characterization of the grain sizes present in the sediment sample.

QA samples will include 10 percent field duplicates (1 total for this project) and 5 percent MS/MSDs for the core samples submitted for chemical analysis.

2.2 Quality Objectives & Criteria for Measurement Data

Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC) guidelines and rules have been established to ensure the reliability and validity of sample collection activities. Compliance with QA/QC is monitored by the QA Manager. The objectives are to:

- Ensure all procedures are documented, including any changes in administrative and/or technical procedures
- Ensure all field procedures are conducted according to sound scientific principles and have been validated
- Ensure all equipment is clean and properly functioning
- Monitor performance of the sample collection procedures by a systematic inspection program and provide for corrective action if necessary; and
- Ensure all data are properly recorded and archived.

Internal quality control procedures will be conducted by field and laboratory audits and the analysis of duplicate samples.

2.2.1 Project Objectives and Limits

Project data will be collected through topographic and bathymetric surveys, wetland delineation, depth of refusal measurements, and sediment sampling for contaminants. Observations in this project will meet the quality assurance objectives outlined in this section. Bias, accuracy, precision, completeness, representativeness, comparability, and detection limits will be used to assess data quality.

2.2.2 Bias

Bias is any conscious or unconscious deviation from the truth that may result in inaccurate data. Data collection will be completed by GEI, LRE, and Progressive AE and potential sources of bias are summarized in **Table 6**.

Table 6. Potential Project Bias

Bias Category	Potential Sources of Bias	Best Practices
Sampling	Location - sediment samples,	All sampling locations will be randomly selected or spaced equally along transects.
	Timing - wetland delineation	All surveys will be conducted during the appropriate seasonal timeframes (section **1.4.2**)
	Sampling size - wetland delineation	Follow protocols to obtain representative samples (section **2.1**)
Observational	Data collection - all qualitative surveys	Alternate staff in different data collection roles
Equipment	Instrument error - all quantitative surveys	Calibrate equipment prior to uset and follow minimum accuracy guidelines (section **2.3**), use the same equipment to the greatest extent possible

Bias in data collection will be minimized by strictly following methods established in protocols and by measures described in the QAPP.

2.2.3 Accuracy

Accuracy refers to how close a measurement is to the true or accepted value. Data collection for topographic and bathymetric surveys, wetland delineation studies, and sediment sampling will be completed by qualified field personnel who will review and verify all recorded data. The process of peer review will ensure accurate observations and minimize human error or bias in reporting. Additionally, the QA manager will provide supplemental review of field observations.

A latency test will be run at the beginning and end of each survey to calculate any differences in position and depth. This should be very minimal due to the shallow nature of the area and the slower speeds of the survey. The data will be processed using HYPACK and exported to AutoCAD to create the job specific bathymetric maps (plan view) and cross sections.

Sediment and water samples will be analyzed by Trace Analytical Laboratories (Trace) in Muskegon, MI. Trace is nationally accredited and certified by EGLE to complete the proposed chemical analysis.

2.2.4 Precision
Precision is the degree of agreement between two or more measurements. Duplicate samples will be used to determine precision for environmental conditions. The relative percent difference (RPD) for each pair of duplicate measurements will be calculated as follows:

$$RPD = (C_s - C_d)/[0.5\times(C_s + C_d)] \times 100,$$

where C_s is the measured variable of the sample (e.g., water temperature), and C_d is the duplicate measurement of the same variable. Duplicates will be measured for each sampling reach. Data quality objectives are given in Table 4.

2.2.5 Completeness
Following a QA review of all collected and analyzed data, data completeness will be assessed by dividing the number of measurements judged valid by the number of total measurements performed. The data quality objective for completeness for each sampling event is 90%. If the program does not meet this standard, Project QA Managers will consult to determine the main causes of data invalidation and develop a course of action to improve the completeness of future sampling events.

2.2.6 Representativeness
Representativeness is the degree to which data accurately and precisely represent a characteristic of a population, variation at a sampling point, or an environmental condition. The proper design of the sampling program and adherence to sampling protocols ensure representativeness. Representativeness of field observations will be satisfied by following the QAPP design and using proper sampling techniques. Field duplicates also will assist in determining representativeness.

2.2.7 Comparability
Comparability is a measure of the confidence with which one set of observations can be compared with another. This is important for comparing between sampling locations and comparing data over time. To ensure data comparability, GEI, LRE, and Progressive AE will follow the same sample collection methods and use the same units of reporting. Every effort will be made to collect data under similar seasonal conditions in order to observe similar characteristics in fish, wetlands, bank erosion, and water quality.

Table 7. Qualitative Data Quality Objectives Summary

Parameter	Precision (RPD)*	Accuracy	Completeness
Topographic/Bathymetric Survey	Within 2 standard deviations of mean	±0.5 ft.	90%
Depth of Refusal	Within 2 standard deviations of mean	±0.5 ft.	90%
Wetland Delineation	n/a	95% correctly identified plants	90%
Sediment Sampling	n/a	n/a	90%

*EPA QAPP guidance provides that a max RPD of 20 may be appropriate for sampling

2.3 Instrument/Equipment Testing, Inspection, Calibration, & Maintenance

All equipment will be inspected, calibrated, and tested each day prior to use in the field. Field equipment will be maintained according to manufacturer's specifications and steps will be taken to fix any problems that are noted. If any equipment is beyond repair, replacement equipment will be used. Spare batteries for all equipment are to be available if needed. All maintenance procedures will be documented in the equipment maintenance logs or the field notebook. Repair and calibration records will be filed. Preventative maintenance and calibration procedures will be followed according to the manufacturer's specifications. Laboratory instruments will be routinely inspected by the laboratory staff to minimize the event of instrument failure.

While the equipment is not in use, it will be stored at the office of GEI or the corresponding subcontractor. Equipment used for sample collection will be cleaned and maintained with methods that align with the proper field practices. Any sampling equipment that may potentially be exposed to soil, air, or water contaminants will be rinsed and dried in a well-ventilated area to limit cross contamination between sampling sites. QA Managers will also communicate these requirements to any subcontractors that are involved in data acquisition so they follow the same protocol.

All instruments, cameras, GPS Units, projectors, and computers are visually inspected upon return from the field. Equipment is accounted for after use and clean and functional before use. Logs are maintained accounting for all equipment use in the field.

All GPS data will be collected using a Trimble RI GNSS receiver with sub-meter accuracy, or equivalent. The GPS receiver will be set to capture data provided that at least 4 satellites are in view and the Position Dilution of Precision (PDOP) value remains at 6 or below. The receiver will use additional satellites as available. GPS units will be set to the NAD 83 coordinate system prior to use and manufacturer default settings will be employed for most other settings. GPS

Accuracy will be checked against known map coordinates from control points or locations with known coordinates. Waypoint data will be post-processed and exported to ArcMap where surveyed and known control points will be compared. Waypoints with a standard deviation greater than 3 meters will be a basis for exclusion from acceptance. Differential correction will be used when available. Batteries will be checked for power prior to use. All accuracy tests will be recorded in a log (identifying the specific GPS receiver used) and maintained in the project file.

2.4 Analytical Methods Requirements

2.4.1 Topographic and Bathymetric Survey

The survey information will be sent electronically to GEI staff for use in project modeling and conceptual design phases. The file format will be compatible with AutoCAD and ArcMap software so that data can be intuitively viewed and analyzed.

Topographic survey elevations of control points and recognizable site features will also be noted before performing the wetland delineation of the site. In this respect, the field staff performing the delineation can reference approximate elevations to known control point or feature elevations (e.g., hydric soil encountered approximately 2 feet below tree surveyed at a specific elevation).

2.4.2 Depth of Refusal Survey

The depth of refusal probing information will be processed by LimnoTech prior to electronically being sent to GEI for use in the project modeling and conceptual design phases. The depth of refusal locations will be provided in both tabular data and in a file format will be compatible with AutoCAD and ArcMap software so that data can be intuitively viewed and analyzed. Sediment depths and water depths will be reported to the nearest 0.1 feet.

2.4.3 Wetland Delineation

Shapefiles will be created from the GPS data collected in the field and used along with existing aerial imagery (basemap) to create a site map detailing delineated wetland boundaries. All geospatial data sources in the map will be appropriately cited and data will be collected with sub-meter accuracy eliminating the need for any postprocessing of GPS data.

Data collected from wetland delineation field forms will be entered into the USACE Northcentral/Northeast Region Automated Wetland Determination Form (https://www.lre.usace.army.mil/Portals/69/docs/regulatory/AutoWLForm/ADF_NCNE_v1.15.zip?ver=2016-10-25-142817-683). This data will then be summarized and included as attachments along with site figures in a wetland delineation report. The report will be reviewed by the QA manager for errors in data translation, discrepancies in known habitat features and control points on the site, and omissions of portions of the project area based on the final wetland delineation figures. The QA Manager will notify field personnel responsible for wetland delineation and create a plan to reconcile all identified errors.

2.4.4 Sediment Sampling for Contaminants

Sediment samples will be submitted to a subcontract laboratory for analysis. Samples of the impounded sediment will be collected to determine if contamination is present.

During sample collection, the characteristics of the sampled material will be noted and described. All samples will be placed into laboratory-supplied sample containers with appropriate preservative. Chain of custody procedures will be initiated in the field at the time of sampling and accompany the samples to the laboratory. Samples will be submitted to a certified laboratory for analysis and analyzed for the MI ten Metals list, PAHs, and PCBs, as shown in the table below.

Sediment Quality Analytical Parameters & Methods

Compound	Units for Quantification	Analytical Method
Arsenic	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Barium	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Cadmium	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Chromium	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Copper	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Lead	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Selenium	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Silver	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Zinc	mg/kg	EPA 6020B
Mercury	mg/kg	EPA 7471
Acenaphthene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Acenaphthylene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Anthracene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Benzo(a)anthracene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Benzo(a)pyrene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Benzo(b)fluoranthene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Benzo(g,h,i)perylene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Benzo(k)fluoranthene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Chrysene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Fluoranthene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Fluorene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Indeno(1,2,3-cd)pyrene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Naphthalene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Phenanthrene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Pyrene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
1-Methylnaphthalene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
2-Methylnaphthalene	ug/kg	EPA 8270E by SIM
Total PAH	ug/kg	Calculation
PCB-1016 (Aroclor 1016)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1221 (Aroclor 1221)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1232 (Aroclor 1232)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1242 (Aroclor 1242)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1248 (Aroclor 1248)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1254 (Aroclor 1254)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
PCB-1260 (Aroclor 1260)	mg/kg	EPA 8082A
Percent Moisture	%	ASTM D2974

A separate composited sample will be prepared and submitted to a geotechnical laboratory for physical grain size analysis down to the No. 200 sieve following ASTM C136.

The amount of sample recovery will be measured from the bottom of the core to the top of the sediment using a tape measure. If a core recovery (where core recovery is equal to the core length divided by the depth of penetration) of less than 60 percent is calculated in the field, up to three attempts will be made to collect a more complete core at the same location. After three attempts, the core with the highest recovery from the location will be collected for processing, the poor recovery will be documented, and limitations on the usability of data will be assessed as part of the analysis of data from the location.

2.4.5 Nondirect Measurements

The Project Managers and QA Managers will notify potential non-measurement sources of project location and request existing environmental data that may be pertinent to better understand the effect of project implementation and measuring these changes. Relevant resource organizations include the City of Flat Rock, Wayne County, EGLE, Michigan Natural Features Inventory, Great Lakes Fishery Commission, U.S. Fish and Wildlife, and the Michigan Department of Natural Resources. In the event that data is collected from these agencies, the Project Managers and the QA Managers will discuss their acceptance criteria and assess any limitations in adding this data to the project plan.

3 DATA MANAGEMENT & REPORTING

3.1 Data Handling/Storage

The HCMA Project Manager and QA Manager will be responsible for distributing the QAPP to personnel on the distribution list. Copies will be submitted with a signature page to be returned to the Project Manager.

Documents generated by field activities, including field data sheets and notes, will be maintained in the project files. HCMA will maintain a file of raw data, instrument printouts, preparation and run logs, calibration information, analytical data, quality assurance data, and chain of custody forms. An electronic summary of all data will be prepared.

The GLFC and HCMA will maintain custody of data collected during the project. Data collected by GEI, LimnoTech, or MCA as required for project implementation will be maintained by those respective organizations and provided to the GLFC and HCMA. Field notes, data sheets, survey forms, permits, photos, and pertinent project documents will be stored in hard copy and electronic format by HCMA, GEI, LimnoTech, and MCA. Upon completion of the project the GLFC and HCMA will receive custody of all data generated. Refer to data management plan, section **3.1.2**, for details regarding record management.

HCMA, GEI, LimnoTech and MCA will use standardized data sheets for data collection in the field. The QA Manager for each respective organization will be responsible for field data management standards during the project. The HCMA Project Manager/QA Manager will review all data for accuracy and completeness.

Survey data collected in the field will be post processed in the office for development of appropriate map products and stored in the office.
All geo-referencing, observational data, photographs, and or other data generated or collected for this project will be documented and archived in its original format. These and other datasets, as needed, will be compiled as Microsoft Excel spreadsheets, ArcMap attribute tables, scanned hard copy forms, and GIS files stored on a secure network. Consistent applications will be utilized for modeling and GIS database creation. Original data will be protected from manipulation and copies will be provided for further use, manipulation, and analysis. HCMA will be responsible for archived data.

Individuals listed below will make assessments and implement actions throughout the course of the project.

Table 8. Assessment and Oversight Summary

Assessment Type	Staff	Results	Corrective Action
Objective	Project Manager	Completeness	Redo or Amend
Equipment Tests	Field Staff or Subcontractor	Pass / Fail	Repair or Replace
Data Completeness	Project Manager	Sampled vs Planned	Revisit or Amend
Data Quality	Field Staff or Subcontractor	Meets Quality Objective or Not	Questioned Data Points Excluded
Performance Criteria	Field Staff or Subcontractor	Meets / Not Meets Criteria	Questioned Data Points Excluded

Management Assessment and Oversight

Staff assigned to each assessment type will assess, record, and implement corrective actions as needed throughout the course of the project. Records will be kept detailing each assessment, the results, and any corrective actions needed. Field training assessments for pertinent project components will be conducted by certified professionals if support staff is utilized. All aspects of the HCMA, GEI, LimnoTech, and MCA collection process will be reviewed.

Data Management Plan

The project will generate environmental data and information, including data on topography, bathymetry, vegetation communities, soil characteristics, water quality, and operating and maintenance cost. Datasets will include topographic and bathymetric elevations, depth of refusal measurements, sediment sampling, delineated wetlands and plant communities. Data will be collected by GEI, LimnoTech and MCA according to the methodologies and procedures outlined throughout **Section 2.** Data collected will be considered public domain and will be available, free of charge, immediately following processing and according to NOAA guidelines, at the website of GLFC (http://www.glfc.org/fish-habitat-protection-and-improvement.php). The Project Manager will oversee all data handling and storage and will prepare any summary reports, which will include the following NOAA disclaimer:

"These data and related items of information have not been formally disseminated by NOAA and do not represent any agency determination, view, or policy."

Archived records are kept for a minimum of 3 years unless legally required to keep for a longer period. Hard copy records are also stored for a minimum of three years. Archived data may be kept beyond 3 years at the discretion of HCMA.

3.2 Data Review, Validation, & Verification

Upon review of data collected during the course of this project, the Project Manager may request clarifications or corrections as deemed necessary to achieve project goals.

Once collected in the field, all data will be cross reviewed by both the HCMA and project QA managers for completeness and accuracy, and to ensure consistency with collection protocols. Data transfer will take place in the office into a computer and post processed into a Microsoft Excel Spreadsheet and ArcMap if applicable. Data that is collected by a subcontractor will be submitted to both the HCMA and project QA managers for review. Data reports will be reviewed independently by each QA Manager to determine data quality and validation. If either QA Manager deems that the data is not of sufficient quality, it will be rejected until revisions are made.

All data produced by this project must be reviewed to evaluate the data against the method/procedural requirements (verification) and to determine whether the data meet the data quality objectives (validation). The review process involves:

- preliminary review of the data collected in the field
- secondary review of field records to verify data against method and SOP requirements
- review of the verified data by the respective QA manager for reasonableness
- validation by an objective third party if necessary; and
- assessment of the data for its usability to meet project goals.

3.3 Validation and Verification Methods

Verification of data completeness will be made after each data collection or monitoring event. Total known data collection events to date will be compared to total required data collection events to date. If the quantity of known and required events is not equal, the QA Manager will review all data entered into the electronic database until omissions are identified. Once the omission is identified, the QA Manager will discuss the omission with those responsible for collecting the field data and enter the collected information into the electronic database in a timely manner.

Validation will be made by viewing field data on the computer. Survey data points (waypoints) and GPS control points will be overlaid on aerial photos and compared for accuracy. All data collected will be cross referenced with photographs and field notes for accuracy, and then reviewed by the QA managers.

Data verification focuses on QAPP compliance, while data validation considers technical reliability relative to decision-making and meeting project objectives. As a result, data verification is conducted before data validation.

The data verification process begins after data have been collected. Verification is an objective, mechanical process of checking individual data points against the QAPP specifications. There are four main elements of the verification process:

1. Compliance: An evaluation of whether SOP and QAPP requirements were followed, achieved, and/or completed successfully. Data must also have been recorded under conditions that met requirements. Compliance ensures that data pass numerical quality control tests, including accuracy and precision.
2. Correctness: A determination of whether data collection plans and protocols have been followed. Basic operations and calculations must also have been performed using properly documented and properly-applied algorithms.
3. Comparability: A measure of the extent to which data collection procedures were done in a similar manner across different sites and data reporting was done in a similar manner. Comparability ensures that reported values are the same when used throughout the project.
4. Completeness: A measure of the extent to which necessary data were collected. Completeness ensures that a sufficient amount of data and information are present relative to the data quality objectives.

Data validation focuses on the ability to use data as intended to make decisions and to address project objectives. These qualifications address overall usability, not contractual adherence. The assigned qualifications for each datum will be usable (i.e., observation appears valid) or unusable (e.g., observation outside the valid range).

3.4 Reconciliation with User Requirements

Results and products will be evaluated against the Data Quality Objectives and user requirements to determine if any reconciliation is needed. Reconciliation concerning quality, quantity, or usability of the data will be reconciled with the user during the data acceptance process. Types of reconciliation may include reduction in the scope of the project in terms of quality or quantity of data produced to meet partial user requirements.

3.5 *Documentation & Records*

This project will involve an iterative process with open communication between GEI, HCMA, GLFC, LimnoTech, MCA, and NOAA. Discussions will address quality assurance issues as needed and may include limitations and constraints in the information sources and / or assumptions made about the information.

Deliverables to be submitted with quality assurance information include:

- Draft QAPP for approval and Final QAPP when approved
- GIS Maps, photographs, and field data forms
- GIS data (including metadata)
- Progress Reports - Status Updates
- Final Report - Project Summary upon completion

4 REFERENCES CITED

Albert, Dennis A. 2003. Between Land and Lake: Michigan's Great Lakes Coastal Wetlands. Michigan Natural Features Inventory. Michigan State University Extension, East Lansing, Michigan: Extension Bulletin E-2902.

Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). 2012. Part 631 National Engineering Handbook. Chapter 3 Engineering Classification of Earth Materials. 210-VI-NEH, Amend. 55, January 2012.

United States Army Corps of Engineers. 1987. Wetlands Delineation Manual, Wetlands Research Program Technical Report Y-87-1. Washington, DC.

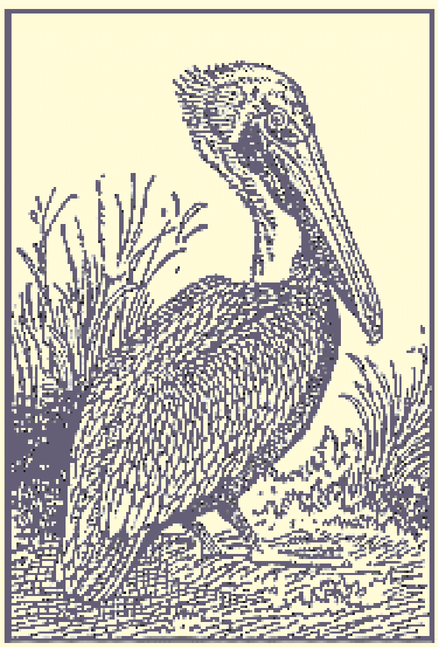
United States Army Corps of Engineers. 2011. Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual: Northcentral and Northeast Region (Version 2.0), ed. J.S. Wakely, R.W. Lichvar, C.V. Noble, and J.F. Berkowitz. ERDC/EL TR-12-1. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center.

US Army Corps
of Engineers
Waterways Experiment
Station

Wetlands Research Program Technical Report Y-87-1 (on-line edition)

Corps of Engineers
Wetlands Delineation Manual

by Environmental Laboratory


January 1987 - Final Report

The following two letters used as part of the number designating technical reports of research published under the Wetlands Research Program identify the area under which the report was prepared:

	Task		Task
CP	Critical Processes	RE	Restoration & Establishment
DE	Delineation & Evaluation	SM	Stewardship & Management

Wetlands Research Program

Technical Report Y-87-1
January 1987

Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual

by Environmental Laboratory

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Waterways Experiment Station
3909 Halls Ferry Road
Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199

Final report

Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited

Prepared for U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

Contents

List of Figures

List of Tables

Preface to the On-Line Edition

This is an electronic version of the 1987 *Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual* (the 1987 Manual). The 1987 Manual is the current Federal delineation manual used in the Clean Water Act Section 404 regulatory program for the identification and delineation of wetlands. Except where noted in the manual, the approach requires positive evidence of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology for a determination that an area is a wetland.

The original manual and this on-line edition were prepared by the Environmental Laboratory (EL) of the U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (WES), Vicksburg, Mississippi. The work was sponsored by Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (HQUSACE), through the Wetlands Research Program.

The manual was originally published in January 1987, following several years of development and testing of draft versions. Since that time, the use and interpretation of the 1987 Manual have been clarified and updated through a series of guidance documents and memoranda from HQUSACE. This electronic edition does not change the intent or jurisdictional area of the 1987 Manual. It does, however, attempt to clarify the manual and current guidance by including a number of boxed "USER NOTES" indicating where the original manual has been augmented by more recent information or guidance. USER NOTES were written by Dr. James S. Wakeley, EL, WES. Due to re-formatting of the text and insertion of the USER NOTES, page numbers in this edition do not match those in the original edition. Some obsolete material appears in this document as struck-out text (e.g., ~~obsolete material~~), and hypertext links are provided to sources of important supplementary information (e.g., hydric soils lists, wetland plant lists). References cited in the USER NOTES refer to the following guidance documents from HQUSACE:

"Clarification of the Phrase "Normal Circumstances" as it pertains to Cropped Wetlands," Regulatory Guidance Letter (RGL) 90-7 dated 26 September 1990.

"Implementation of the 1987 Corps Wetland Delineation Manual," memorandum from John P. Elmore dated 27 August 1991.

"Questions & Answers on the 1987 Manual," memorandum from John F. Studt dated 7 October 1991.

"Clarification and Interpretation of the 1987 Manual," memorandum from Major General Arthur E. Williams dated 6 March 1992.

"Revisions to National Plant Lists," memorandum from Michael L. Davis dated 17 January 1996.

"NRCS Field Indicators of Hydric Soils," memorandum from John F. Studt dated 21 March 1997.

Copies of the original published manual are available through the National Technical Information Service (phone 703-487-4650, NTIS document number ADA 176734/2INE). The report should be cited as follows:

> Environmental Laboratory. (1987). "Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual," Technical Report Y-87-1, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

Useful supplementary information for making wetland determinations can also be found at the following sites on the World Wide Web:

- Hydric soils definition, criteria, and lists
- National list of plant species that occur in wetlands
- Analyses of normal precipitation ranges and growing season limits
- National Wetlands Inventory maps and databases

Preface to the Original Edition

This manual is a product of the Wetlands Research Program (WRP) of the U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (WES), Vicksburg, MS. The work was sponsored by the Office, Chief of Engineers (OCE), U.S. Army. OCE Technical monitors for the WRP were Drs. John R. Hall and Robert J. Pierce, and Mr. Phillip C. Pierce.

The manual has been reviewed and concurred in by the Office of the Chief of Engineers and the Office of the Assistant Secretary of the Army (Civil Works) ~~as a method approved for voluntary use in the field for a trial period of 1 year~~.

~~This manual is not intended to change appreciably the jurisdiction of the Clean Water Act (CWA) as it is currently implemented. Should any District find that use of this method appreciably contracts or expands jurisdiction in their District as the District currently interprets CWA authority, the District should immediately discontinue use of this method and furnish a full report of the circumstances to the Office of the Chief of Engineers~~.

USER NOTES: Use of the 1987 Manual to identify and delineate wetlands potentially subject to regulation under Section 404 is now mandatory. (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91)

This manual describes technical guidelines and methods using a multiparameter approach to identify and delineate wetlands for purposes of Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. Appendices of supporting technical information are also provided.

The manual is presented in four parts. Part II was prepared by Dr. Robert T. Huffman, formerly of the Environmental Laboratory (EL), WES, and Dr. Dana R. Sanders, Sr., of the Wetland and Terrestrial Habitat Group (WTHG), Environmental Resources Division (ERD), EL. Dr. Huffman prepared the original version of Part II in 1980, entitled "Multiple Parameter Approach to the Field Identification and Delineation of Wetlands." The original version was distributed to all Corps field elements, as well as other Federal resource and environmental regulatory agencies, for review and comments. Dr. Sanders revised the original version in 1982, incorporating review comments. Parts I, III, and IV

were prepared by Dr. Sanders, Mr. William B. Parker (formerly detailed to WES by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Soil Conservation Service (SCS)) and Mr. Stephen W. Forsythe (formerly detailed to WES by the U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS)). Dr. Sanders also served as overall technical editor of the manual. The manual was edited by Ms. Jamie W. Leach of the WES Information Products Division.

The authors acknowledge technical assistance provided by: Mr. Russell F. Theriot, Mr. Ellis J. Clairain, Jr., and Mr. Charles J. Newling, all of WTHG, ERD; Mr. Phillip Jones, former SCS detail to WES; Mr. Porter B. Reed, FWS, National Wetland Inventory, St. Petersburg, Fla.; Dr. Dan K. Evans, Marshall University, Huntington, W. Va.; and the USDA-SCS. The authors also express gratitude to Corps personnel who assisted in developing the regional lists of species that commonly occur in wetlands, including Mr. Richard Macomber, Bureau of Rivers and Harbors; Ms. Kathy Mulder, Kansas City District; Mr. Michael Gilbert, Omaha District; Ms. Vicki Goodnight, Southwestern Division; Dr. Fred Weinmann, Seattle District; and Mr. Michael Lee, Pacific Ocean Division. Special thanks are offered to the CE personnel who reviewed and commented on the draft manual, and to those who participated in a workshop that consolidated the field comments.

The work was monitored at WES under the direct supervision of Dr. Hanley K. Smith, Chief, WTHG, and under the general supervision of Dr. Conrad J. Kirby, Jr., Chief, ERD. Dr. Smith, Dr. Sanders, and Mr. Theriot were Managers of the WRP. Dr. John Harrison was Chief, EL.

Director of WES during the preparation of this report was COL Allen F. Grum, USA. During publication, COL Dwayne G. Lee, CE, was Commander and Director. Technical Director was Dr. Robert W. Whalin.

This report should be cited as follows:

> Environmental Laboratory. (1987). "Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual," Technical Report Y-87-1, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Miss.

Conversion Factors, Non-SI to SI Units of Measurement

Non-SI units of measurement used in this report can be converted to SI (metric) units as follows:

Multiply	By	To Obtain
acres	0.4047	hectares
Fahrenheit degrees	5/9	Celsius degrees[1]
feet	0.3048	metres
inches	2.54	centimetres
miles (U.S. statute)	1.6093	kilometres
square inches	6.4516	square centimetres

[1] To obtain Celsius (C) temperature readings from Fahrenheit (F) readings, use the following formula: C = (5/9) (F - 32).

Part I: Introduction

Background

1. Recognizing the potential for continued or accelerated degradation of the Nation's waters, the U.S. Congress enacted the Clean Water Act (hereafter referred to as the Act), formerly known as the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1344). The objective of the Act is to maintain and restore the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the waters of the United States. Section 404 of the Act authorizes the Secretary of the Army, acting through the Chief of Engineers, to issue permits for the discharge of dredged or fill material into the waters of the United States, including wetlands.

Purpose and Objectives

Purpose

2. The purpose of this manual is to provide users with guidelines and methods to determine whether an area is a wetland for purposes of Section 404 of the Act.

Objectives

3. Specific objectives of the manual are to:

a. Present technical guidelines for identifying wetlands and distinguishing them from aquatic habitats and other nonwetlands.[1]

b. Provide methods for applying the technical guidelines.

c. Provide supporting information useful in applying the technical guidelines.

[1] Definitions of terms used in this manual are presented in the Glossary, Appendix A.

Scope

4. This manual is limited in scope to wetlands that are a subset of "waters of the United States" and thus subject to Section 404. The term "waters of the United States" has broad meaning and incorporates both deep-water aquatic habitats and special aquatic sites, including wetlands (*Federal Register* 1982), as follows:

a. The territorial seas with respect to the discharge of fill material.

b. Coastal and inland waters, lakes, rivers, and streams that are navigable waters of the United States, including their adjacent wetlands.

c. Tributaries to navigable waters of the United States, including adjacent wetlands.

d. Interstate waters and their tributaries, including adjacent wetlands.

e. All others waters of the United States not identified above, such as isolated wetlands and lakes, intermittent streams, prairie potholes, and other waters that are not a part of a tributary system to interstate waters or navigable waters of the United States, the degradation or destruction of which could affect interstate commerce.

Determination that a water body or wetland is subject to interstate commerce and therefore is a "water of the United States" shall be made independently of procedures described in this manual.

Special aquatic sites

5. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) identifies six categories of special aquatic sites in their Section 404 b.(l) guidelines (*Federal Register* 1980), including:

a. Sanctuaries and refuges.

b. Wetlands.

c. Mudflats.

d. Vegetated shallows.

e. Coral reefs.

f. Riffle and pool complexes.

Although all of these special aquatic sites are subject to provisions of the Clean Water Act, this manual considers only wetlands. By definition, wetlands are vegetated. Thus, unvegetated special aquatic sites (e.g., mudflats lacking macrophytic vegetation) are not covered in this manual.

Relationship to wetland classification systems

6. The technical guideline for wetlands does not constitute a classification system. It only provides a basis for determining whether a given area is a wetland for purposes of Section 404, without attempting to classify it by wetland type.

7. Consideration should be given to the relationship between the technical guideline for wetlands and the classification system developed for the Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS), U.S. Department of the Interior, by Cowardin et al. (1979). The FWS classification system was developed as a basis for identifying, classifying, and mapping wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and deepwater aquatic habitats. Using this classification system, the National Wetland Inventory (NWI) is mapping the wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and deepwater aquatic habitats of the United States, and is also developing both a list of plant species that occur in wetlands and an associated plant database. These products should contribute significantly to application of the technical guideline for wetlands. The technical guideline for wetlands as presented in the manual includes most, but not all, wetlands identified in the FWS system. The difference is due to two principal factors:

a. The FWS system includes all categories of special aquatic sites identified in the EPA Section 404 b.(l) guidelines. All other special aquatic sites are clearly within the purview of Section 404; thus, special methods for their delineation are unnecessary.

b. The FWS system requires that a positive indicator of wetlands be present for any one of the three parameters, while the technical guideline for wetlands requires that a positive wetland indicator be present for each parameter (vegetation, soils, and hydrology), except in limited instances identified in the manual.

Organization

8. This manual consists of four parts and four appendices. Part I presents the background, purpose and objectives, scope, organization, and use of the manual.

9. Part II focuses on the technical guideline for wetlands, and stresses the need for considering all three parameters (vegetation, soils, and hydrology) when making wetland determinations. Since wetlands occur in an intermediate posi-

tion along the hydrologic gradient, comparative technical guidelines are also presented for deepwater aquatic sites and nonwetlands.

10. Part III contains general information on hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology. Positive wetland indicators of each parameter are included.

11. Part IV, which presents methods for applying the technical guideline for wetlands, is arranged in a format that leads to a logical determination of whether a given area is a wetland. Section A contains general information related to application of methods. Section B outlines preliminary data-gathering efforts. Section C discusses two approaches (routine and comprehensive) for making wetland determinations and presents criteria for deciding the correct approach to use. Sections D and E describe detailed procedures for making routine and comprehensive determinations, respectively. The basic procedures are described in a series of steps that lead to a wetland determination.

12. The manual also describes (Part IV, Section F) methods for delineating wetlands in which the vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology have been altered by recent human activities or natural events, as discussed below:

a. The definition of wetlands contains the phrase "under normal circumstances," which was included because there are instances in which the vegetation in a wetland has been inadvertently or purposely removed or altered as a result of recent natural events or human activities. Other examples of human alterations that may affect wetlands are draining, ditching, levees, deposition of fill, irrigation, and impoundments. When such activities occur, an area may fail to meet the diagnostic criteria for a wetland. Likewise, positive hydric soil indicators may be absent in some recently created wetlands. In such cases, an alternative method must be employed in making wetland determinations.

> USER NOTES: "Normal circumstances" has been further defined as "the soil and hydrologic conditions that are normally present, without regard to whether the vegetation has been removed." The determination of whether normal circumstances exist in a disturbed area "involves an evaluation of the extent and relative permanence of the physical alteration of wetlands hydrology and hydrophytic vegetation" and consideration of the "purpose and cause of the physical alterations to hydrology and vegetation." (RGL 90-7, 26 Sep 90; HQUSACE, 7 Oct 91)

b. Natural events may also result in sufficient modification of an area that indicators of one or more wetland parameters are absent. For example, changes in river course may significantly alter hydrology, or beaver dams may create new wetland areas that lack hydric soil conditions. Catastrophic events (e.g., fires, avalanches, mudslides, and volcanic activities) may also alter or destroy wetland indicators on a site.

Such atypical situations occur throughout the United States, and all of these cannot be identified in this manual.

13. Certain wetland types, under the extremes of normal circumstances, may not always meet all the wetland criteria defined in the manual. Examples include prairie potholes during drought years and seasonal wetlands that may lack hydrophytic vegetation during the dry season. Such areas are discussed in Part IV, Section G, and guidance is provided for making wetland determinations in these areas. However, such wetland areas may warrant additional research to refine methods for their delineation.

14. Appendix A is a glossary of technical terms used in the manual. Definitions of some terms were taken from other technical sources, but most terms are defined according to the manner in which they are used in the manual.

15. Data forms for methods presented in Part IV are included in Appendix B. Examples of completed data forms are also provided.

16. Supporting information is presented in Appendices C and D. ~~Appendix C contains lists of plant species that occur in wetlands. Section 1 consists of regional lists developed by a Federal interagency panel. Section 2 consists of shorter lists of plant species that commonly occur in wetlands of each region.~~

USER NOTES: CE-supplied plant lists are obsolete and have been superseded by the May 1988 version of the "National List of Plant Species that Occur in Wetlands" published by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and available on the World Wide Web. (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91)

Section 3 describes morphological, physiological, and reproductive adaptations associated with hydrophytic species, as well as a list of some species exhibiting such adaptations. Appendix D discusses procedures for examining soils for hydric soil indicators, ~~and also contains a list of hydric soils of the United States~~.

USER NOTES: The hydric soil list published in the 1987 Corps Manual is obsolete. Current hydric soil definition, criteria, and lists are available over the World Wide Web from the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91, 6 Mar 92)

Use

17. Although this manual was prepared primarily for use by Corps of Engineers (CE) field inspectors, it should be useful to anyone who makes wetland determinations for purposes of Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. The user is

directed through a series of steps that involve gathering of information and decisionmaking, ultimately leading to a wetland determination. A general flow diagram of activities leading to a determination is presented in Figure 1. However, not all activities identified in Figure 1 will be required for each wetland determination. For example, if a decision is made to use a routine determination procedure, comprehensive determination procedures will not be employed.

Premise for use of the manual

18. Three key provisions of the CE/EPA definition of wetlands include:

a. Inundated or saturated soil conditions resulting from permanent or periodic inundation by ground water or surface water.

b. A prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions (hydrophytic vegetation).

c. The presence of "normal circumstances."

19. Explicit in the definition is the consideration of three environmental parameters: hydrology, soil, and vegetation. Positive wetland indicators of all three parameters are normally present in wetlands. Although vegetation is often the most readily observed parameter, sole reliance on vegetation or either of the other parameters as the determinant of wetlands can sometimes be misleading. Many plant species can grow successfully in both wetlands and nonwetlands, and hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soils may persist for decades following alteration of hydrology that will render an area a nonwetland. The presence of hydric soils and wetland hydrology indicators in addition to vegetation indicators will provide a logical, easily defensible, and technical basis for the presence of wetlands. The combined use of indicators for all three parameters will enhance the technical accuracy, consistency, and credibility of wetland determinations. Therefore, all three parameters were used in developing the technical guideline for wetlands and all approaches for applying the technical guideline embody the multiparameter concept.

Approaches

20. The approach used for wetland delineations will vary, based primarily on the complexity of the area in question. Two basic approaches described in the manual are (a) routine and (b) comprehensive.

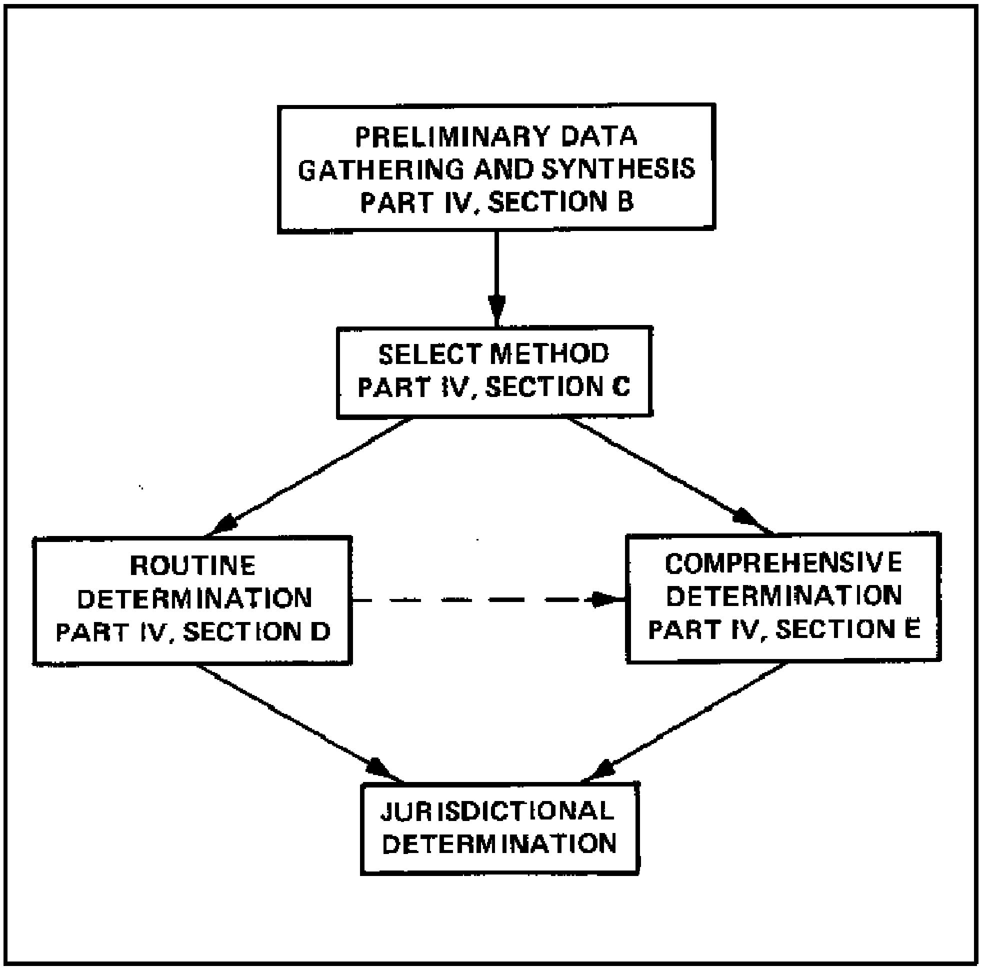


Figure 1. General schematic diagram of activities leading to a wetland/non-wetland determination

21. **Routine approach.** The routine approach normally will be used in the vast majority of determinations. The routine approach requires minimal level of effort, using primarily qualitative procedures. This approach can be further subdivided into three levels of required effort, depending on the complexity of the area and the amount and quality of preliminary data available. The following levels of effort may be used for routine determinations:

a. *Level 1 - Onsite inspection unnecessary.* (Part IV, Section D, Subsection 1).

b. *Level 2 - Onsite inspection necessary.* (Part IV, Section D, Subsection 2).

c. *Level 3 - Combination of Levels 1 and 2.* (Part IV, Section D, Subsection 3).

22. **Comprehensive approach.** The comprehensive approach requires application of quantitative procedures for making wetland determinations. It should

seldom be necessary, and its use should be restricted to situations in which the wetland is very complex and/or is the subject of likely or pending litigation. Application of the comprehensive approach (Part IV, Section E) requires a greater level of expertise than application of the routine approach, and only experienced field personnel with sufficient training should use this approach.

Flexibility

23. Procedures described for both routine and comprehensive wetland determinations have been tested and found to be reliable. However, site-specific conditions may require modification of field procedures. For example, slope configuration in a complex area may necessitate modification of the baseline and transect positions. Since specific characteristics (e.g., plant density) of a given plant community may necessitate the use of alternate methods for determining the dominant species, the user has the flexibility to employ sampling procedures other than those described. However, the basic approach for making wetland determinations should not be altered (i.e., the determination should be based on the dominant plant species, soil characteristics, and hydrologic characteristics of the area in question). The user should document reasons for using a different characterization procedure than described in the manual. *CAUTION: Application of methods described in the manual or the modified sampling procedures requires that the user be familiar with wetlands of the area and use his or her training, experience, and good judgment in making wetland determinations.*

Part II: Technical Guidelines

24. The interaction of hydrology, vegetation, and soil results in the development of characteristics unique to wetlands. Therefore, the following technical guideline for wetlands is based on these three parameters, and diagnostic environmental characteristics used in applying the technical guideline are represented by various indicators of these parameters.

25. Because wetlands may be bordered by both wetter areas (aquatic habitats) and by drier areas (nonwetlands), guidelines are presented for wetlands, deepwater aquatic habitats, and nonwetlands. However, procedures for applying the technical guidelines for deepwater aquatic habitats and nonwetlands are not included in the manual.

Wetlands

26. The following definition, diagnostic environmental characteristics, and technical approach comprise a guideline for the identification and delineation of wetlands:

a. *Definition*. The CE (*Federal Register* 1982) and the EPA (*Federal Register* 1980) jointly define wetlands as: Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas.

b. *Diagnostic environmental characteristics*. Wetlands have the following general diagnostic environmental characteristics:

(1) *Vegetation*. The prevalent vegetation consists of macrophytes that are typically adapted to areas having hydrologic and soil conditions described in *a* above. Hydrophytic species, due to morphological, physiological, and/or reproductive adaptation(s), have the ability to grow, effectively compete, reproduce, and/or persist in anaerobic

soil conditions.[1] Indicators of vegetation associated with wetlands are listed in paragraph 35.

(2) *Soil.* Soils are present and have been classified as hydric, or they possess characteristics that are associated with reducing soil conditions. Indicators of soils developed under reducing conditions are listed in paragraphs 44 and 45.

(3) *Hydrology.* The area is inundated either permanently or periodically at mean water depths ≤6.6 ft, or the soil is saturated to the surface at some time during the growing season of the prevalent vegetation.[2] Indicators of hydrologic conditions that occur in wetlands are listed in paragraph 49.

c. *Technical approach for the identification and delineation of wetlands.* Except in certain situations defined in this manual, evidence of a minimum of one positive wetland indicator from each parameter (hydrology, soil, and vegetation) must be found in order to make a positive wetland determination.

Deepwater Aquatic Habitats

27. The following definition, diagnostic environmental characteristics, and technical approach comprise a guideline for deepwater aquatic habitats:

a. *Definition.* Deepwater aquatic habitats are areas that are permanently inundated at mean annual water depths >6.6 ft or permanently inundated areas ≤6.6 ft in depth that do not support rooted-emergent or woody plant species.[3]

b. *Diagnostic environmental characteristics.* Deepwater aquatic habitats have the following diagnostic environmental characteristics:

(1) *Vegetation.* No rooted-emergent or woody plant species are present in these permanently inundated areas.

(2) *Soil.* The substrate technically is not defined as a soil if the mean water depth is >6.6 ft or if it will not support rooted emergent or woody plants.

---

[1] Species (e.g., *Acer rubrum*) having broad ecological tolerances occur in both wetlands and nonwetlands.

[2] The period of inundation or soil saturation varies according to the hydrologic/soil moisture regime and occurs in both tidal and nontidal situations.

[3] Areas ≤6.6 ft mean annual depth that support only submergent aquatic plants are vegetated shallows, not wetlands.

(3) *Hydrology.* The area is permanently inundated at mean water depths >6.6 ft.

c. *Technical approach for the identification and delineation of deepwater aquatic habitats.* When any one of the diagnostic characteristics identified in *b* above is present, the area is a deepwater aquatic habitat.

Nonwetlands

28. The following definition, diagnostic environmental characteristics, and technical approach comprise a guideline for the identification and delineation of nonwetlands:

a. *Definition.* Nonwetlands include uplands and lowland areas that are neither deepwater aquatic habitats, wetlands, nor other special aquatic sites. They are seldom or never inundated, or if frequently inundated, they have saturated soils for only brief periods during the growing season, and, if vegetated, they normally support a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life only in aerobic soil conditions.

b. *Diagnostic environmental characteristics.* Nonwetlands have the following general diagnostic environmental characteristics:

(1) *Vegetation.* The prevalent vegetation consists of plant species that are typically adapted for life only in aerobic soils. These mesophytic and/or xerophytic macrophytes cannot persist in predominantly anaerobic soil conditions.[1]

(2) *Soil.* Soils, when present, are not classified as hydric, and possess characteristics associated with aerobic conditions.

(3) *Hydrology.* Although the soil may be inundated or saturated by surface water or ground water periodically during the growing season of the prevalent vegetation, the average annual duration of inundation or soil saturation does not preclude the occurrence of plant species typically adapted for life in aerobic soil conditions.

c. *Technical approach for the identification and delineation of nonwetlands.* When any one of the diagnostic characteristics identified in *b* above is present, the area is a nonwetland.

---

[1] Some species, due to their broad ecological tolerances, occur in both wetlands and nonwetlands (e.g., *Acer rubrum).*

Part III: Characteristics and Indicators of Hydrophytic Vegetation, Hydric Soils, and Wetland Hydrology

Hydrophytic Vegetation

Definition

29. **Hydrophytic vegetation.** Hydrophytic vegetation is defined herein as the sum total of macrophytic plant life that occurs in areas where the frequency and duration of inundation or soil saturation produce permanently or periodically saturated soils of sufficient duration to exert a controlling influence on the plant species present. The vegetation occurring in a wetland may consist of more than one plant community (species association). The plant community concept is followed throughout the manual. Emphasis is placed on the assemblage of plant species that exert a controlling influence on the character of the plant community, rather than on indicator species. Thus, the presence of scattered individuals of an upland plant species in a community dominated by hydrophytic species is not a sufficient basis for concluding that the area is an upland community. Likewise, the presence of a few individuals of a hydrophytic species in a community dominated by upland species is not a sufficient basis for concluding that the area has hydrophytic vegetation. *CAUTION: In determining whether an area is "vegetated" for the purpose of Section 404 jurisdiction, users must consider the density of vegetation at the site being evaluated. While it is not possible to develop a numerical method to determine how many plants or how much biomass is needed to establish an area as being vegetated or unvegetated, it is intended that the predominant condition of the site be used to make that characterization. This concept applies to areas grading from wetland to upland, and from wetland to other waters. This limitation would not necessarily apply to areas which have been disturbed by man or recent natural events.*

30. **Prevalence of vegetation.** The definition of wetlands includes the phrase "prevalence of vegetation." Prevalence, as applied to vegetation, is an imprecise, seldom-used ecological term. As used in the wetlands definition, prevalence refers to the plant community or communities that occur in an area at some point in time. Prevalent vegetation is characterized by the dominant species comprising the plant community or communities. Dominant plant species are those that contribute more to the character of a plant community than other species present, as estimated or measured in terms of some ecological parameter or parameters. The two most commonly used estimates of dominance are basal area (trees) and percent areal cover (herbs). Hydrophytic vegetation is prevalent in an area when the dominant species comprising the plant community or communities are typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions.

USER NOTES: The "50/20 rule" is the recommended method for selecting dominant species from a plant community when quantitative data are available. The rule states that for each stratum in the plant community, dominant species are the most abundant plant species (when ranked in descending order of abundance and cumulatively totaled) that immediately exceed 50% of the total dominance measure for the stratum, plus any additional species that individually comprise 20% or more of the total dominance measure for the stratum. The list of dominant species is then combined across strata. (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92)

31. **Typically adapted.** The term "typically adapted" refers to a species being normally or commonly suited to a given set of environmental conditions, due to some morphological, physiological, or reproductive adaptation (Appendix C, Section 3). As used in the CE wetlands definition, the governing environmental conditions for hydrophytic vegetation are saturated soils resulting from periodic inundation or saturation by surface or ground water. These periodic events must occur for sufficient duration to result in anaerobic soil conditions. When the dominant species in a plant community are typically adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions, hydrophytic vegetation is present. Species ~~listed in Appendix C, Section 1 or 2,~~ that have an indicator status of OBL, FACW, or FAC[1] (Table 1) are considered to be typically adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions (see paragraph 35*a*).

Influencing factors

32. Many factors (e.g., light, temperature, soil texture and permeability, man-induced disturbance, etc.) influence the character of hydrophytic vegetation. However, hydrologic factors exert an overriding influence on species that can occur in wetlands. Plants lacking morphological, physiological, and/or reproductive adaptations cannot grow, effectively compete, reproduce, and/or persist in areas that are subject to prolonged inundation or saturated soil conditions.

---

[1] Species having a FAC- indicator status are not considered to be typically adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions.

Table 1
Plant Indicator Status Categories[1]

Indicator Category	Indicator Symbol	Definition
Obligate Wetland Plants	OBL	Plants that occur almost always (estimated probability >99 percent) in wetlands under natural conditions, but which may also occur rarely (estimated probability <1 percent) in nonwetlands. Examples: *Spartina alterniflora, Taxodium distichum*.
Facultative Wetland Plants	FACW	Plants that occur usually (estimated probability >67 percent to 99 percent) in wetlands, but also occur (estimated probability 1 percent to 33 percent) in nonwetlands. Examples: *Fraxinus pennsylvanica, Cornus stolonifera.*
Facultative Plants	FAC	Plants with a similar likelihood (estimated probability 33 percent to 67 percent) of occurring in both wetlands and nonwetlands. Examples: *Gleditsia triacanthos, Smilax rotundifolia.*
Facultative Upland Plants	FACU	Plants that occur sometimes (estimated probability 1 percent to <33 percent) in wetlands, but occur more often (estimated probability >67 percent to 99 percent) in nonwetlands. Examples: *Quercus rubra, Potentilla arguta.*
Obligate Upland Plants	UPL	Plants that occur rarely (estimated probability <1 percent) in wetlands, but occur almost always (estimated probability >99 percent) in nonwetlands under natural conditions. Examples: *Pinus echinata, Bromus mollis.*

[1] Categories were originally developed and defined by the USFWS National Wetlands Inventory and subsequently modified by the National Plant List Panel. The three facultative categories are subdivided by (+) and (−) modifiers ~~(see Appendix C, Section 1)~~.

Geographic diversity

33. Many hydrophytic vegetation types occur in the United States due to the diversity of interactions among various factors that influence the distribution of hydrophytic species. General climate and flora contribute greatly to regional variations in hydrophytic vegetation. Consequently, the same associations of hydrophytic species occurring in the southeastern United States are not found in the Pacific Northwest. In addition, local environmental conditions (e.g., local climate, hydrologic regimes, soil series, salinity, etc.) may result in broad variations in hydrophytic associations within a given region. For example, a coastal saltwater marsh will consist of different species than an inland freshwater marsh in the same region. An overview of hydrophytic vegetation occurring in each region of the Nation has been published by the CE in a series of eight preliminary wetland guides (Table 2), and a group of wetland and estuarine ecological profiles (Table 3) has been published by FWS.

Classification

34. Numerous efforts have been made to classify hydrophytic vegetation. Most systems are based on general characteristics of the dominant species occurring in each vegetation type. These range from the use of general physiognomic categories (e.g., overstory, subcanopy, ground cover, vines) to specific vegetation types (e.g., forest type numbers as developed by the Society of American Foresters). In other cases, vegetational characteristics are combined with hydrologic features to produce more elaborate systems. The most recent example of such a system was developed for the FWS by Cowardin et al. (1979).

Table 2
List of CE Preliminary Wetland Guides

Region	Publication Date	WES Report No.
Peninsular Florida	February 1978	TR Y-78-2
Puerto Rico	April 1978	TR Y-78-3
West Coast States	April 1978	TR-Y-78-4
Gulf Coastal Plain	May 1978	TR Y-78-5
Interior	May 1982	TR Y-78-6
South Atlantic States	May 1982	TR Y-78-7
North Atlantic States	May 1982	TR Y-78-8
Alaska	February 1984	TR Y-78-9

Table 3
List of Ecological Profiles Produced by the FWS Biological Services Program

Title	Publication Date	FWS Publication No.
"The Ecology of Intertidal Flats of North Carolina"	1979	79/39
"The Ecology of New England Tidal Flats"	1982	81/01
"The Ecology of the Mangroves of South Florida"	1982	81/24
"The Ecology of Bottomland Hardwood Swamps of the Southeast"	1982	81/37
"The Ecology of Southern California Coastal Salt Marshes"	1982	81/54
"The Ecology of New England High Salt Marshes"	1982	81/55
"The Ecology of Southeastern Shrub Bogs (Pocosins) and Carolina Bays"	1982	82/04
"The Ecology of the Apalachicola Bay System"	1984	82/05
"The Ecology of the Pamlico River, North Carolina"	1984	82/06
"The Ecology of the South Florida Coral Reefs"	1984	82/08
"The Ecology of the Sea Grasses of South Florida"	1982	82/25
"The Ecology of Tidal Marshes of the Pacific Northwest Coast"	1983	82/32
"The Ecology of Tidal Freshwater Marshes of the U.S. East Coast"	1984	83/17
"The Ecology of San Francisco Bay Tidal Marshes"	1983	82/23
"The Ecology of Tundra Ponds of the Arctic Coastal Plain"	1984	83/25
"The Ecology of Eelgrass Meadows of the Atlantic Coast"	1984	84/02
"The Ecology of Delta Marshes of Louisiana"	1984	84/09
"The Ecology of Eelgrass Meadows in the Pacific Northwest"	1984	84/24
"The Ecology of Irregularly Flooded Marshes of North-eastern Gulf of Mexico"	(In press)	85(7.1)
"The Ecology of Giant Kelp Forests in California"	1985	85(7.2)

Indicators of hydrophytic vegetation

35. Several indicators may be used to determine whether hydrophytic vegetation is present on a site. However, the presence of a single individual of a hydrophytic species does not mean that hydrophytic vegetation is present. The strongest case for the presence of hydrophytic vegetation can be made when

several indicators, such as those in the following list, are present. However, any one of the following is indicative that hydrophytic vegetation is present:[1]

a. *More than 50 percent of the dominant species are OBL, FACW, or FAC*[2] *(Table 1) on lists of plant species that occur in wetlands.* A national interagency panel has prepared a National List of Plant Species that occur in wetlands. This list categorizes species according to their affinity for occurrence in wetlands. ~~Regional subset lists of the national list, including only species having an indicator status of OBL, FACW, or FAC, are presented in Appendix C, Section 1. The CE has also developed regional lists of plant species that commonly occur in wetlands (Appendix C, Section 2). Either list may be used.~~

USER NOTES: CE-supplied plant lists are obsolete and have been superseded by the May 1988 version of the "National List of Plant Species that Occur in Wetlands" published by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and available on the World Wide Web. Subsequent changes to the May 1988 national plant list, or regional versions of the national list, should not be used until they receive official review and approval. (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91 and 17 Jan 96)

Note: A District that, on a subregional basis, questions the indicator status of FAC species may use the following option: When FAC species occur as dominants along with other dominants that are not FAC (either wetter or drier than FAC), the FAC species can be considered as neutral, and the vegetation decision can be based on the number of dominant species wetter than FAC as compared to the number of dominant species drier than FAC. When a tie occurs or all dominant species are FAC, the nondominant species must be considered. The area has hydrophytic vegetation when more than 50 percent of all considered species are wetter than FAC. When either all considered species are FAC or the number of species wetter than FAC equals the number of species drier than FAC, the wetland determination will be based on the soil and hydrology parameters. Districts adopting this option should provide documented support to the Corps representative on the regional plant list panel, so that a change in indicator status of FAC species of concern can be pursued. Corps representatives on the regional and national plant list panels will continually strive to ensure that plant species are properly designated on both a regional and subregional basis.

---

[1] Indicators are listed in order of decreasing reliability. Although all are valid indicators, some are stronger than others. When a decision is based on an indicator appearing in the lower portion of the list, re-evaluate the parameter to ensure that the proper decision was reached.

[2] FAC+ species are considered to be wetter (i.e., have a greater estimated probability of occurring in wetlands) than FAC species, while FAC- species are considered to be drier (i.e., have a lesser estimated probability of occurring in wetlands) than FAC species.

USER NOTES: The FAC-neutral option can <u>not</u> be used to exclude areas as wetlands that meet the basic vegetation rule (i.e., more than 50% of dominant species are FAC, FACW, or OBL) and meet wetland hydrology and hydric soil requirements. Presence of a plant community that satisfies the FAC-neutral option may be used as a secondary indicator of wetland hydrology. (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92)

b. *Other indicators*. Although there are several other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, it will seldom be necessary to use them. However, they may provide additional useful information to strengthen a case for the presence of hydrophytic vegetation. Additional training and/or experience may be required to employ these indicators.

(1) *Visual observation of plant species growing in areas of prolonged inundation and/or soil saturation*. This indicator can only be applied by experienced personnel who have accumulated information through several years of field experience and written documentation (field notes) that certain species commonly occur in areas of prolonged (>10 percent) inundation and/or soil saturation during the growing season. Species such as *Taxodium distichum, Typha latifolia,* and *Spartina alterniflora* normally occur in such areas. Thus, occurrence of species commonly observed in other wetland areas provides a strong indication that hydrophytic vegetation is present. *CAUTION: The presence of standing water or saturated soil on a site is insufficient evidence that the species present are able to tolerate long periods of inundation. The user must relate the observed species to other similar situations and determine whether they are normally found in wet areas, taking into consideration the season and immediately preceding weather conditions.*

(2) *Morphological adaptations*. Some hydrophytic species have easily recognized physical characteristics that indicate their ability to occur in wetlands. A given species may exhibit several of these characteristics, but not all hydrophytic species have evident morphological adaptations. A list of such morphological adaptations and a partial list of plant species with known morphological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands are provided in Appendix C, Section 3.

(3) *Technical literature*. The technical literature may provide a strong indication that plant species comprising the prevalent vegetation are commonly found in areas where soils are periodically saturated for long periods. Sources of available literature include:

(a) *Taxonomic references*. Such references usually contain at least a general description of the habitat in which a species occurs. A habitat description such as, "Occurs in water of streams and lakes and in alluvial floodplains subject to periodic flooding," supports a conclusion that the species typically occurs in wetlands. Examples of some useful taxonomic references are provided in Table 4.

Table 4
List of Some Useful Taxonomic References

Title	Author(s)
Manual of Vascular Plants of Northeastern United States and Adjacent Canada	Gleason and Cronquist (1963)
Gray's Manual of Botany, 8th edition	Fernald (1950)
Manual of the Southeastern Flora	Small (1933)
Manual of the Vascular Flora of the Carolinas	Radford, Ahles, and Bell (1968)
A Flora of Tropical Florida	Long and Lakela (1976)
Aquatic and Wetland Plants of the Southwestern United States	Correll and Correll (1972)
Arizona Flora	Kearney and Peebles (1960)
Flora of the Pacific Northwest	Hitchcock and Cronquist (1973)
A California Flora	Munz and Keck (1959)
Flora of Missouri	Steyermark (1963)
Manual of the Plants of Colorado	Harrington (1979)
Intermountain Flora - Vascular Plants of the Intermountain West, USA - Vols I and II	Cronquist et al. (1972)
Flora of Idaho	Davis (1952)
Aquatic and Wetland Plants of the Southeastern United States - Vols I and II	Godfrey and Wooten (1979)
Manual of Grasses of the U.S.	Hitchcock (1950)

(b) *Botanical journals.* Some botanical journals contain studies that define species occurrence in various hydrologic regimes. Examples of such journals include: *Ecology, Ecological Monographs, American Journal of Botany, Journal of American Forestry, and Wetlands: The Journal of the Society of Wetland Scientists.*

(c) *Technical reports.* Governmental agencies periodically publish reports (e.g., literature reviews) that contain information on plant species occurrence in relation to hydrologic regimes. Examples of such publications include the CE preliminary regional wetland guides (Table 2) published by the U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (WES) and the wetland community and estuarine profiles of various habitat types (Table 3) published by the FWS.

(d) *Technical workshops, conferences, and symposia*. Publications resulting from periodic scientific meetings contain valuable information that can be used to support a decision regarding the presence of hydrophytic vegetation. These usually address specific regions or wetland types. For example, distribution of bottomland hardwood forest species in relation to hydrologic regimes was examined at a workshop on bottomland hardwood forest wetlands of the Southeastern United States (Clark and Benforado 1981).

(e) *Wetland plant database*. The NWI is producing a Plant Database that contains habitat information on approximately 5,200 plant species that occur at some estimated probability in wetlands, as compiled from the technical literature. When completed, this computerized database will be available to all governmental agencies.

(4) *Physiological adaptations*. Physiological adaptations include any features of the metabolic processes of plants that make them particularly fitted for life in saturated soil conditions. *NOTE: It is impossible to detect the presence of physiological adaptations in plant species during onsite visits.* Physiological adaptations known for hydrophytic species and species known to exhibit these adaptations are listed and discussed in Appendix C, Section 3.

(5) *Reproductive adaptations*. Some plant species have reproductive features that enable them to become established and grow in saturated soil conditions. Reproductive adaptations known for hydrophytic species are presented in Appendix C, Section 3.

Hydric Soils

Definition

36. ~~A hydric soil is a soil that is saturated, flooded, or ponded long enough during the growing season to develop anaerobic conditions that favor the growth and regeneration of hydrophytic vegetation (U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Soil Conservation Service (SCS) 1985, as amended by the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils (NTCHS) in December 1986).~~

Criteria for hydric soils

37. ~~Based on the above definition, the NTCHS developed the following criteria for hydric soils:~~

a. ~~All Histosols[1] except Folists;~~

b. ~~Soils in Aquic suborders, Aquic subgroups, Albolls suborder, Salorthids great group, or Pell great groups of Vertisols that are:~~

(1) ~~Somewhat poorly drained and have a water table less than 0.5 ft[2] from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season, or~~

(2) ~~Poorly drained or very poorly drained and have either:~~

(a) ~~A water table at less than 1.0 ft from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season if permeability is equal to or greater than 6.0 in/hr in all layers within 20 inches; or~~

(b) ~~A water table at less than 1.5 ft from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season if permeability is less than 6.0 in/hr in any layer within 20 inches; or~~

c. ~~Soils that are ponded for long or very long duration during the growing season; or~~

d. ~~Soils that are frequently flooded for long duration or very long duration during the growing season.~~

USER NOTES: The hydric soil definition and criteria published in the 1987 Corps Manual are obsolete. Current hydric soil definition, criteria, and lists are available over the World Wide Web from the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91, 6 Mar 92)

A hydric soil may be either drained or undrained, and a drained hydric soil may not continue to support hydrophytic vegetation. Therefore, not all areas having hydric soils will qualify as wetlands. Only when a hydric soil supports hydrophytic vegetation and the area has indicators of wetland hydrology may the soil be referred to as a "wetland" soil.

38. A drained hydric soil is one in which sufficient ground or surface water has been removed by artificial means such that the area will no longer support hydrophyte vegetation. Onsite evidence of drained soils includes:

---

[1] Soil nomenclature follows USDA-SCS (1975).

[2] A table of factors for converting Non-SI Units of Measurement to SI (metric) units is presented on page x.

a. Presence of ditches or canals of sufficient depth to lower the water table below the major portion of the root zone of the prevalent vegetation.

b. Presence of dikes, levees, or similar structures that obstruct normal inundation of an area.

c. Presence of a tile system to promote subsurface drainage.

d. Diversion of upland surface runoff from an area.

Although it is important to record such evidence of drainage of an area, a hydric soil that has been drained or partially drained still allows the soil parameter to be met. However, the area will not qualify as a wetland if the degree of drainage has been sufficient to preclude the presence of either hydrophytic vegetation or a hydrologic regime that occurs in wetlands. *NOTE: The mere presence of drainage structures in an area is not sufficient basis for concluding that a hydric soil has been drained; such areas may continue to have wetland hydrology.*

General information

39. Soils consist of unconsolidated, natural material that supports, or is capable of supporting, plant life. The upper limit is air and the lower limit is either bedrock or the limit of biological activity. Some soils have very little organic matter (mineral soils), while others are composed primarily of organic matter (Histosols). The relative proportions of particles (sand, silt, clay, and organic matter) in a soil are influenced by many interacting environmental factors. As normally defined, a soil must support plant life. The concept is expanded to include substrates that could support plant life. For various reasons, plants may be absent from areas that have well-defined soils.

40. A soil profile (Figure 2) consists of various soil layers described from the surface downward. Most soils have two or more identifiable horizons. A soil horizon is a layer oriented approximately parallel to the soil surface, and usually is differentiated from contiguous horizons by characteristics that can be seen or measured in the field (e.g., color, structure, texture, etc.). Most mineral soils have A-, B-, and C-horizons, and many have surficial organic layers (O-horizon). The A-horizon, the surface soil or topsoil, is a zone in which organic matter is usually being added to the mineral soil. It is also the zone from which both mineral and organic matter are being moved slowly downward. The next major horizon is the B-horizon, often referred to as the subsoil. The B-horizon is the zone of maximum accumulation of materials. It is usually characterized by higher clay content and/or more pronounced soil structure development and lower organic matter than the A-horizon. The next major horizon is usually the C-horizon, which consists of unconsolidated parent material that has not been sufficiently weathered to exhibit characteristics of the B-horizon. Clay content and degree of soil structure development in the C-horizon are usually less than in the B-horizon. The lowest major horizon, the R-horizon, consists of consoli-

dated bedrock. In many situations, this horizon occurs at such depths that it has no significant influence on soil characteristics.

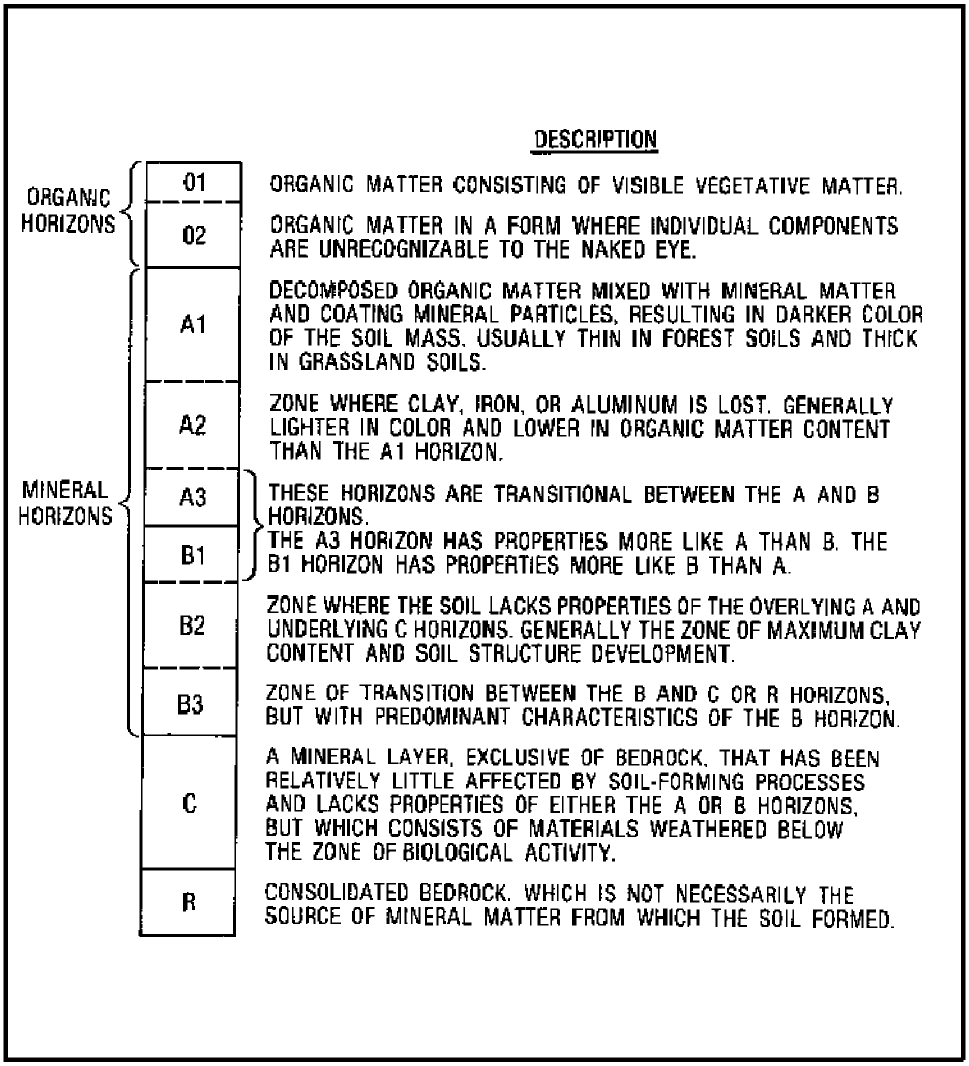


Figure 2. Generalized soil profile

Influencing factors

41. Although all soil-forming factors (climate, parent material, relief, organisms, and time) affect the characteristics of a hydric soil, the overriding influence is the hydrologic regime. The unique characteristics of hydric soils result from the influence of periodic or permanent inundation or soil saturation for sufficient duration to effect anaerobic conditions. Prolonged anaerobic soil conditions lead to a reducing environment, thereby lowering the soil redox potential. This results in chemical reduction of some soil components (e.g., iron and manganese oxides), which leads to development of soil colors and other physical characteristics that usually are indicative of hydric soils.

Classification

42. Hydric soils occur in several categories of the current soil classification system, which is published in *Soil Taxonomy* (USDA-SCS 1975). This classification system is based on physical and chemical properties of soils that can be seen, felt, or measured. Lower taxonomic categories of the system (e.g., soil series and soil phases) remain relatively unchanged from earlier classification systems.

43. Hydric soils may be classified into two broad categories: organic and mineral. Organic soils (Histosols) develop under conditions of nearly continuous saturation and/or inundation. All organic soils are hydric soils except Folists, which are freely drained soils occurring on dry slopes where excess litter accumulates over bedrock. Organic hydric soils are commonly known as peats and mucks. All other hydric soils are mineral soils. Mineral soils have a wide range of textures (sandy to clayey) and colors (red to gray). Mineral hydric soils are those periodically saturated for sufficient duration to produce chemical and physical soil properties associated with a reducing environment. They are usually gray and/or mottled immediately below the surface horizon (see paragraph 44*d*), or they have thick, dark-colored surface layers overlying gray or mottled subsurface horizons.

Wetland indicators (nonsandy soils)

44. Several indicators are available for determining whether a given soil meets the definition and criteria for hydric soils. Any one of the following indicates that hydric soils are present:[1]

Figure 3. Organic soil

a. *Organic soils (Histosols).* A soil is an organic soil when: (1) more than 50 percent (by volume) of the upper 32 inches of soil is composed of organic soil material;[2] or (2) organic soil material of any thickness rests on bedrock. Organic soils (Figure 3) are saturated for long periods and are commonly called peats or mucks.

b. *Histic epipedons.* A histic epipedon is an 8- to 16-inch layer at or near the surface of a mineral hydric soil that is saturated with

---

[1] Indicators are listed in order of decreasing reliability. Although all are valid indicators, some are stronger indicators than others. When a decision is based on an indicator appearing in the lower portion of the list, re-evaluate the parameter to ensure that the proper decision was reached.
[2] A detailed definition of organic soil material is available in USDA-SCS (1975).

water for 30 consecutive days or more in most years and contains a minimum of 20 percent organic matter when no clay is present or a minimum of 30 percent organic matter when clay content is 60 percent or greater. Soils with histic epipedons are inundated or saturated for sufficient periods to greatly retard aerobic decomposition of the organic surface, and are considered to be hydric soils.

c. *Sulfidic material.* When mineral soils emit an odor of rotten eggs, hydrogen sulfide is present. Such odors are only detected in waterlogged soils that are permanently saturated and have sulfidic material within a few centimeters of the soil surface. Sulfides are produced only in a reducing environment.

d. *Aquic or peraquic moisture regime.* An aquic moisture regime is a reducing one; i.e., it is virtually free of dissolved oxygen because the soil is saturated by ground water or by water of the capillary fringe (USDA-SCS 1975). Because dissolved oxygen is removed from ground water by respiration of microorganisms, roots, and soil fauna, it is also implicit that the soil temperature is above biologic zero (5° C) at some time while the soil is saturated. Soils with *peraquic* moisture regimes are characterized by the presence of ground water always at or near the soil surface. Examples include soils of tidal marshes and soils of closed, landlocked depressions that are fed by permanent streams.

e. *Reducing soil conditions.* Soils saturated for long or very long duration will usually exhibit reducing conditions. Under such conditions, ions of iron are transformed from a ferric valence state to a ferrous valence state. This condition can often be detected in the field by a ferrous iron test. A simple colorimetric field test kit has been developed for this purpose. When a soil extract changes to a pink color upon addition of α,α'-dipyridyl, ferrous iron is present, which indicates a reducing soil environment. *NOTE: This test cannot be used in mineral hydric soils having low iron content, organic soils, and soils that have been desaturated for significant periods of the growing season.*

f. *Soil colors.* The colors of various soil components are often the most diagnostic indicator of hydric soils. Colors of these components are strongly influenced by the frequency and duration of soil saturation, which leads to reducing soil conditions. Mineral hydric soils will be either gleyed or will have bright mottles and/or low matrix chroma. These are discussed below:

   (1) *Gleyed soils (gray colors).* Gleyed soils develop when anaerobic soil conditions result in pronounced chemical reduction of iron, manganese, and other elements, thereby producing gray soil colors. Anaerobic conditions that occur in waterlogged soils result in the predominance of reduction processes, and such soils are greatly reduced. Iron is one of the most abundant elements in soils. Under anaerobic conditions, iron in converted from the oxidized (ferric)

Figure 4. Gleyed soil

Figure 5. Soil showing matrix (brown) and mottles (reddish-brown)

state to the reduced (ferrous) state, which results in the bluish, greenish, or grayish colors associated with the gleying effect (Figure 4). Gleying immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower) is an indication of a markedly reduced soil, and gleyed soils are hydric soils. Gleyed soil conditions can be determined by using the gley page of the Munsell Color Book (Munsell Color 1975).

(2) *Soils with bright mottles and/or low matrix chroma.* Mineral hydric soils that are saturated for substantial periods of the growing season (but not long enough to produce gleyed soils) will either have bright mottles and a low matrix chroma or will lack mottles but have a low matrix chroma (see Appendix D, Section 1, for a definition and discussion of "chroma" and other components of soil color). *Mottled* means "marked with spots of contrasting color." Soils that have brightly colored mottles and a low matrix chroma are indicative of a fluctuating water table. The soil *matrix* is the portion (usually more than 50 percent) of a given soil layer that has the predominant color (Figure 5). Mineral hydric soils usually have one of the following color features in the horizon immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower):

(a) Matrix chroma of 2 or less[1] in mottled soils.

(b) Matrix chroma of 1 or less[1] in unmottled soils.

NOTE: The matrix chroma of some dark (black) mineral hydric soils will not conform to the criteria described in (a) and (b) above; in such soils, gray mottles occurring at 10 inches or less are indicative of hydric conditions.

---

[1] Colors should be determined in soils that have been moistened; otherwise, state that colors are for dry soils.

CAUTION: Soils with significant coloration due to the nature of the parent material (e.g., red soils of the Red River Valley) may not exhibit the above characteristics. In such cases, this indicator cannot be used.

g. *Soil appearing on hydric soils list.* Using the criteria for hydric soils (paragraph 37), the NTCHS has developed a list of hydric soils.

USER NOTES: The NRCS has developed local lists of hydric soil mapping units that are available from NRCS county and area offices. These local lists are the preferred hydric soil lists to use in making wetland determinations. (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92)

Listed soils have reducing conditions for a significant portion of the growing season in a major portion of the root zone and are frequently saturated within 12 inches of the soil surface. ~~The NTCHS list of hydric soils is presented in Appendix D, Section 2.~~ *CAUTION: Be sure that the profile description of the mapping unit conforms to that of the sampled soil.*

Figure 6. Iron and manganese concretions

h. *Iron and manganese concretions.* During the oxidation-reduction process, iron and manganese in suspension are sometimes segregated as oxides into concretions or soft masses (Figure 6). These accumulations are usually black or dark brown. Concretions >2 mm in diameter occurring within 7.5 cm of the surface are evidence that the soil is saturated for long periods near the surface.

Wetland indicators (sandy soils)

45. Not all indicators listed in paragraph 44 can be applied to sandy soils. *In particular, soil color should not be used as an indicator in most sandy soils.* However, three additional soil features may be used as indicators of sandy hydric soils, including:

a. *High organic matter content in the surface horizon.* Organic matter tends to accumulate above or in the surface horizon of sandy soils that are inundated or saturated to the surface for a significant portion of the growing season. Prolonged inundation or saturation creates anaerobic conditions that greatly reduce oxidation of organic matter.

b. *Streaking of subsurface horizons by organic matter.* Organic matter is moved downward through sand as the water table fluctuates. This often occurs more rapidly and to a greater degree in some vertical sections of a sandy soil containing high content of organic matter than in others. Thus, the sandy soil appears vertically streaked with darker areas. When soil from a darker area is rubbed between the fingers, the organic matter stains the fingers.

c. *Organic pans.* As organic matter is moved downward through sandy soils, it tends to accumulate at the point representing the most commonly occurring depth to the water table. This organic matter tends to become slightly cemented with aluminum, forming a thin layer of hardened soil (spodic horizon). These horizons often occur at depths of 12 to 30 inches below the mineral surface. Wet spodic soils usually have thick dark surface horizons that are high in organic matter with dull, gray horizons above the spodic horizon.

USER NOTES: The NRCS has developed regional lists of "Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States" (Version 3.2, July 1996, or later). Until approved, these indicators do not supersede those given in the 1987 Corps Manual and supplemental guidance but may be used as supplementary information. Several of the NRCS indicators were developed specifically to help in identifying hydric soils in certain problem soil types (e.g., sandy soils, soils derived from red parent materials, soils with thick, dark surfaces). These indicators may be used under procedures given in the Problem Area section of the 1987 Manual. (HQUSACE, 21 Mar 97)

CAUTION: In recently deposited sandy material (e.g., accreting sandbars), it may be impossible to find any of these indicators. In such cases, consider this as a natural atypical situation.

Wetland Hydrology

Definition

46. The term "wetland hydrology" encompasses all hydrologic characteristics of areas that are periodically inundated or have soils saturated to the surface at some time during the growing season. Areas with evident characteristics of wetland hydrology are those where the presence of water has an overriding influence on characteristics of vegetation and soils due to anaerobic and reducing conditions, respectively. Such characteristics are usually present in areas that

are inundated or have soils that are saturated to the surface for sufficient duration to develop hydric soils and support vegetation typically adapted for life in periodically anaerobic soil conditions. Hydrology is often the least exact of the parameters, and indicators of wetland hydrology are sometimes difficult to find in the field. However, it is essential to establish that a wetland area is periodically inundated or has saturated soils during the growing season.

USER NOTES: The 1987 Manual (see glossary, Appendix A) defines "growing season" as the portion of the year when soil temperature (measured 20 inches below the surface) is above biological zero (5° C or 41° F). This period "can be approximated by the number of frost-free days." Estimated starting and ending dates for the growing season are based on 28° F air temperature thresholds at a frequency of 5 years in 10 (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92). This information is available in NRCS county soil survey reports or from the NRCS Water and Climate Center in Portland, Oregon, for most weather stations in the country.

Influencing factors

47. Numerous factors (e.g., precipitation, stratigraphy, topography, soil permeability, and plant cover) influence the wetness of an area. Regardless, the characteristic common to all wetlands is the presence of an abundant supply of water. The water source may be runoff from direct precipitation, headwater or backwater flooding, tidal influence, ground water, or some combination of these sources. The frequency and duration of inundation or soil saturation varies from nearly permanently inundated or saturated to irregularly inundated or saturated. Topographic position, stratigraphy, and soil permeability influence both the frequency and duration of inundation and soil saturation. Areas of lower elevation in a floodplain or marsh have more frequent periods of inundation and/or greater duration than most areas at higher elevations. Floodplain configuration may significantly affect duration of inundation. When the floodplain configuration is conducive to rapid runoff, the influence of frequent periods of inundation on vegetation and soils may be reduced. Soil permeability also influences duration of inundation and soil saturation. For example, clayey soils absorb water more slowly than sandy or loamy soils, and therefore have slower permeability and remain saturated much longer. Type and amount of plant cover affect both degree of inundation and duration of saturated soil conditions. Excess water drains more slowly in areas of abundant plant cover, thereby increasing frequency and duration of inundation and/or soil saturation. On the other hand, transpiration rates are higher in areas of abundant plant cover, which may reduce the duration of soil saturation.

Classification

48. Although the interactive effects of all hydrologic factors produce a continuum of wetland hydrologic regimes, efforts have been made to classify wet-

land hydrologic regimes into functional categories. These efforts have focused on the use of frequency, timing, and duration of inundation or soil saturation as a basis for classification. A classification system developed for nontidal areas is presented in Table 5. This classification system was slightly modified from the system developed by the Workshop on Bottomland Hardwood Forest Wetlands of the Southeastern United States (Clark and Benforado 1981). Recent research indicates that duration of inundation and/or soil saturation during the growing season is more influential on the plant community than frequency of inundation/saturation during the growing season (Theriot, in press). Thus, frequency of inundation and soil saturation are not included in Table 5. ~~The WES has developed a computer program that can be used to transform stream gage data to mean sea level elevations representing the upper limit of each hydrologic zone shown in Table 5. This program is available upon request.~~[1]

USER NOTES: Based on Table 5 and on paragraph 55, Step 8.i., an area has wetland hydrology if it is inundated or saturated to the surface continuously for at least 5% of the growing season in most years (50% probability of recurrence). These areas are wetlands if they also meet hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soil requirements. (HQUSACE, 7 Oct 91 and 6 Mar 92)

Table 5
Hydrologic Zones[1] - Nontidal Areas

Zone	Name	Duration[2]	Comments
I[3]	Permanently inundated	100 percent	Inundation >6.6 ft mean water depth
II	Semipermanently to nearly permanently inundated or saturated	>75 - <100 percent	Inundation defined as ≤6.6 ft mean water depth
III	Regularly inundated or saturated	>25 - 75 percent	
IV	Seasonally inundated or saturated	>12.5 - 25 percent	
V	Irregularly inundated or saturated	≥5 - 12.5 percent	Many areas having these hydrologic characteristics are not wetlands
VI	Intermittently or never inundated or saturated	<5 percent	Areas with these hydrologic characteristics are not wetlands

[1] Zones adapted from Clark and Benforado (1981).
[2] Refers to duration of inundation and/or soil saturation during the growing season.
[3] This defines an aquatic habitat zone.

Wetland indicators

49. Indicators of wetland hydrology may include, but are not necessarily limited to: drainage patterns, drift lines, sediment deposition, watermarks,

[1] ~~R. F. Theriot, Environmental Laboratory, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, P.O. Box 631, Vicksburg, MS 39180.~~

stream gage data and flood predictions, historic records, visual observation of saturated soils, and visual observation of inundation. Any of these indicators may be evidence of wetland hydrologic characteristics. Methods for determining hydrologic indicators can be categorized according to the type of indicator. Recorded data include stream gage data, lake gage data, tidal gage data, flood predictions, and historical records. Use of these data is commonly limited to areas adjacent to streams or other similar areas. Recorded data usually provide both short- and long-term information about frequency and duration of inundation, but contain little or no information about soil saturation, which must be gained from soil surveys or other similar sources. The remaining indicators require field observations. Field indicators are evidence of present or past hydrologic events (e.g., location and height of flooding). Indicators for recorded data and field observations include:[1]

a. *Recorded data.* Stream gage data, lake gage data, tidal gage data, flood predictions, and historical data may be available from the following sources:

(1) *CE District Offices.* Most CE Districts maintain stream, lake, and tidal gage records for major water bodies in their area. In addition, CE planning and design documents often contain valuable hydrologic information. For example, a General Design Memorandum (GDM) usually describes flooding frequencies and durations for a project area. Furthermore, the extent of flooding within a project area is sometimes indicated in the GDM according to elevation (height) of certain flood frequencies (1-, 2-, 5-, 10-year, etc.).

(2) *U.S. Geological Survey (USGS).* Stream and tidal gage data are available from the USGS offices throughout the Nation, and the latter are also available from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. CE Districts often have such records.

(3) *State, county, and local agencies.* These agencies often have responsibility for flood control/relief and flood insurance.

(4) *Soil Conservation Service Small Watershed Projects.* Planning documents from this agency are often helpful, and can be obtained from the SCS district office in the county.

(5) *Planning documents of developers.*

b. *Field data.* The following field hydrologic indicators can be assessed quickly, and although some of them are not necessarily indicative of hydrologic events that occur only during the growing season, they do provide evidence that inundation and/or soil saturation has occurred:

---

[1] Indicators are listed in order of decreasing reliability. Although all are valid indicators, some are stronger indicators than others. When a decision is based on an indicator appearing in the lower portion of the list, re-evaluate the parameter to ensure that the proper decision was reached.

(1) *Visual observation of inundation.* The most obvious and revealing hydrologic indicator may be simply observing the areal extent of inundation. However, because seasonal conditions and recent weather conditions can contribute to surface water being present on a nonwetland site, both should be considered when applying this indicator.

(2) *Visual observation of soil saturation.* Examination of this indicator requires digging a soil pit (Appendix D, Section 1) to a depth of 16 inches and observing the level at which water stands in the hole after sufficient time has been allowed for water to drain into the hole. The required time will vary depending on soil texture. In some cases, the upper level at which water is flowing into the pit can be observed by examining the wall of the hole. This level represents the depth to the water table. The depth to saturated soils will always be nearer the surface due to the capillary fringe.

For soil saturation to impact vegetation, it must occur within a *major portion of the root zone* (usually within 12 inches of the surface) of the prevalent vegetation. The major portion of the root zone is that portion of the soil profile in which more than one half of the plant roots occur. *CAUTION: In some heavy clay soils, water may not rapidly accumulate in the hole even when the soil is saturated. If water is observed at the bottom of the hole but has not filled to the 12-inch depth, examine the sides of the hole and determine the shallowest depth at which water is entering the hole. When applying this indicator, both the season of the year and preceding weather conditions must be considered.*

Figure 7. Watermark on trees

(3) *Watermarks.* Watermarks are most common on woody vegetation. They occur as stains on bark (Figure 7) or other fixed objects (e.g., bridge pillars, buildings, fences, etc.). When several watermarks are present, the highest reflects the maximum extent of recent inundation.

(4) *Drift lines.* This indicator is most likely to be found adjacent to streams or other

sources of water flow in wetlands, but also often occurs in tidal marshes. Evidence consists of deposition of debris in a line on the surface (Figure 8) or debris entangled in aboveground vegetation or other fixed objects. Debris usually consists of remnants of vegetation (branches, stems, and leaves), sediment, litter, and other waterborne materials deposited parallel to the direction of water flow. Drift lines provide an indication of the minimum portion of the area inundated during a flooding event; the maximum level of inundation is generally at a higher elevation than that indicated by a drift line.

Figure 8. Absence of leaf litter

(5) *Sediment deposits.* Plants and other vertical objects often have thin layers, coatings, or depositions of mineral or organic matter on them after inundation (Figure 9). This evidence may remain for a considerable period before it is removed by precipitation or subsequent inundation. Sediment deposition on vegetation and other objects provides an indication of the minimum inundation level. When sediments are primarily organic (e.g., fine organic material, algae), the detritus may become encrusted on or slightly above the soil surface after dewatering occurs (Figure 10).

Figure 9. Sediment deposit on plants

(6) *Drainage patterns within wetlands.* This indicator, which occurs primarily in wetlands

Figure 10. Encrusted detritus

adjacent to streams, consists of surface evidence of drainage flow into or through an area (Figure 11). In some wetlands, this evidence may exist as a drainage pattern eroded into the soil, vegetative matter (debris) piled against thick vegetation or woody stems oriented perpendicular to the direction of water flow, or the absence of leaf litter (Figure 8). Scouring is often evident around roots of persistent vegetation. Debris may be deposited in or along the drainage pattern (Figure 12).

Figure 11. Drainage pattern

Figure 12. Debris deposited in stream channel

CAUTION: Drainage patterns also occur in upland areas after periods of considerable precipitation; therefore, topographic position must also be considered when applying this indicator.

USER NOTES: The hydrology indicators described above are considered to be "primary indicators", any one of which is sufficient evidence that wetland hydrology is present when combined with a hydrophytic plant community and hydric soils. In addition, the following "secondary indicators" may also be used to determine whether wetland hydrology is present. In the absence of a primary indicator, any two secondary indicators must be present to conclude that wetland hydrology is present. Secondary indicators are: presence of oxidized rhizospheres associated with living plant roots in the upper 12 inches of the soil, presence of water-stained leaves, local soil survey hydrology data for identified soils, and the FAC-neutral test of the vegetation. (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92)

Part IV: Methods

Section A. Introduction

50. Part IV contains sections on preliminary data gathering, method selection, routine determination procedures, comprehensive determination procedures, methods for determinations in atypical situations, and guidance for wetland determinations in natural situations where the three-parameter approach may not always apply.

51. Significant flexibility has been incorporated into Part IV. The user is presented in Section B with various potential sources of information that may be helpful in making a determination, but not all identified sources of information may be applicable to a given situation. *NOTE: The user is not required to obtain information from all identified sources.* Flexibility is also provided in method selection (Section C). Three levels of routine determinations are available, depending on the complexity of the required determination and the quantity and quality of existing information. Application of methods presented in both Section D (routine determinations) and Section E (comprehensive determinations) may be tailored to meet site-specific requirements, especially with respect to sampling design.

52. Methods presented in Sections D and E vary with respect to the required level of technical knowledge and experience of the user. Application of the qualitative methods presented in Section D (routine determinations) requires considerably less technical knowledge and experience than does application of the quantitative methods presented in Section E (comprehensive determinations). The user must at least be able to identify the dominant plant species in the project area when making a routine determination (Section D), and should have some basic knowledge of hydric soils when employing routine methods that require soils examination. Comprehensive determinations require a basic understanding of sampling principles and the ability to identify all commonly occurring plant species in a project area, as well as a good understanding of indicators of hydric soils and wetland hydrology. The comprehensive method should only be employed by experienced field inspectors.

Section B. Preliminary Data Gathering and Synthesis

53. This section discusses potential sources of information that may be helpful in making a wetland determination. When the routine approach is used, it may often be possible to make a wetland determination based on available vegetation, soils, and hydrology data for the area. However, this section deals only with identifying potential information sources, extracting pertinent data, and synthesizing the data for use in making a determination. Based on the quantity and quality of available information and the approach selected for use (Section C), the user is referred to either Section D or Section E for the actual determination. Completion of Section B is not required, but is recommended because the available information may reduce or eliminate the need for field effort and decrease the time and cost of making a determination. However, there are instances in small project areas in which the time required to obtain the information may be prohibitive. In such cases PROCEED to paragraph 55, complete STEPS 1 through 3, and PROCEED to Section D or E.

Data sources

54. Obtain the following information, when available and applicable:

a. *USGS quadrangle maps*. USGS quadrangle maps are available at different scales. When possible, obtain maps at a scale of 1:24,000; otherwise, use maps at a scale of 1:62,500. Such maps are available from USGS in Reston, VA, and Menlo Park, CA, but they may already be available in the CE District Office. These maps provide several types of information:

(1) Assistance in locating field sites. Towns, minor roads, bridges, streams, and other landmark features (e.g., buildings, cemeteries, water bodies, etc.) not commonly found on road maps are shown on these maps.

(2) Topographic details, including contour lines (usually at 5- or 10-ft contour intervals).

(3) General delineation of wet areas (swamps and marshes). *NOTE: The actual wet area may be greater than that shown on the map because USGS generally maps these areas based on the driest season of the year.*

(4) Latitude, longitude, townships, ranges, and sections. These provide legal descriptions of the area.

(5) Directions, including both true and magnetic north.

(6) Drainage patterns.

(7) General land uses, such as cleared (agriculture or pasture), forested, or urban.

CAUTION: Obtain the most recent USGS maps. Older maps may show features that no longer exist and will not show new features that have developed since the map was constructed. Also, USGS is currently changing the mapping scale from 1:24,000 to 1:25,000.

b. National Wetlands Inventory products.

(1) *Wetland maps.* The standard NWI maps are at a scale of 1:24,000 or, where USGS base maps at this scale are not available, they are at 1:62,500 (1:63,350 in Alaska). Smaller scale maps ranging from 1:100,000 to 1:500,000 are also available for certain areas. Wetlands on NWI maps are classified in accordance with Cowardin et al. (1979). *CAUTION: Since not all delineated areas on NWI maps are wetlands under Department of Army jurisdiction, NWI maps should not be used as the sole basis for determining whether wetland vegetation is present.* NWI "User Notes" are available that correlate the classification system with local wetland community types. An important feature of this classification system is the water regime modifier, which describes the flooding or soil saturation characteristics. Wetlands classified as having a temporarily flooded or intermittently flooded water regime should be viewed with particular caution since this designation is indicative of plant communities that are transitional between wetland and nonwetland. These are among the most difficult plant communities to map accurately from aerial photography. For wetlands "wetter" than temporarily flooded and intermittently flooded, the probability of a designated map unit on recent NWI maps being a wetland (according to Cowardin et al. 1979) at the time of the photography is in excess of 90 percent. *CAUTION: Due to the scale of aerial photography used and other factors, all NWI map boundaries are approximate.* The optimum use of NWI maps is to plan field review (i.e., how wet, big, or diverse is the area?) and to assist during field review, particularly by showing the approximate areal extent of the wetland and its association with other communities. NWI maps are available either as a composite with, or an overlay for, USGS base maps and may be obtained from the NWI Central Office in St. Petersburg, FL, the Wetland Coordinator at each FWS regional office, or the USGS.

USER NOTES: NWI products and information are available over the World Wide Web.

(2) *Plant database.* This database of approximately 5,200 plant species that occur in wetlands provides information (e.g., ranges, habitat, etc.) about each plant species from the technical literature. The database served as a focal point for development of a national list of plants that occur in wetlands (~~Appendix C, Section 1~~).

c. *Soil Surveys.* Soil surveys are prepared by the SCS for political units (county, parish, etc.) in a state. Soil surveys contain several types of information:

(1) General information (e.g., climate, settlement, natural resources, farming, geology, general vegetation types).

(2) Soil maps for general and detailed planning purposes. These maps are usually generated from fairly recent aerial photography. *CAUTION: The smallest mapping unit is 3 acres, and a given soil series as mapped may contain small inclusions of other series.*

(3) Uses and management of soils. Any wetness characteristics of soils will be mentioned here.

(4) Soil properties. Soil and water features are provided that may be very helpful for wetland investigations. Frequency, duration, and timing of inundation (when present) are described for each soil type. Water table characteristics that provide valuable information about soil saturation are also described. Soil permeability coefficients may also be available.

(5) Soil classification. Soil series and phases are usually provided. Published soil surveys will not always be available for the area. If not, contact the county SCS office and determine whether the soils have been mapped.

d. *Stream and tidal gage data.* These documents provide records of tidal and stream flow events. They are available from either the USGS or CE District office.

e. *Environmental impact assessments (EIAs), environmental impact statements (EISs), general design memoranda (GDM), and other similar publications.* These documents may be available from Federal agencies for an area that includes the project area. They may contain some indication of the location and characteristics of wetlands consistent with the required criteria (vegetation, soils, and hydrology), and often contain flood frequency and duration data.

f. *Documents and maps from State, county, or local governments.* Regional maps that characterize certain areas (e.g., potholes, coastal areas, or basins) may be helpful because they indicate the type and character of wetlands.

g. *Remote sensing.* Remote sensing is one of the most useful information sources available for wetland identification and delineation. Recent aerial photography, particularly color infrared, provides a detailed view of an area; thus, recent land use and other features (e.g., general type and areal extent of plant communities and degree of inundation of the area when the photography was taken) can be determined. The multiagency cooperative National High Altitude Aerial Photography Program (HAP) has 1:59,000-scale color infrared photography for approximately 85 percent (December 1985) of the coterminous United States from 1980 to 1985. This photography has excellent resolution and can be ordered enlarged to 1:24,000 scale from USGS. Satellite images provide similar information as aerial photography, although the much smaller scale makes observation of detail more difficult without sophisticated equipment and extensive training. Satellite images provide more recent coverage than aerial photography (usually at 18-day intervals). Individual satellite images are more expensive than aerial photography, but are not as expensive as having an area flown and photographed at low altitudes. However, better resolution imagery is now available with remote sensing equipment mounted on fixed-wing aircraft.

h. *Local individuals and experts.* Individuals having personal knowledge of an area may sometimes provide a reliable and readily available source of information about the area, particularly information on the wetness of the area.

i. *USGS land use and land cover maps.* Maps created by USGS using remotely sensed data and a geographical information system provide a systematic and comprehensive collection and analysis of land use and land cover on a national basis. Maps at a scale of 1:250,000 are available as overlays that show land use and land cover according to nine basic levels. One level is wetlands (as determined by the FWS), which is further subdivided into forested and nonforested areas. Five other sets of maps show political units, hydrologic units, census subdivisions of counties, Federal land ownership, and State land ownership. These maps can be obtained from any USGS mapping center.

j. *Applicant's survey plans and engineering designs.* In many cases, the permit applicant will already have had the area surveyed (often at 1-ft contours or less) and will also have engineering designs for the proposed activity.

Data synthesis

55. When employing Section B procedures, use the above sources of information to complete the following steps:

- *STEP 1 - Identify the project area on a map.* Obtain a USGS quadrangle map (1:24,000) or other appropriate map, and locate the area identified in the permit application. PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Prepare a base map.* Mark the project area boundaries on the map. Either use the selected map as the base map or trace the area on a mylar overlay, including prominent landscape features (e.g., roads, buildings, drainage patterns, etc.). If possible, obtain diazo copies of the resulting base map. PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Determine size of the project area.* Measure the area boundaries and calculate the size of the area. PROCEED TO STEP 4 OR TO SECTION D OR E IF SECTION B IS NOT USED.

- *STEP 4 - Summarize available information on vegetation.* Examine available sources that contain information about the area vegetation. Consider the following:

  a. USGS quadrangle maps. Is the area shown as a marsh or swamp? *CAUTION: Do not use this as the sole basis for determining that hydrophytic vegetation is present.*

  b. NWI overlays or maps. Do the overlays or maps indicate that hydrophytic vegetation occurs in the area? If so, identify the vegetation type(s).

  c. EIAs, EISs, or GDMs that include the project area. Extract any vegetation data that pertain to the area.

  d. Federal, State, or local government documents that contain information about the area vegetation. Extract appropriate data.

  e. Recent (within last 5 years) aerial photography of the area. Can the area plant community type(s) be determined from the photography? Extract appropriate data.

  f. Individuals or experts having knowledge of the area vegetation. Contact them and obtain any appropriate information. *CAUTION: Ensure that the individual providing the information has firsthand knowledge of the area.*

  g. Any published scientific studies of the area plant communities. Extract any appropriate data.

  h. Previous wetland determinations made for the area. Extract any pertinent vegetation data.

  When the above have been considered, PROCEED TO STEP 5.

- *STEP 5 - Determine whether the vegetation in the project area is adequately characterized.* Examine the summarized data (STEP 4) and determine whether the area plant communities are adequately characterized. For routine determinations, the plant community type(s) and the dominant species in each vegetation layer of each community type must be known. Dominant species are those that have the largest relative basal area (overstory),[1] height (woody understory), number of stems (woody vines), or greatest areal cover (herbaceous understory). For comprehensive determinations, each plant community type present in the project area must have been quantitatively described within the past 5 years using accepted sampling and analytical procedures, and boundaries between community types must be known. Record information on DATA FORM 1.[2] In either case, PROCEED TO Section F if there is evidence of recent significant vegetation alteration due to human activities or natural events. Otherwise, PROCEED TO STEP 6.

- *STEP 6 - Summarize available information on area soils.* Examine available information and describe the area soils. Consider the following:

  a. County soil surveys. Determine the soil series present and extract characteristics for each. *CAUTION: Soil mapping units sometimes include more than one soil series.*

  b. Unpublished county soil maps. Contact the local SCS office and determine whether soil maps are available for the area. Determine the soil series of the area, and obtain any available information about possible hydric soil indicators (paragraph 44 or 45) for each soil series.

  c. Published EIAs, EISs, or GDMs that include soils information. Extract any pertinent information.

  d. Federal, State, and/or local government documents that contain descriptions of the area soils. Summarize these data.

  e. Published scientific studies that include area soils data. Summarize these data.

  f. Previous wetland determinations for the area. Extract any pertinent soils data.

  When the above have been considered, PROCEED TO STEP 7.

---

[1] This term is used because species having the largest individuals may not be dominant when only a few are present. To use relative basal area, consider both the size and number of individuals of a species and subjectively compare with other species present.

[2] A separate DATA FORM 1 must be used for each plant community type.

- *STEP 7 - Determine whether soils of the project area have been adequately characterized.* Examine the summarized soils data and determine whether the soils have been adequately characterized. For routine determinations, the soil series must be known. For comprehensive determinations, both the soil series and the boundary of each soil series must be known. Record information on DATA FORM 1. In either case, if there is evidence of recent significant soils alteration due to human activities or natural events, PROCEED TO Section F. Otherwise, PROCEED TO STEP 8.

- *STEP 8 - Summarize available hydrology data.* Examine available information and describe the area hydrology. Consider the following:

  a. USGS quadrangle maps. Is there a significant, well-defined drainage through the area? Is the area within a major floodplain or tidal area? What range of elevations occur in the area, especially in relation to the elevation of the nearest perennial watercourse?

  b. NWI overlays or maps. Is the area shown as a wetland or deepwater aquatic habitat? What is the water regime modifier?

  c. EIAs, EISs, or GDMs that describe the project area. Extract any pertinent hydrologic data.

  d. Floodplain management maps. These maps may be used to extrapolate elevations that can be expected to be inundated on a l-, 2-, 3-year, etc., basis. Compare the elevations of these features with the elevation range of the project area to determine the frequency of inundation.

  e. Federal, State, and local government documents (e.g., CE floodplain management maps and profiles) that contain hydrologic data. Summarize these data.

  f. Recent (within past 5 years) aerial photography that shows the area to be inundated. Record the date of the photographic mission.

  g. Newspaper accounts of flooding events that indicate periodic inundation of the area.

  h. SCS County Soil Surveys that indicate the frequency and duration of inundation and soil saturation for area soils. *CAUTION: Data provided only represent average conditions for a particular soil series in its natural undrained state, and cannot be used as a positive hydrologic indicator in areas that have significantly altered hydrology.*

i. Tidal or stream gage data for a nearby water body that apparently influences the area. Obtain the gage data and complete (1) below if the routine approach is used, or (2) below if the comprehensive approach is used (OMIT IF GAGING STATION DATA ARE UNAVAILABLE):

(1) *Routine approach.* Determine the highest water level elevation reached during the growing season for each of the most recent 10 years of gage data. Rank these elevations in descending order and select the fifth highest elevation. Combine this elevation with the mean sea level elevation of the gaging station to produce a mean sea level elevation for the highest water level reached every other year. *NOTE: Stream gage data are often presented as flow rates in cubic feet per second. In these cases, ask the CE District's Hydrology Branch to convert flow rates to corresponding mean sea level elevations and adjust gage data to the site.* Compare the resulting elevations reached biennially with the project area elevations. If the water level elevation exceeds the area elevation, the area is inundated during the growing season on average at least biennially.

(2) *Comprehensive approach.* Complete the following:

(a) *Decide whether hydrologic data reflect the apparent hydrology.* Data available from the gaging station may or may not accurately reflect the area hydrology. Answer the following questions:

- Does the water level of the area appear to fluctuate in a manner that differs from that of the water body on which the gaging station is located? (In ponded situations, the water level of the area is usually higher than the water level at the gaging station.)

- Are less than 10 years of daily readings available for the gaging station?

- Do other water sources that would not be reflected by readings at the gaging station appear to significantly affect the area? For example, do major tributaries enter the stream or tidal area between the area and gaging station?

If the answer to any of the above questions is YES, the area hydrology cannot be determined from the gaging station data. If the answer to all of the above questions is NO, PROCEED TO (b).

(b) *Analyze hydrologic data.* Subject the hydrologic data to appropriate analytical procedures. Either use duration curves or a computer program developed by WES (available from the Environmental Laboratory upon request) for determining the mean sea level elevation representing the upper limits of wetland hydrology. In the latter case, when the site elevation is lower than the mean sea level elevation representing a 5-percent duration of inundation and saturation during the growing season, the area has a hydrologic regime that may occur in wetlands. *NOTE: Duration curves do not reflect the period of soil saturation following dewatering.*

When all of the above have been considered, PROCEED TO STEP 9.

- *STEP 9 - Determine whether hydrology is adequately characterized.* Examine the summarized data and determine whether the hydrology of the project area is adequately characterized. For routine determinations, there must be documented evidence of frequent inundation or soil saturation during the growing season. For comprehensive determinations, there must be documented quantitative evidence of frequent inundation or soil saturation during the growing season, based on at least 10 years of stream or tidal gage data. Record information on DATA FORM 1. In either case, if there is evidence of recent significant hydrologic alteration due to human activities or natural events, PROCEED TO Section F. Otherwise, PROCEED TO Section C.

Section C. Selection of Method

56. All wetland delineation methods described in this manual can be grouped into two general types: routine and comprehensive. Routine determinations (Section D) involve simple, rapidly applied methods that result in sufficient qualitative data for making a determination. Comprehensive methods (Section E) usually require significant time and effort to obtain the needed quantitative data. The primary factor influencing method selection will usually be the complexity of the required determination. However, comprehensive methods may sometimes be selected for use in relatively simple determinations when rigorous documentation is required.

57. Three levels of routine wetland determinations are described below. Complexity of the project area and the quality and quantity of available information will influence the level selected for use.

a. *Level 1 - Onsite Inspection Unnecessary.* This level may be employed when the information already obtained (Section B) is sufficient for making a determination for the entire project area (see Section D, Subsection 1).

b. *Level 2 - Onsite Inspection Necessary.* This level must be employed when there is insufficient information already available to characterize the vegetation, soils, and hydrology of the entire project area (see Section D, Subsection 2).

c. *Level 3 - Combination of Levels 1 and 2.* This level should be used when there is sufficient information already available to characterize the vegetation, soils, and hydrology of a portion, but not all, of the project area. Methods described for Level 1 may be applied to portions of the area for which adequate information already exists, and onsite methods (Level 2) must be applied to the remainder of the area (see Section D, Subsection 3).

58. After considering all available information, select a tentative method (see above) for use, and PROCEED TO EITHER Section D or E, as appropriate. *NOTE: Sometimes it may be necessary to change to another method described in the manual, depending on the quality of available information and/or recent changes in the project area.*

Section D. Routine Determinations

59. This section describes general procedures for making routine wetland determinations. It is assumed that the user has already completed all applicable steps in Section B,[1] and a routine method has been tentatively selected for use (Section C). Subsections 1 through 3 describe steps to be followed when making a routine determination using one of the three levels described in Section C. Each subsection contains a flowchart that defines the relationship of steps to be used for that level of routine determinations. *NOTE: The selected method must be considered tentative because the user may be required to change methods during the determination.*

Subsection 1 - Onsite Inspection Unnecessary

60. This subsection describes procedures for making wetland determinations when sufficient information is already available (Section B) on which to base

[1] If it has been determined that it is more expedient to conduct an onsite inspection than to search for available information, complete STEPS 1 through 3 of Section B, and PROCEED TO Subsection 2.

the determination. A flowchart of required steps to be completed is presented in Figure 13, and each step is described below.

Equipment and materials

61. No special equipment is needed for applying this method. The following materials will be needed:

a. Map of project area (Section B, STEP 2).

b. Copies of DATA FORM 1 (Appendix B).

c. Appendices C and D to this manual.

Procedure

62. Complete the following steps, as necessary:

- *STEP 1 - Determine whether available data are sufficient for entire project area.* Examine the summarized data (Section B, STEPS 5, 7, and 9) and determine whether the vegetation, soils, and hydrology of the entire project area are adequately characterized. If so, PROCEED TO STEP 2. If all three parameters are adequately characterized for a portion, but not all, of the project area, PROCEED TO Subsection 3. If the vegetation, soils, and hydrology are not adequately characterized for any portion of the area, PROCEED TO Subsection 2.

- *STEP 2 - Determine whether hydrophytic vegetation is present.* Examine the vegetation data and list on DATA FORM 1 the dominant plant species found in each vegetation layer of each community type. *NOTE: A separate DATA FORM 1 will be required for each community type.* Record the indicator status for each dominant species ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~. When more than 50 percent of the dominant species in a plant community have an indicator status of OBL, FACW, and/or FAC,[1] hydrophytic vegetation is present. If one or more plant communities comprise hydrophytic vegetation, PROCEED TO STEP 3. If none of the plant communities comprise hydrophytic vegetation, none of the area is a wetland. Complete the vegetation section for each DATA FORM 1.

---

[1] For the FAC-neutral option, see paragraph 35*a*.

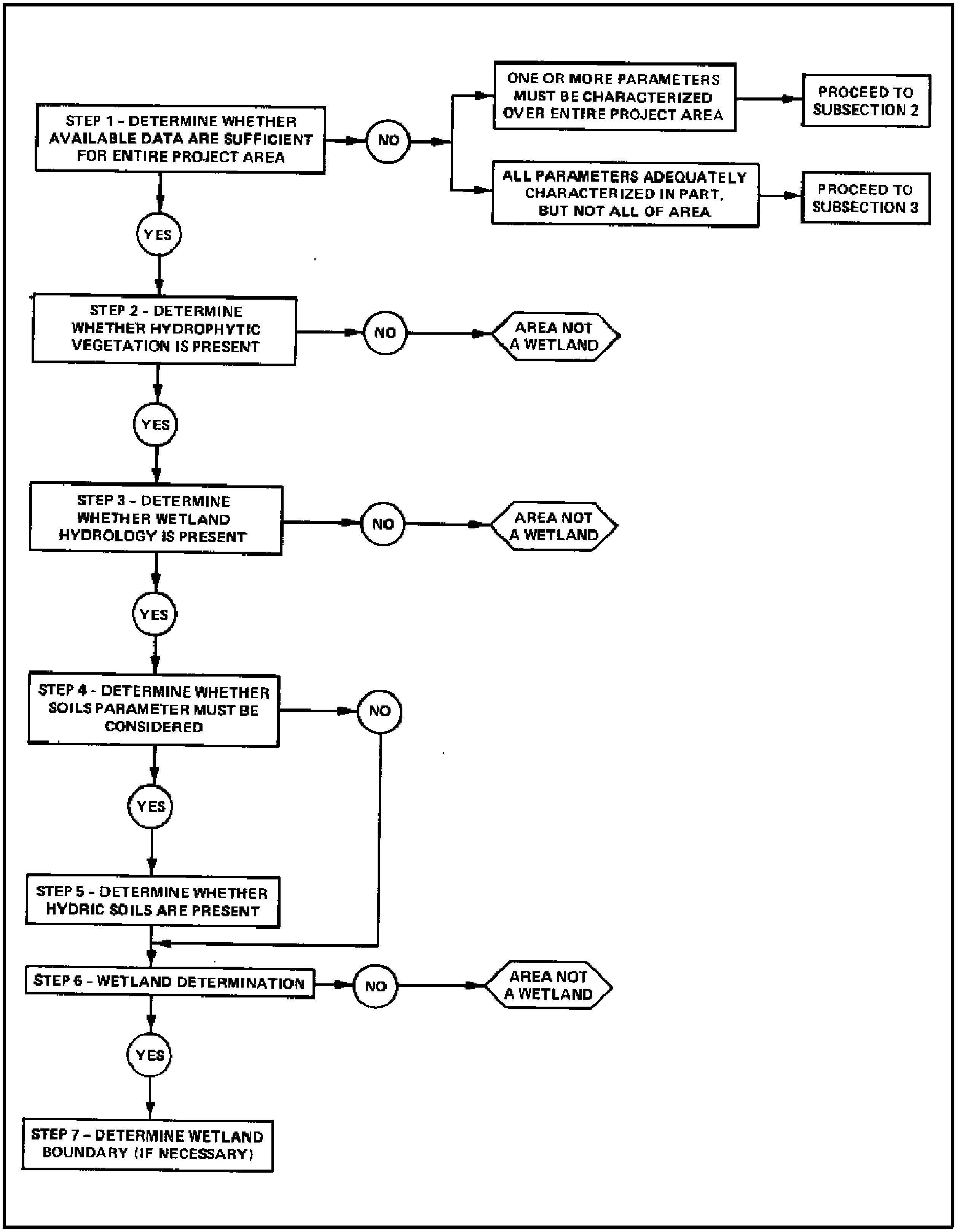


Figure 13. Flowchart of steps involved in making a wetland determination when an onsite inspection is unnecessary

- *STEP 3 - Determine whether wetland hydrology is present.* When one of the following conditions applies (STEP 2), it is only necessary to confirm that there has been no recent hydrologic alteration of the area:

   a. The entire project area is occupied by a plant community or communities in which all dominant species are OBL ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~.

   b. The project area contains two or more plant communities, all of which are dominated by OBL and/or FACW species, and the wetland-nonwetland boundary is abrupt[1] (e.g., a *Spartina alterniflora* marsh bordered by a road embankment).

   If either *a* or *b* applies, look for recorded evidence of recently constructed dikes, levees, impoundments, and drainage systems, or recent avalanches, mudslides, beaver dams, etc., that have significantly altered the area hydrology. If any significant hydrologic alteration is found, determine whether the area is still periodically inundated or has saturated soils for sufficient duration to support the documented vegetation (*a* or *b* above). When *a* or *b* applies and there is no evidence of recent hydrologic alteration, or when *a* or *b* do not apply and there is documented evidence that the area is periodically inundated or has saturated soils, wetland hydrology is present. Otherwise, wetland hydrology does not occur on the area. Complete the hydrology section of DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 4.

- *STEP 4 - Determine whether the soils parameter must be considered.* When either *a* or *b* of STEP 3 applies *and* there is either no evidence of recent hydrologic alteration of the project area or if wetland hydrology presently occurs on the area, hydric soils can be assumed to be present. If so, PROCEED TO STEP 6. Otherwise PROCEED TO STEP 5.

- *STEP 5 - Determine whether hydric soils are present.* Examine the soils data (Section B, STEP 7) and record the soil series or soil phase on DATA FORM 1 for each community type. Determine whether the soil is listed as a hydric soil ~~(Appendix D, Section 2)~~. If all community types have hydric soils, the entire project area has hydric soils. *(CAUTION: If the soil series description makes reference to inclusions of other soil types, data must be field verified).* Any portion of the area that lacks hydric soils is a nonwetland. Complete the soils section of each DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 6.

---

[1] There must be documented evidence of periodic inundation or saturated soils when the project area: (a) has plant communities dominated by one or more FAC species; (b) has vegetation dominated by FACW species but no adjacent community dominated by OBL species; (c) has a gradual, nondistinct boundary between wetlands and nonwetlands; and/or (d) is known to have or is suspected of having significantly altered hydrology.

- *STEP 6 - Wetland determination*. Examine the DATA FORM 1 for each community type. Any portion of the project area is a wetland that has:

  a. Hydrophytic vegetation that conforms to one of the conditions identified in STEP 3*a* or 3*b* and has either no evidence of altered hydrology or confirmed wetland hydrology.

  b. Hydrophytic vegetation that does not conform to STEP 3*a* or 3*b*, has hydric soils, and has confirmed wetland hydrology.

  If STEP 6*a* or 6*b* applies to the entire project area, the entire area is a wetland. Complete a DATA FORM 1 for all plant community types. Portions of the area not qualifying as a wetland based on an office determination might or might not be wetlands. If the data used for the determination are considered to be highly reliable, portions of the area not qualifying as wetlands may properly be considered nonwetlands. PROCEED TO STEP 7. If the available data are incomplete or questionable, an onsite inspection (Subsection 2) will be required.

- *STEP 7 - Determine wetland boundary*. Mark on the base map all community types determined to be wetlands with a W and those determined to be nonwetlands with an N. Combine all wetland community types into a single mapping unit. The boundary of these community types is the interface between wetlands and nonwetlands.

Subsection 2 - Onsite Inspection Necessary

63. This subsection describes procedures for routine determinations in which the available information (Section B) is insufficient for one or more parameters. If only one or two parameters must be characterized, apply the appropriate steps and return to Subsection 1 and complete the determination. A flowchart of steps required for using this method is presented in Figure 14, and each step is described below.

Equipment and materials

64. The following equipment and materials will be needed:

a. Base map (Section B, STEP 2).

b. Copies of DATA FORM 1 (one for each community type and additional copies for boundary determinations).

c. Appendices C and D.

d. Compass.

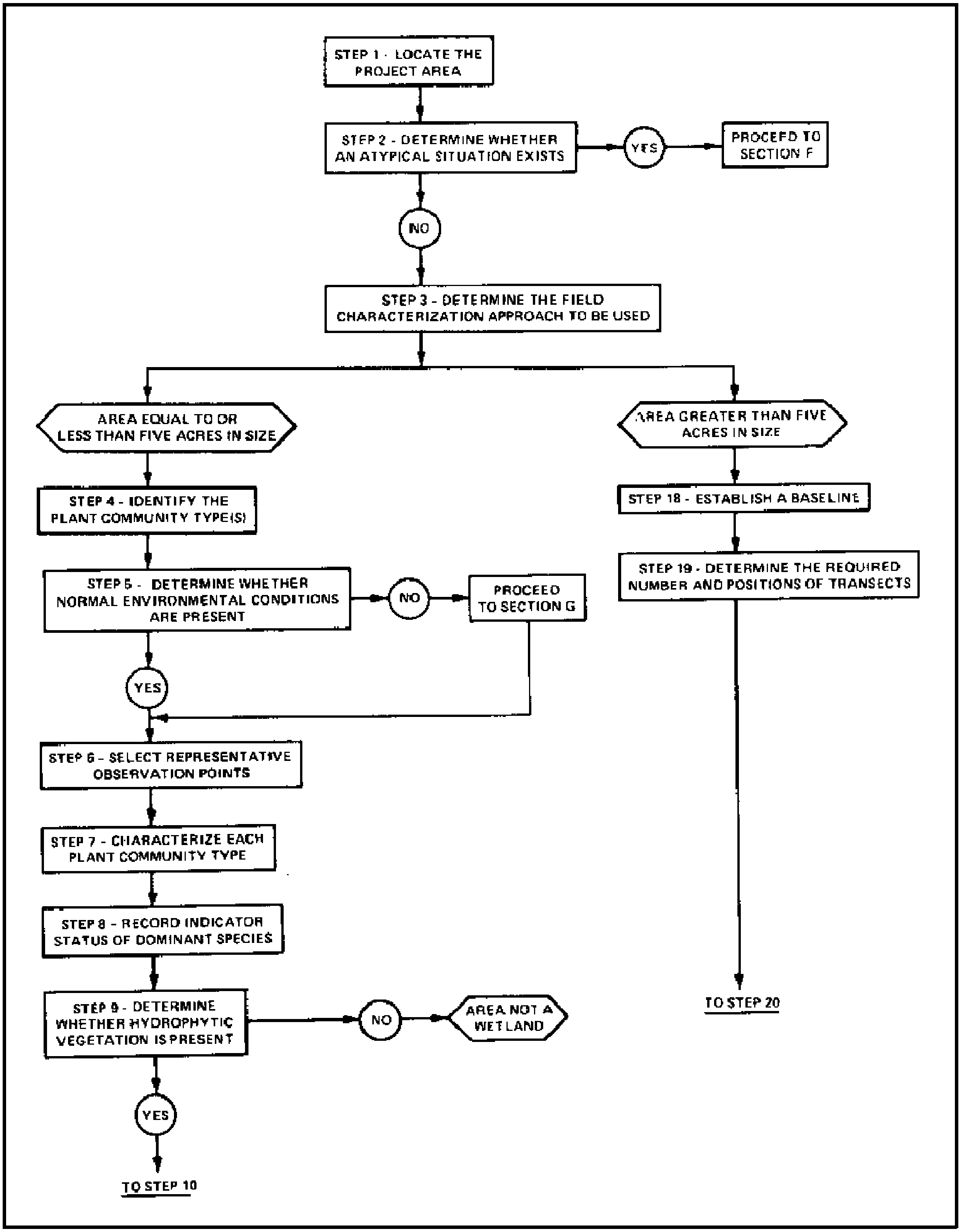


Figure 14. Flowchart of steps involved in making a routine wetland determination when an onsite visit is necessary (Continued)

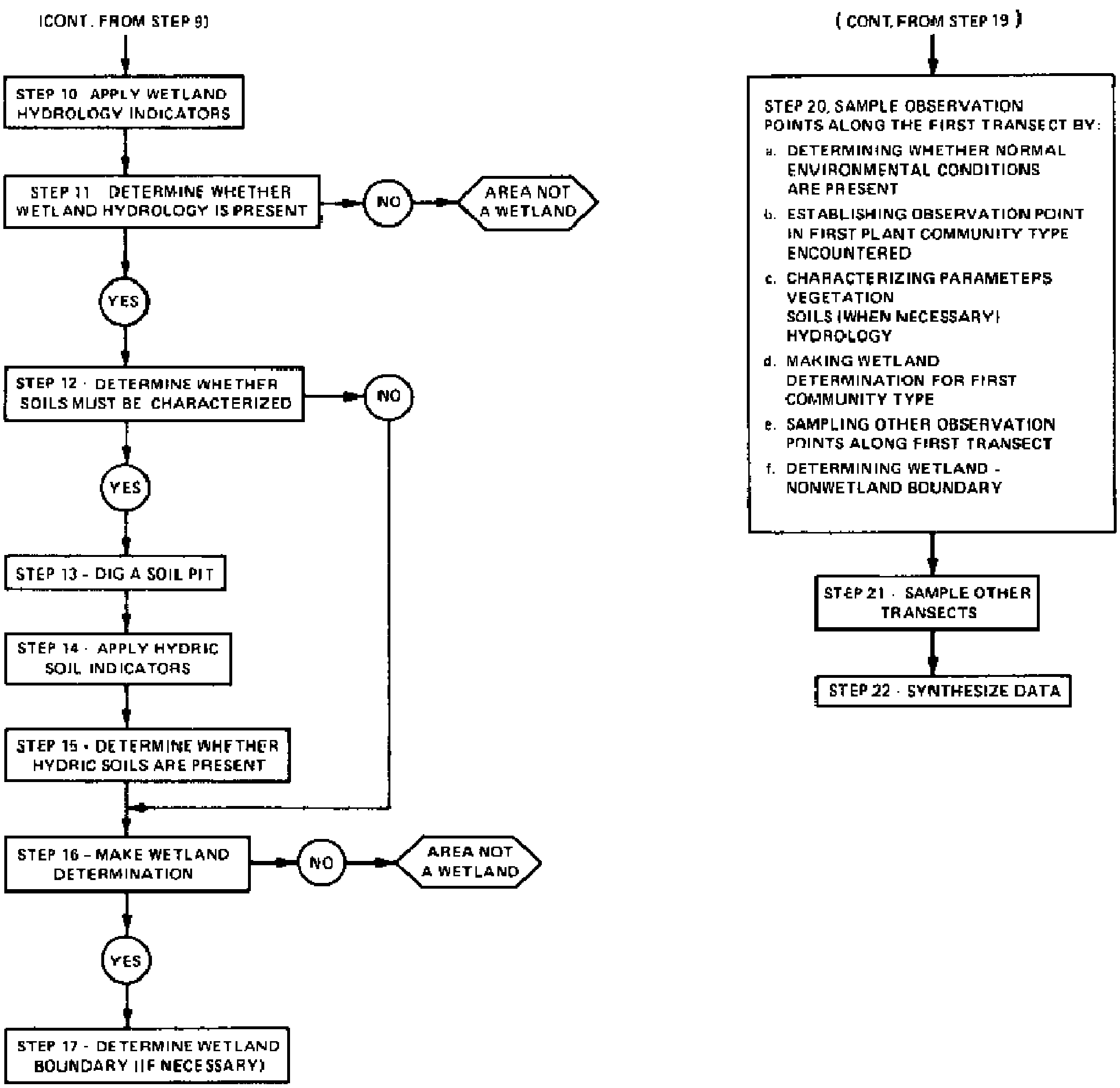


Figure 14. (Concluded)

e. Soil auger or spade (soils only).

f. Tape (300 ft).

g. Munsell Color Charts (Munsell Color 1975) (soils only).

Procedure

65. Complete the following steps, as necessary:

- *STEP 1 - Locate the project area.* Determine the spatial boundaries of the project area using information from a USGS quadrangle map or other appropriate map, aerial photography, and/or the project survey plan (when available). PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Determine whether an atypical situation exists.* Examine the area and determine whether there is evidence of sufficient natural or human-induced alteration to significantly alter the area vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology. *NOTE: Include possible offsite modifications that may affect the area hydrology.* If not, PROCEED TO STEP 3.

  If one or more parameters have been significantly altered by an activity that would normally require a permit, PROCEED TO Section F and determine whether there is sufficient evidence that hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and/or wetland hydrology were present prior to this alteration. Then, return to this subsection and characterize parameters not significantly influenced by human activities. PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Determine the field characterization approach to be used.* Considering the size and complexity of the area, determine the field characterization approach to be used. When the area is equal to or less than 5 acres in size (Section B, STEP 3) and the area is thought to be relatively homogeneous with respect to vegetation, soils, and/or hydrologic regime, PROCEED TO STEP 4. When the area is greater than 5 acres in size (Section B, STEP 3) or appears to be highly diverse with respect to vegetation, PROCEED TO STEP 18.

Areas Equal To or Less Than 5 Acres in Size

- *STEP 4 - Identify the plant community type(s).* Traverse the area and determine the number and locations of plant community types. Sketch the location of each on the base map (Section B, STEP 2), and give each community type a name. PROCEED TO STEP 5.

- *STEP 5 - Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present.* Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present by considering the following:

  a. Is the area presently lacking hydrophytic vegetation or hydrologic indicators due to annual or seasonal fluctuations in precipitation or ground-water levels?

  b. Are hydrophytic vegetation indicators lacking due to seasonal fluctuations in temperature?

  If the answer to either of these questions is thought to be YES, PROCEED TO Section G. If the answer to both questions is NO, PROCEED TO STEP 6.

- *STEP 6 - Select representative observation points.* Select a representative observation point in each community type. A representative observation point is one in which the apparent characteristics (determine visually) best represent characteristics of the entire community. Mark on the base map the approximate location of the observation point. PROCEED TO STEP 7.

- *STEP 7 - Characterize each plant community type.* Visually determine the dominant plant species in each vegetation layer of each community type and record them on DATA FORM 1 (use a separate DATA FORM 1 for each community type). Dominant species are those having the greatest relative basal area (woody overstory),[1] greatest height (woody understory), greatest percentage of areal cover (herbaceous understory), and/or greatest number of stems (woody vines). PROCEED TO STEP 8.

- *STEP 8 - Record indicator status of dominant species.* Record on DATA FORM 1 the indicator status ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~ of each dominant species in each community type. PROCEED TO STEP 9.

- *STEP 9 - Determine whether hydrophytic vegetation is present.* Examine each DATA FORM 1. When more than 50 percent of the dominant species in a community type have an indicator status (STEP 8) of OBL, FACW, and/or FAC,[2] hydrophytic vegetation is present. Complete the vegetation section of each DATA FORM 1. Portions of the area failing this test are not wetlands. PROCEED TO STEP 10.

- *STEP 10 - Apply wetland hydrologic indicators.* Examine the portion of the area occupied by each plant community type for positive indicators

---

[1] This term is used because species having the largest individuals may not be dominant when only a few are present. To determine relative basal area, consider both the size and number of individuals of a species and subjectively compare with other species present.

[2] For the FAC-neutral option, see paragraph 35*a*.

of wetland hydrology (Part III, paragraph 49). Record findings on the appropriate DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 11.

- *STEP 11 - Determine whether wetland hydrology is present.* Examine the hydrologic information on DATA FORM 1 for each plant community type. Any portion of the area having a positive wetland hydrology indicator has wetland hydrology. If positive wetland hydrology indicators are present in all community types, the entire area has wetland hydrology. If no plant community type has a wetland hydrology indicator, none of the area has wetland hydrology. Complete the hydrology portion of each DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 12.

- *STEP 12 - Determine whether soils must be characterized.* Examine the vegetation section of each DATA FORM 1. Hydric soils are assumed to be present in any plant community type in which:

  a. All dominant species have an indicator status of OBL.

  b. All dominant species have an indicator status of OBL or FACW, and the wetland boundary (when present) is abrupt.[1]

  When either *a* or *b* occurs and wetland hydrology is present, check the hydric soils blank as positive on DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 16. If neither *a* nor *b* applies, PROCEED TO STEP 13.

- *STEP 13 - Dig a soil pit.* Using a soil auger or spade, dig a soil pit at the representative location in each community type. The procedure for digging a soil pit is described in Appendix D, Section 1. When completed, approximately 16 inches of the soil profile will be available for examination. PROCEED TO STEP 14.

- *STEP 14 - Apply hydric soil indicators.* Examine the soil at each location and compare its characteristics immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower) with the hydric soil indicators described in Part III, paragraph 44 and/or 45. Record findings on the appropriate DATA FORM 1's. PROCEED TO STEP 15.

- *STEP 15 - Determine whether hydric soils are present.* Examine each DATA FORM 1 and determine whether a positive hydric soil indicator was found. If so, the area at that location has hydric soil. If soils at all sampling locations have positive hydric soil indicators, the entire area has hydric soils. If soils at all sampling locations lack positive hydric soil indicators, none of the area is a wetland. Complete the soil section of each DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 16.

---

[1] The soils parameter must be considered in any plant community in which: (a) the community is dominated by one or more FAC species; (b) no community type dominated by OBL species is present; (c) the boundary between wetlands and nonwetlands is gradual or nondistinct; (d) the area is known to or is suspected of having significantly altered hydrology.

- *STEP 16 - Make wetland determination.* Examine DATA FORM 1. If the entire area presently or normally has wetland indicators of all three parameters (STEPS 9, 11, and 15), the entire area is a wetland. If the entire area presently or normally lacks wetland indicators of one or more parameters, the entire area is a nonwetland. If only a portion of the area presently or normally has wetland indicators for all three parameters, PROCEED TO STEP 17.

- *STEP 17 - Determine wetland-nonwetland boundary.* Mark each plant community type on the base map with a W if wetland or an N if non-wetland. Combine all wetland plant communities into one mapping unit and all nonwetland plant communities into another mapping unit. The wetland-nonwetland boundary will be represented by the interface of these two mapping units.

Areas Greater Than 5 Acres in Size

- *STEP 18 - Establish a baseline.* Select one project boundary as a base-line. The baseline should parallel the major watercourse through the area or should be perpendicular to the hydrologic gradient (Figure 15). Determine the approximate baseline length. PROCEED TO STEP 19.

- *STEP 19 - Determine the required number and position of transects.* Use the following to determine the required number and position of transects (specific site conditions may necessitate changes in intervals):

Baseline Length, Miles	Number of Required Transects
≤0.25	3
>0.25 - 0.50	3
>0.50 - 0.75	3
>0.75 - 1.00	3
>1.00 - 2.00	3-5
>2.00 - 4.00	5-8
>4.00	8 or more[1]

[1] Transect intervals should not exceed 0.5 mile.

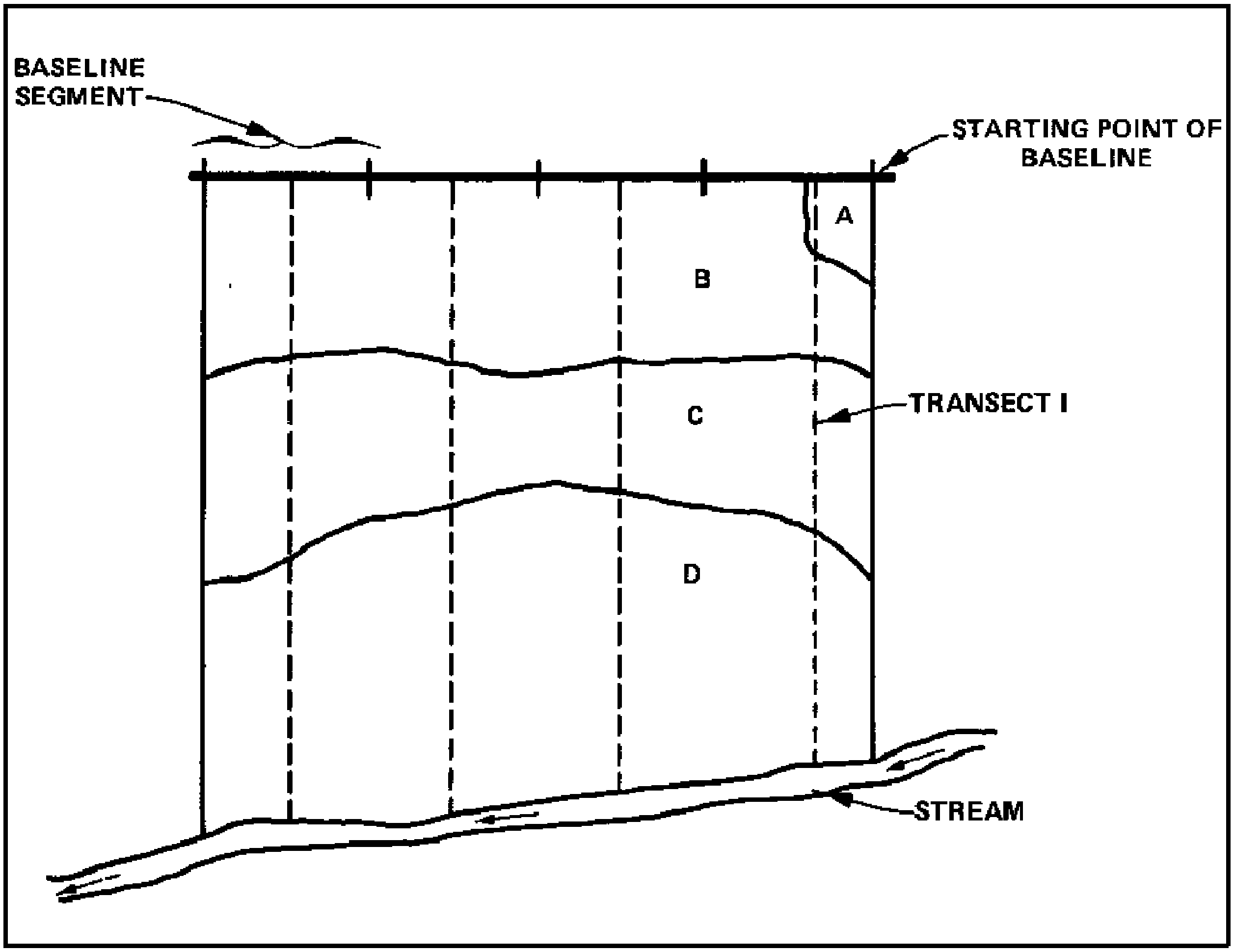


Figure 15. General orientation of baseline and transects (dotted lines) in a hypothetical project area. Alpha characters represent different plant communities. All transects start at the midpoint of a baseline segment except the first, which was repositioned to include community type A

Divide the baseline length by the number of required transects. Establish one transect in each resulting baseline increment. Use the midpoint of each baseline increment as a transect starting point. For example, if the baseline is 1,200 ft in length, three transects would be established—one at 200 ft, one at 600 ft, and one at 1,000 ft from the baseline starting point. *CAUTION: All plant community types must be included. This may necessitate relocation of one or more transect lines. PROCEED TO STEP 20.*

- *STEP 20 - Sample observation points along the first transect.* Beginning at the starting point of the first transect, extend the transect at a 90-deg angle to the baseline. Use the following procedure as appropriate to simultaneously characterize the parameters at each observation point. Combine field-collected data with information already available and make a wetland determination at each observation point. A DATA FORM 1 must be completed for each observation point.

a. *Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present.* Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present by considering the following:

(1) Is the area presently lacking hydrophytic vegetation and/or hydrologic indicators due to annual or seasonal fluctuations in precipitation or ground-water levels?

(2) Are hydrophytic vegetation indicators lacking due to seasonal fluctuations in temperature?

If the answer to either of these questions is thought to be YES, PROCEED TO Section G. If the answer to both questions is NO, PROCEED TO STEP 20*b*.

b. *Establish an observation point in the first plant community type encountered.* Select a representative location along the transect in the first plant community type encountered. When the first plant community type is large and covers a significant distance along the transect, select an area that is no closer than 300 ft to a perceptible change in plant community type. PROCEED TO STEP 20*c*.

c. *Characterize parameters.* Characterize the parameters at the observation point by completing (1), (2), and (3) below:

(1) *Vegetation.* Record on DATA FORM 1 the dominant plant species in each vegetation layer occurring in the immediate vicinity of the observation point. Use a 5-ft radius for herbs and saplings/shrubs, and a 30-ft radius for trees and woody vines (when present). Subjectively determine the dominant species by estimating those having the largest relative basal area[1] (woody overstory), greatest height (woody understory), greatest percentage of areal cover (herbaceous understory), and/or greatest number of stems (woody vines). *NOTE: Plot size may be estimated, and plot size may also be varied when site conditions warrant.* Record on DATA FORM 1 any dominant species observed to have morphological adaptations (Appendix C, Section 3) for occurrence in wetlands, and determine and record dominant species that have known physiological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands (Appendix C, Section 3). Record on DATA FORM 1 the indicator status ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~ of each dominant species. Hydrophytic

[1] This term is used because species having the largest individuals may not be dominant when only a few are present. To use relative basal area, consider both the size and number of individuals of a species and subjectively compare with other species present.

vegetation is present at the observation point when more than 50 percent of the dominant species have an indicator status of OBL, FACW, and/or FAC;[1] when two or more dominant species have observed morphological or known physiological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands; or when other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation (Part III, paragraph 35) are present. Complete the vegetation section of DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO (2).

(2) *Soils*. In some cases, it is not necessary to characterize the soils. Examine the vegetation of DATA FORM 1. Hydric soils can be assumed to be present when:

(a) All dominant plant species have an indicator status of OBL.

(b) All dominant plant species have an indicator status of OBL and/or FACW (at least one dominant species must be OBL).[2]

When either (a) or (b) applies, check the hydric soils blank as positive and PROCEED TO (3). If neither (a) nor (b) applies but the vegetation qualifies as hydrophytic, dig a soil pit at the observation point using the procedure described in Appendix D, Section 1. Examine the soil immediately below the A-horizon or 10-inches (whichever is shallower) and compare its characteristics (Appendix D, Section 1) with the hydric soil indicators described in Part III, paragraph 44 and/or 45. Record findings on DATA FORM 1. If a positive hydric soil indicator is present, the soil at the observation point is a hydric soil. If no positive hydric soil indicator is found, the area at the observation point does not have hydric soils and the area at the observation point is not a wetland. Complete the soils section of DATA FORM 1 for the observation point. PROCEED TO (3) if hydrophytic vegetation (1) and hydric soils (2) are present. Otherwise, PROCEED TO STEP 20*d*.

(3) *Hydrology*. Examine the observation point for indicators of wetland hydrology (Part III, paragraph 49) and record observations on DATA FORM 1. Consider the indicators in the same sequence as presented in Part III, paragraph 49. If a positive wetland hydrology indicator

---

1 For the FAC-neutral option, see paragraph 35*a*.

2 Soils must be characterized when any dominant species has an indicator status of FAC.

is present, the area at the observation point has wetland hydrology. If no positive wetland hydrologic indicator is present, the area at the observation point is not a wetland. Complete the hydrology section of DATA FORM 1 for the observation point. PROCEED TO STEP 20*d*.

d. *Wetland determination.* Examine DATA FORM 1 for the observation point. Determine whether wetland indicators of all three parameters are or would normally be present during a significant portion of the growing season. If so, the area at the observation point is a wetland. If no evidence can be found that the area at the observation point normally has wetland indicators for all three parameters, the area is a nonwetland. PROCEED TO STEP 20*e*.

e. *Sample other observation points along the first transect.* Continue along the first transect until a different community type is encountered. Establish a representative observation point within this community type and repeat STEP 20*c* and 20*d*. If the areas at both observation points are either wetlands or nonwetlands, continue along the transect and repeat STEP 20*c* and 20*d* for the next community type encountered. Repeat for all other community types along the first transect. If the area at one observation point is wetlands and the next observation point is nonwetlands (or vice versa), PROCEED TO STEP 20*f*.

f. *Determine wetland-nonwetland boundary.* Proceed along the transect from the wetland observation point toward the nonwetland observation point. Look for subtle changes in the plant community (e.g., the first appearance of upland species, disappearance of apparent hydrology indicators, or slight changes in topography). When such features are noted, establish an observation point and repeat the procedures described in STEP 20*c* through 20*d*. *NOTE: A new DATA FORM 1 must be completed for this observation point, and all three parameters must be characterized by field observation.* If the area at this observation point is a wetland, proceed along the transect toward the nonwetland observation point until upland indicators are more apparent. Repeat the procedures described in STEP 20*c* through 20*d*. If the area at this observation point is a nonwetland, move halfway back along the transect toward the last documented wetland observation point and repeat the procedure described in STEP 20*c* through 20*d*. Continue this procedure until the wetland-nonwetland boundary is found. It is not necessary to complete a DATA FORM 1 for all intermediate points, but a DATA FORM 1 should be completed for the wetland-nonwetland boundary. Mark the position of the wetland boundary on the base map, and continue along the first transect until all community types have been sampled and all wetland boundaries located. *CAUTION: In areas where wetlands are interspersed among nonwetlands (or vice versa), several boundary determinations will be required.* When all necessary wetland determinations have been completed for the first transect, PROCEED TO STEP 21.

- *STEP 21 - Sample other transects.* Repeat procedures described in STEP 21 for all other transects. When completed, a wetland determination will have been made for one observation point in each community type along each transect, and all wetland-nonwetland boundaries along each transect will have been determined. PROCEED TO STEP 22.

- *STEP 22 - Synthesize data.* Examine all completed copies of DATA FORM 1, and mark each plant community type on the base map. Identify each plant community type as either a wetland (W) or nonwetland (N). If all plant community types are identified as wetlands, the entire area is wetlands. If all plant community types are identified as nonwetlands, the entire area is nonwetlands. If both wetlands and nonwetlands are present, identify observation points that represent wetland boundaries on the base map. Connect these points on the map by generally following contour lines to separate wetlands from nonwetlands. Walk the contour line between transects to confirm the wetland boundary. Should anomalies be encountered, it will be necessary to establish short transects in these areas, apply the procedures described in STEP 20*f*, and make any necessary adjustments on the base map.

Subsection 3 - Combination of Levels I and 2

66. In some cases, especially for large projects, adequate information may already be available (Section B) to enable a wetland determination for a portion of the project area, while an onsite visit will be required for the remainder of the area. Since procedures for each situation have already been described in Subsections 1 and 2, they will not be repeated. Apply the following steps:

- *STEP 1 - Make wetland determination for portions of the project area that are already adequately characterized.* Apply procedures described in Subsection 1. When completed, a DATA FORM 1 will have been completed for each community type, and a map will have been prepared identifying each community type as wetland or nonwetland and showing any wetland boundary occurring in this portion of the project area. PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Make wetland determination for portions of the project area that require an onsite visit.* Apply procedures described in Subsection 2. When completed, a DATA FORM 1 will have been completed for each plant community type or for a number of observation points (including wetland boundary determinations). A map of the wetland (if present) will also be available. PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Synthesize data.* Using the maps resulting from STEPS 1 and 2, prepare a summary map that shows the wetlands of the entire project area. *CAUTION: Wetland boundaries for the two maps will not always match exactly. When this occurs, an additional site visit will be required to refine the wetland boundaries. Since the degree of resolution of wetland boundaries will be greater when determined onsite, it may be necessary to employ procedures described in Subsection 2 in the vicinity of the boundaries determined from Subsection 1 to refine these boundaries.*

Section E. Comprehensive Determinations

67. This section describes procedures for making comprehensive wetland determinations. Unlike procedures for making routine determinations (Section D), application of procedures described in this section will result in maximum information for use in making determinations, and the information usually will be quantitatively expressed. Comprehensive determinations should only be used when the project area is very complex and/or when the determination requires rigorous documentation. This type of determination may be required in areas of any size, but will be especially useful in large areas. There may be instances in which only one parameter (vegetation, soil, or hydrology) is disputed. In such cases, only procedures described in this section that pertain to the disputed parameter need be completed. It is assumed that the user has already completed all applicable steps in Section B. *NOTE: Depending on site characteristics, it may be necessary to alter the sampling design and/or data collection procedures.*

68. This section is divided into five basic types of activities. The first consists of preliminary field activities that must be completed prior to making a determination (STEPS 1 through 5). The second outlines procedures for determining the number and locations of required determinations (STEPS 6 through 8). The third describes the basic procedure for making a comprehensive wetland determination at any given point (STEPS 9 through 17). The fourth describes a procedure for determining wetland boundaries (STEP 18). The fifth describes a procedure for synthesizing the collected data to determine the extent of wetlands in the area (STEPS 20 and 21). A flowchart showing the relationship of various steps required for making a comprehensive determination is presented in Figure 16.

Equipment and materials

69. Equipment and materials needed for making a comprehensive determination include:

a. Base map (Section B, STEP 2).

b. Copies of DATA FORMS 1 and 2.

c. Appendices C and D.

d. Compass.

e. Tape (300 ft).

f. Soil auger or spade.

g. Munsell Color Charts (Munsell Color 1975).

h. Quadrat (3.28 ft by 3.28 ft).

i. Diameter or basal area tape (for woody overstory).

Field procedures

70. Complete the following steps:

- *STEP 1 - Identify the project area*. Using information from the USGS quadrangle or other appropriate map (Section B), locate and measure the spatial boundaries of the project area. Determine the compass heading of each boundary and record on the base map (Section B, STEP 2). The applicant's survey plan may be helpful in locating the project boundaries. PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Determine whether an atypical situation exists*. Examine the area and determine whether there is sufficient natural or human-induced alteration to significantly change the area vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology. If not, PROCEED TO STEP 3. If one or more parameters have been recently altered significantly, PROCEED TO Section F and determine whether there is sufficient evidence that hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and/or wetland hydrology were present on the area prior to alteration. Then return to this section and characterize parameters not significantly influenced by human activities. PROCEED TO STEP 3.

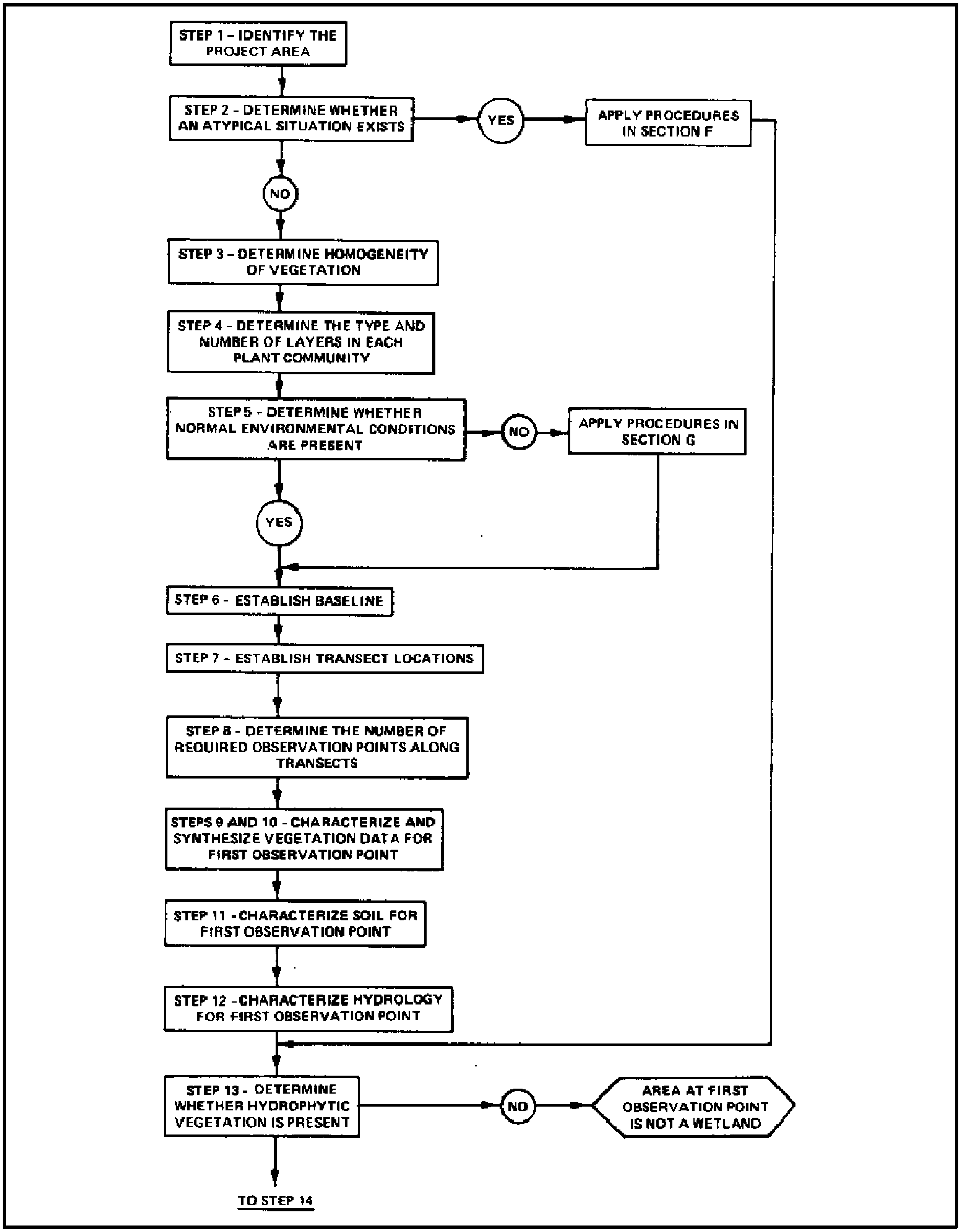


Figure 16. Flowchart of steps involved in making a comprehensive wetland determination (Section E) (Continued)

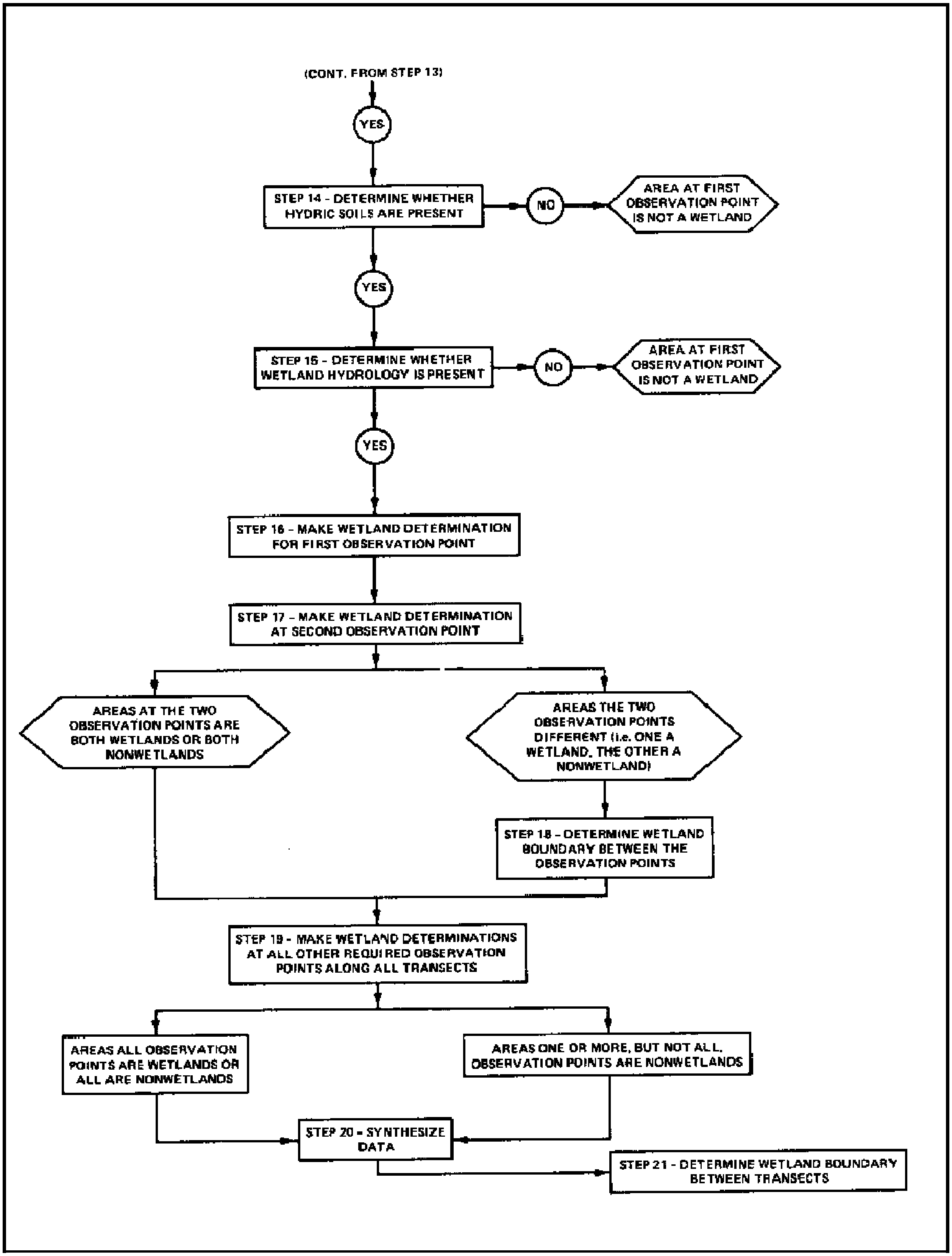


Figure 16. (Concluded)

- *STEP 3 - Determine homogeneity of vegetation.* While completing STEP 2, determine the number of plant community types present. Mark the approximate location of each community type on the base map. The number and locations of required wetland determinations will be strongly influenced by both the size of the area and the number and distribution of plant community types; the larger the area and greater the number of plant community types, the greater the number of required wetland determinations. It is imperative that all plant community types occurring in all portions of the area be included in the investigation. PROCEED TO STEP 4.

- *STEP 4 - Determine the type and number of layers in each plant community.* Examine each identified plant community type and determine the type(s) and number of layers in each community. Potential layers include trees (woody overstory), saplings/shrubs (woody understory), herbs (herbaceous understory), and/or woody vines. PROCEED TO STEP 5.

- *STEP 5 - Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present.* Determine whether normal environmental conditions are present at the observation point by considering the following:

    a. Is the area at the observation point presently lacking hydrophytic vegetation and/or hydrologic indicators due to annual or seasonal fluctuations in precipitation or groundwater levels?

    b. Are hydrophytic vegetation indicators lacking due to seasonal fluctuations in temperature?

  If the answer to either of these questions is thought to be YES, PROCEED TO Section G. If the answer to both questions is NO, PROCEED TO STEP 6.

- *STEP 6 - Establish a baseline.* Select one project boundary area as a baseline. The baseline should extend parallel to any major watercourse and/or perpendicular to a topographic gradient (see Figure 17). Determine the baseline length and record on the base map both the baseline length and its compass heading. PROCEED TO STEP 7.

- *STEP 7 - Establish transect locations.* Divide the baseline into a number of equal segments (Figure 17). Use the following as a guide to determine the appropriate number of baseline segments:

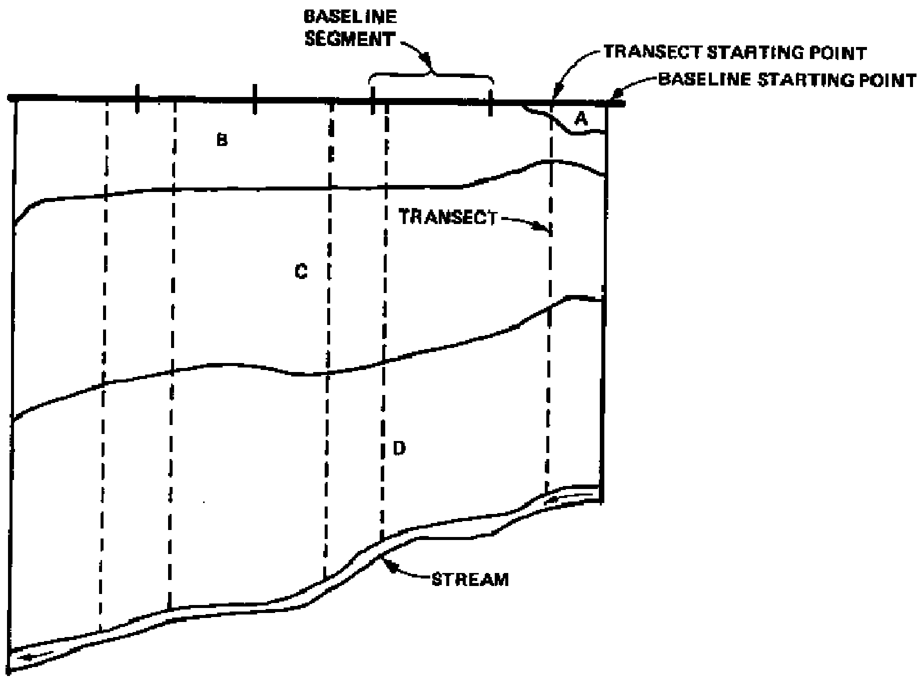


Figure 17. General orientation of baseline and transects in a hypothetical project area. Alpha characters represent different plant communities. Transect positions were determined using a random numbers table

Baseline Length, ft	Number of Segments	Length of Baseline Segment, ft
>50 - 500	3	18 - 167
>500 - 1,000	3	167 - 333
>1,000 - 5,000	5	200 - 1,000
>5,000 - 10,000	7	700 - 1,400
>10,000[1]	Variable	2,000

[1] If the baseline exceeds 5 miles, baseline segments should be 0.5 mile in length.

Use a random numbers table or a calculator with a random numbers generation feature to determine the position of a transect starting point within each baseline segment. For example, when the baseline is 4,000 ft, the number of baseline segments will be five, and the baseline segment length will be 4,000/5 = 800 ft. Locate the first transect within the first 800 ft of the baseline. If the random numbers table yields 264 as the distance from the baseline starting point, measure 264 ft from the baseline starting point and establish the starting point of the first transect. If the second random number selected is 530, the starting point of the second transect will be located at a distance of 1,330 ft (800 + 530 ft) from the baseline starting point. *CAUTION: Make sure that each plant community type is included in at least one transect. If not, modify the sampling design accordingly.* When the starting point locations for all required transects have been determined, PROCEED TO STEP 8.

- *STEP 8 - Determine the number of required observation points along transects.* The number of required observation points along each transect will be largely dependent on transect length. Establish observation points along each transect using the following as a guide:

Transect Length, ft	Number of Observation Points	Interval Between Observation Points, ft
<1,000	2-10	100
1,000 - <5,000	10	100 - 500
5,000 - <10,000	10	500 - 1,000
≥10,000	>10	1,000

Establish the first observation point at a distance of 50 ft from the baseline (Figure 17). When obvious nonwetlands occupy a long portion of the transect from the baseline starting point, establish the first observation point in the obvious nonwetland at a distance of approximately 300 ft from the point that the obvious nonwetland begins to intergrade into a potential wetland community type. Additional observation points must also be established to determine the wetland boundary between successive regular observation points when one of the points is a wetland and the other is a nonwetland. *CAUTION: In large areas having a mosaic of plant community types, several wetland boundaries may occur along the same transect.* PROCEED TO STEP 9 and apply the comprehensive wetland determination procedure at each required observation point. Use the described procedure to simultaneously characterize the vegetation, soil, and hydrology at each required observation point along each transect, and use the resulting characterization to make a wetland determination at each point. *NOTE: ALL required wetland boundary determinations should be made while proceeding along a transect.*

- *STEP 9 - Characterize the vegetation at the first observation point along the first transect.*[1] Record on DATA FORM 2 the vegetation occurring

[1] There is no single best procedure for characterizing vegetation. Methods described in STEP 9 afford standardization of the procedure. However, plot size and descriptors for determining dominance may vary.

at the first observation point along the first transect by completing the following (as appropriate):

a. *Trees.* Identify each tree occurring within a 30-ft radius[1] of the observation point, measure its basal area (square inches) or diameter at breast height (DBH) using a basal area tape or diameter tape, respectively, and record. *NOTE: If DBH is measured, convert values to basal area by applying the formula* $A = \pi r^2$. *This must be done on an individual basis.* A tree is any nonclimbing, woody plant that has a DBH of ≥ 3.0 in., regardless of height.

b. *Saplings/shrubs.* Identify each sapling/shrub occurring within a 10-ft radius of the observation point, estimate its height, and record the midpoint of its class range using the following height classes (height is used as an indication of dominance; taller individuals exert a greater influence on the plant community):

Height Class	Height Class Range, ft	Midpoint of Range, ft
1	1-3	2
2	3-5	4
3	5-7	6
4	7-9	8
5	9-11	10
6	>11	12

A sapling/shrub is any woody plant having a height >3.2 ft but a stem diameter of <3.0 in., exclusive of woody vines.

c. *Herbs.* Place a 3.28- by 3.28-ft quadrat with one corner touching the observation point and one edge adjacent to the transect line. As an alternative, a 1.64-ft-radius plot with the center of the plot representing the observation point position may be used. Identify each plant species with foliage extending into the quadrat and estimate its percent cover by applying the following cover classes:

[1] A larger sampling plot may be necessary when trees are large and widely spaced.

Cover Class	Class Range, Percent	Midpoint of Class Range, Percent
1	0-5	2.5
2	>5-25	15.0
3	>25-50	37.5
4	>50-75	62.5
5	>75-95	85.0
6	>95-100	97.5

Include all nonwoody plants and woody plants <3.2 ft in height. *NOTE: Total percent cover for all species will often exceed 100 percent.*

d. *Woody vines (lianas).* Identify species of woody vines climbing each tree and sapling/shrub sampled in STEPS 9*a* and 9*b* above, and record the number of stems of each. Since many woody vines branch profusely, count or estimate the number of stems at the ground surface. Include only individuals rooted in the 10-ft radius plot. Do not include individuals <3.2 ft in height. PROCEED TO STEP 10.

- *STEP 10 - Analyze field vegetation data.* Examine the vegetation data (STEP 9) and determine the dominant species in each vegetation layer[1] by completing the following:

a. *Trees.* Obtain the total basal area (square inches) for each tree species identified in STEP 9*a* by summing the basal area of all individuals of a species found in the sample plot. Rank the species in descending order of dominance based on total basal area. Complete DATA FORM 2 for the tree layer.

b. *Saplings/shrubs.* Obtain the total height for each sapling/shrub species identified in STEP 9*b*. Total height, which is an estimate of dominance, is obtained by summing the midpoints of height classes for all individuals of a species found in the sample plot. Rank the species in descending order of dominance based on sums of midpoints of height class ranges. Complete DATA FORM 2 for the sapling/shrub layer.

c. *Herbs.* Obtain the total cover for each herbaceous and woody seedling species identified in STEP 9*c*. Total cover is obtained by using the midpoints of the cover class range as-

[1] The same species may occur as a dominant in more than one vegetation layer.

signed to each species (only one estimate of cover is made for a species in a given plot). Rank herbs and woody seedlings in descending order of dominance based on percent cover. Complete DATA FORM 2 for the herbaceous layer.

d. *Woody vines (lianas).* Obtain the total number of individuals of each species of woody vine identified in STEP 9*d*. Rank the species in descending order of dominance based on number of stems. Complete DATA FORM 2 for the woody vine layer. PROCEED TO STEP 11.

- *STEP 11 - Characterize soil.* If a soil survey is available (Section B), the soil type may already be known. Have a soil scientist confirm that the soil type is correct, and determine whether the soil series is a hydric soil ~~(Appendix D, Section 2)~~. *CAUTION: Mapping units on soil surveys sometimes have inclusions of soil series or phases not shown on the soil survey map.* If a hydric soil type is confirmed, record on DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 12. If not, dig a soil pit using a soil auger or spade (See Appendix D, Section 1) and look for indicators of hydric soils immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower) (Part III, paragraphs 44 and/or 45). Record findings on DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 12.

- *STEP 12 - Characterize hydrology.* Examine the observation point for indicators of wetland hydrology (Part III, paragraph 49) and record observations on DATA FORM 1. Consider indicators in the same sequence as listed in paragraph 49. PROCEED TO STEP 13.

- *STEP 13 - Determine whether hydrophytic vegetation is present.* Record the three dominant species from each vegetation layer (five species if only one or two layers are present) on DATA FORM 1.[1] Determine whether these species occur in wetlands by considering the following:

    a. *More than 50 percent of the dominant plant species are OBL, FACW, and/or FAC[2] on lists of plant species that occur in wetlands.* Record the indicator status of all dominant species ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~ on DATA FORM 1. Hydrophytic vegetation is present when the majority of the dominant species have an indicator status of OBL, FACW, or FAC. *CAUTION: Not necessarily all plant communities composed of only FAC species are hydrophytic communities. They are hydrophytic communities only when positive indicators of hydric soils and wetland hydrology are also found.* If this indicator is satisfied, complete the vegetation portion of

---

[1] Record all dominant species when less than three are present in a vegetation layer.
[2] For the FAC-neutral option, see paragraph 35*a*.

DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 14. If not, consider other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.

b. *Presence of adaptations for occurrence in wetlands.* Do any of the species listed on DATA FORM 1 have observed morphological or known physiological adaptations (Appendix C, Section 3) for occurrence in wetlands? If so, record species having such adaptations on DATA FORM 1. When two or more dominant species have observed morphological adaptations or known physiological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands, hydrophytic vegetation is present. If so, complete the vegetation portion of DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 14. If not, consider other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.

c. *Other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.* Consider other indicators (see Part III, paragraph 35) that the species listed on DATA FORM 1 are commonly found in wetlands. If so, complete the vegetation portion of DATA FORM 1 by recording sources of supporting information, and PROCEED TO STEP 14. If no indicator of hydrophytic vegetation is present, the area at the observation point is not a wetland. In such cases, it is unnecessary to consider soil and hydrology at that observation point. PROCEED TO STEP 17.

- *STEP 14 - Determine whether hydric soils are present.* Examine DATA FORM 1 and determine whether any indicator of hydric soils is present. If so, complete the soils portion of DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 15. If not, the area at the observation point is not a wetland. PROCEED TO STEP 17.

- *STEP 15 - Determine whether wetland hydrology is present.* Examine DATA FORM 1 and determine whether any indicator of wetland hydrology is present. Complete the hydrology portion of DATA FORM 1 and PROCEED TO STEP 16.

- *STEP 16 - Make wetland determination.* When the area at the observation point presently or normally has wetland indicators of all three parameters, it is a wetland. When the area at the observation point presently or normally lacks wetland indicators of one or more parameters, it is a nonwetland. PROCEED TO STEP 17.

- *STEP 17 - Make wetland determination at second observation point.* Locate the second observation point along the first transect and make a wetland determination by repeating procedures described in STEPS 9 through 16. When the area at the second observation point is the same as the area at the first observation point (i.e., both wetlands or both nonwetlands), PROCEED TO STEP 19. When the areas at the two observation points are different (i.e., one wetlands, the other nonwetlands), PROCEED TO STEP 18.

- *STEP 18 - Determine the wetland boundary between observation points.* Determine the position of the wetland boundary by applying the following procedure:

  a. Look for a change in vegetation or topography. *NOTE: The changes may sometimes be very subtle.* If a change is noted, establish an observation point and repeat STEPS 9 through 16. Complete a DATA FORM 1. If the area at this point is a wetland, proceed toward the nonwetland observation point until a more obvious change in vegetation or topography is noted and repeat the procedure. If there is no obvious change, establish the next observation point approximately halfway between the last observation point and the nonwetland observation point and repeat STEPS 9 through 16.

  b. Make as many additional wetland determinations as necessary to find the wetland boundary. *NOTE: The completed DATA FORM 1's for the original two observation points often will provide a clue as to the parameters that change between the two points.*

  c. When the wetland boundary is found, mark the boundary location on the base map and indicate on the DATA FORM 1 that this represents a wetland boundary. Record the distance of the boundary from one of the two regular observation points. Since the regular observation points represent known distances from the baseline, it will be possible to accurately pinpoint the boundary location on the base map. PROCEED TO STEP 19.

- *STEP 19 - Make wetland determinations at all other required observation points along all transects.* Continue to locate and sample all required observation points along all transects. *NOTE: The procedure described in STEP 18 must be applied at every position where a wetland boundary occurs between successive observation points.* Complete a DATA FORM 1 for each observation point and PROCEED TO STEP 20.

- *STEP 20 - Synthesize data to determine the portion of the area containing wetlands.* Examine all completed copies of DATA FORM 1 (STEP 19), and mark on a copy of the base map the locations of all observation points that are wetlands with a W and all observation points that are nonwetlands with an N. Also, mark all wetland boundaries occurring along transects with an X. If all the observation points are wetlands, the entire area is wetlands. If all observation points are nonwetlands, none of the area is wetlands. If some wetlands and some nonwetlands are present, connect the wetland boundaries (X) by following contour lines between transects. *CAUTION: If the determination is considered to be* *highly controversial, it may be necessary to be more precise in determining the wetland boundary between transects. This is also true for very large areas where the distance between transects is greater. If this is necessary, PROCEED TO STEP 21.*

- *STEP 21 - Determine wetland boundary between transects.* Two procedures may be used to determine the wetland boundary between transects, both of which involve surveying:

    a. *Survey contour from wetland boundary along transects.* The first method involves surveying the elevation of the wetland boundaries along transects and then extending the survey to determine the same contour between transects. This procedure will be adequate in areas where there is no significant elevational change between transects. However, if a significant elevational change occurs between transects, either the surveyor must adjust elevational readings to accommodate such changes or the second method must be used. *NOTE: The surveyed wetland boundary must be examined to ensure that no anomalies exist. If these occur, additional wetland determinations will be required in the portion of the area where the anomalies occur, and the wetland boundary must be adjusted accordingly.*

    b. *Additional wetland determinations between transects.* This procedure consists of traversing the area between transects and making additional wetland determinations to locate the wetland boundary at sufficiently close intervals (not necessarily standard intervals) so that the area can be surveyed. Place surveyor flags at each wetland boundary location. Enlist a surveyor to survey the points between transects. From the resulting survey data, produce a map that separates wetlands from nonwetlands.

Section F. Atypical Situations

71. Methods described in this section should be used only when a determination has already been made in Section D or E that positive indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and/or wetland hydrology could not be found due to effects of recent human activities or natural events. This section is applicable to delineations made in the following types of situations:

a. *Unauthorized activities.* Unauthorized discharges requiring enforcement actions may result in removal or covering of indicators of one or more wetland parameters. Examples include, but are not limited to: (1) alteration or removal of vegetation; (2) placement of dredged or fill material over hydric soils; and/or (3) construction of levees, drainage systems, or dams that significantly alter the area hydrology. NOTE: This section should not be used for activities that have been previously authorized or those that are exempted from CE regulation. For example, this section is not applicable to areas that have been drained under CE authorization or that did not require CE authorization. Some of these areas may still be wetlands, but procedures described in Section D or E must be used in these cases.

b. *Natural events.* Naturally occurring events may result in either creation or alteration of wetlands. For example, recent beaver dams may impound water, thereby resulting in a shift of hydrology and vegetation to wetlands. However, hydric soil indicators may not have developed due to insufficient time having passed to allow their development. Fire, avalanches, volcanic activity, and changing river courses are other examples. *NOTE: It is necessary to determine whether alterations to an area have resulted in changes that are now the "normal circumstances."* The relative permanence of the change and whether the area is now functioning as a wetland must be considered.

c. *Man-induced wetlands.* Procedures described in Subsection 4 are for use in delineating wetlands that have been purposely or incidentally created by human activities, but in which wetland indicators of one or more parameters are absent. For example, road construction may have resulted in impoundment of water in an area that previously was nonwetland, thereby effecting hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology in the area. However, the area may lack hydric soil indicators. *NOTE: Subsection D is not intended to bring into CE jurisdiction those manmade wetlands that are exempted under CE regulations or policy.* It is also important to consider whether the man-induced changes are now the "normal circumstances" for the area. Both the relative permanence of the change and the functioning of the area as a wetland are implied.

72. When any of the three types of situations described in paragraph 71 occurs, application of methods described in Sections D and/or E will lead to the conclusion that the area is not a wetland because positive wetland indicators for at least one of the three parameters will be absent. Therefore, apply procedures described in one of the following subsections (as appropriate) to determine whether positive indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and/or wetland hydrology existed prior to alteration of the area. Once these procedures have been employed, RETURN TO Section D or E to make a wetland determination. PROCEED TO the appropriate subsection.

Subsection 1 - Vegetation

73. Employ the following steps to determine whether hydrophytic vegetation previously occurred:

- *STEP 1 - Describe the type of alteration.* Examine the area and describe the type of alteration that occurred. Look for evidence of selective harvesting, clear cutting, bulldozing, recent conversion to agriculture, or other activities (e.g., burning, discing, or presence of buildings, dams, levees, roads, parking lots, etc.). Determine the approximate date[1] when the alteration occurred. Record observations on DATA FORM 3, and PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Describe effects on vegetation.* Record on DATA FORM 3 a general description of how the activities (STEP 1) have affected the plant communities. Consider the following:

  a. Has all or a portion of the area been cleared of vegetation?

  b. Has only one layer of the plant community (e.g., trees) been removed?

  c. Has selective harvesting resulted in removal of some species?

  d. Has all vegetation been covered by fill, dredged material, or structures?

  e. Have increased water levels resulted in the death of some individuals?

  PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Determine the type of vegetation that previously occurred.* Obtain all possible evidence of the type of plant communities that occurred in the area prior to alteration. Potential sources of such evidence include:

  a. *Aerial photography.* Recent (within 5 years) aerial photography can often be used to document the type of previous vegetation. The general type of plant communities formerly present can usually be determined, and species identification is sometimes possible.

  b. *Onsite inspection.* Many types of activities result in only partial removal of the previous plant communities, and remaining species may be indicative of hydrophytic vegetation. In other cases, plant fragments (e.g., stumps, roots) may be used to reconstruct the plant community types that occurred prior to site alteration. Sometimes, this can be determined by examining piles of debris resulting from land-clearing opera-

---

[1] It is especially important to determine whether the alteration occurred prior to implementation of Section 404.

tions or excavation to uncover identifiable remains of the previous plant community.

c. *Previous site inspections.* Documented evidence from previous inspections of the area may describe the previous plant communities, particularly in cases where the area was altered after a permit application was denied.

d. *Adjacent vegetation.* Circumstantial evidence of the type of plant communities that previously occurred may sometimes be obtained by examining the vegetation in adjacent areas. If adjacent areas have the same topographic position, soils, and hydrology as the altered area, the plant community types on the altered area were probably similar to those of the adjacent areas.

e. *SCS records.* Most SCS soil surveys include a description of the plant community types associated with each soil type. If the soil type on the altered area can be determined, it may be possible to generally determine the type of plant communities that previously occurred.

f. *Permit applicant.* In some cases, the permit applicant may provide important information about the type of plant communities that occurred prior to alteration.

g. *Public.* Individuals familiar with the area may provide a good general description of the previously occurring plant communities.

h. *NWI wetland maps.* The NWI has developed wetland type maps for many areas. These may be useful in determining the type of plant communities that occurred prior to alteration.

To develop the strongest possible record, all of the above sources should be considered. If the plant community types that occurred prior to alteration can be determined, record them on DATA FORM 3 and also record the basis used for the determination. PROCEED TO STEP 4. If it is impossible to determine the plant community types that occurred on the area prior to alteration, a determination cannot be made using all three parameters. In such cases, the determination must be based on the other two parameters. PROCEED TO Subsection 2 or 3 if one of the other parameters has been altered, or return to the appropriate Subsection of Section D or to Section E, as appropriate.

- *STEP 4 - Determine whether plant community types constitute hydrophytic vegetation.* Develop a list of species that previously occurred on the site (DATA FORM 3). Subject the species list to applicable indicators of hydrophytic vegetation (Part III, paragraph 35). If none of the indicators are met, the plant communities that previously occurred did not constitute hydrophytic vegetation. If hydrophytic vegetation was present and no other parameter was in question, record appropriate data on the vegetation portion of DATA FORM 3, and return to either the appropriate subsection of Section D or to Section E. If either of the other parameters was also in question, PROCEED TO Subsection 2 or 3.

Subsection 2 - Soils

74. Employ the following steps to determine whether hydric soils previously occurred:

- *STEP 1 - Describe the type of alteration.* Examine the area and describe the type of alteration that occurred. Look for evidence of:

    a. *Deposition of dredged or fill material or natural sedimentation.* In many cases the presence of fill material will be obvious. If so, it will be necessary to dig a hole to reach the original soil (sometimes several feet deep). Fill material will usually be a different color or texture than the original soil (except when fill material has been obtained from like areas onsite). Look for decomposing vegetation between soil layers and the presence of buried organic or hydric soil layers. In accreting or recently formed sandbars in riverine situations, the soils may support hydrophytic vegetation but lack hydric soil characteristics.

    b. *Presence of nonwoody debris at the surface.* This can only be applied in areas where the original soils do not contain rocks. Nonwoody debris includes items such as rocks, bricks, and concrete fragments.

    c. *Subsurface plowing.* Has the area recently been plowed below the A-horizon or to depths of greater than 10 in.?

    d. *Removal of surface layers.* Has the surface soil layer been removed by scraping or natural landslides? Look for bare soil surfaces with exposed plant roots or scrape scars on the surface.

    e. *Presence of man-made structures.* Are buildings, dams, levees, roads, or parking lots present?

Determine the approximate date[1] when the alteration occurred. This may require checking aerial photography, examining building permits, etc. Record on DATA FORM 3, and PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Describe effects on soils.* Record on DATA FORM 3 a general description of how identified activities in STEP 1 have affected the soils. Consider the following:

  a. Has the soil been buried? If so, record the depth of fill and determine whether the original soil is intact.

  b. Has the soil been mixed at a depth below the A-horizon or 10 inches? If so, it will be necessary to examine soil at a depth immediately below the plowed zone. Record supporting evidence.

  c. Has the soil been sufficiently altered to change the soil phase? Describe these changes.

  PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Characterize soils that previously occurred.* Obtain all possible evidence that may be used to characterize soils that previously occurred on the area. Consider the following potential sources of information:

  a. *Soil surveys.* In many cases, recent soil surveys will be available. If so, determine the soil series that were mapped for the area, and compare these soil series with the list of hydric soils ~~(Appendix D, Section 2)~~. If all soil series are listed as hydric soils, the entire area had hydric soils prior to alteration.

  b. *Characterization of buried soils.* When fill material has been placed over the original soil without physically disturbing the soil, examine and characterize the buried soils. To accomplish this, dig a hole through the fill material until the original soil is encountered. Determine the point at which the original soil material begins. Remove 12 inches of the original soil from the hole and look for indicators of hydric soils (Part III, paragraphs 44 and/or 45) immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower). Record on DATA FORM 3 the color of the soil matrix, presence of an organic layer, presence of mottles or gleying, and/or presence of iron and manganese concretions. If the original soil is mottled and the

[1] It is especially important to determine whether the alteration occurred prior to implementation of Section 404.

chroma of the soil matrix is 2 or less,[1] a hydric soil was formerly present on the site. If any of these indicators are found, the original soil was a hydric soil. *(NOTE: When the fill material is a thick layer, it might be necessary to use a backhoe or posthole digger to excavate the soil pit.)* If USGS quadrangle maps indicate distinct variation in area topography, this procedure must be applied in each portion of the area that originally had a different surface elevation. Record findings on DATA FORM 3.

c. *Characterization of plowed soils.* Determine the depth to which the soil has been disturbed by plowing. Look for hydric soil characteristics (Part III, paragraphs 44 and/or 45) immediately below this depth. Record findings on DATA FORM 3.

d. *Removal of surface layers.* Dig a hole (Appendix D, Section 1) and determine whether the entire surface layer (A-horizon) has been removed. If so, examine the soil immediately below the top of the subsurface layer (B-horizon) for hydric soil characteristics. As an alternative, examine an undisturbed soil of the same soil series occurring in the same topographic position in an immediately adjacent area that has not been altered. Look for hydric soil indicators immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower), and record findings on DATA FORM 3.

If sufficient data on soils that existed prior to alteration can be obtained to determine whether a hydric soil was present, PROCEED TO STEP 4. If not, a determination cannot be made using soils. Use the other parameters (Subsections 1 and 3) for the determination.

- *STEP 4 - Determine whether hydric soils were formerly present.* Examine the available data and determine whether indicators of hydric soils (Part III, paragraphs 44 and/or 45) were formerly present. If no indicators of hydric soils were found, the original soils were not hydric soils. If indicators of hydric soils were found, record the appropriate indicators on DATA FORM 3 and PROCEED TO Subsection 3 if the hydrology of the area has been significantly altered or return either to the appropriate subsection of Section D or to Section E and characterize the area hydrology.

---

[1] The matrix chroma must be 1 or less if no mottles are present. The soil must be moist when colors are determined.

Subsection 3 - Hydrology

75. Apply the following steps to determine whether wetland hydrology previously occurred:

- *STEP 1 - Describe the type of alteration.* Examine the area and describe the type of alteration that occurred. Look for evidence of:

    a. *Dams.* Has recent construction of a dam or some natural event (e.g., beaver activity or landslide) caused the area to become increasingly wetter or drier? *NOTE: This activity could have occurred a considerable distance away from the site in question.*

    b. *Levees, dikes, and similar structures.* Have levees or dikes recently been constructed that prevent the area from becoming periodically inundated by overbank flooding?

    c. *Ditching.* Have ditches been constructed recently that cause the area to drain more rapidly following inundation?

    d. *Filling of channels or depressions (land-leveling).* Have natural channels or depressions been recently filled?

    e. *Diversion of water.* Has an upstream drainage pattern been altered that results in water being diverted from the area?

    f. *Ground-water extraction.* Has prolonged and intensive pumping of ground water for irrigation or other purposes significantly lowered the water table and/or altered drainage patterns?

    g. *Channelization.* Have feeder streams recently been channelized sufficiently to alter the frequency and/or duration of inundation?

  Determine the approximate date[1] when the alteration occurred. Record observations on DATA FORM 3 and PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Describe effects of alteration on area hydrology.* Record on DATA FORM 3 a general description of how the observed alteration (STEP 1) has affected the area. Consider the following:

    a. Is the area more frequently or less frequently inundated than prior to alteration? To what degree and why?

---

[1] It is especially important to determine whether the alteration occurred prior to implementation of Section 404.

b. Is the duration of inundation and soil saturation different than prior to alteration? How much different and why?

PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Characterize the hydrology that previously existed in the area.* Obtain all possible evidence that may be used to characterize the hydrology that previously occurred. Potential sources of information include:

    a. *Stream or tidal gage data.* If a stream or tidal gaging station is located near the area, it may be possible to calculate elevations representing the upper limit of wetlands hydrology based on duration of inundation. Consult hydrologists from the local CE District Office for assistance. The resulting mean sea level elevation will represent the upper limit of inundation for the area in the absence of any alteration. If fill material has not been placed on the area, survey this elevation from the nearest USGS benchmark. Record elevations representing zone boundaries on DATA FORM 3. If fill material has been placed on the area, compare the calculated elevation with elevations shown on a USGS quadrangle or any other survey map that predated site alteration.

    b. *Field hydrologic indicators.* Certain field indicators of wetland hydrology (Part III, paragraph 49) may still be present. Look for watermarks on trees or other structures, drift lines, and debris deposits. Record these on DATA FORM 3. If adjacent undisturbed areas are in the same topographic position and are similarly influenced by the same sources of inundation, look for wetland indicators in these areas.

    c. *Aerial photography.* Examine any available aerial photography and determine whether the area was inundated at the time of the photographic mission. Consider the time of the year that the aerial photography was taken and use only photography taken during the growing season and prior to site alteration.

    d. *Historical records.* Examine any available historical records for evidence that the area has been periodically inundated. Obtain copies of any such information and record findings on DATA FORM 3.

    e. *Floodplain management maps.* Determine the previous frequency of inundation of the area from Floodplain Management Maps (if available). Record flood frequency on DATA FORM 3.

f. *Public or local government officials*. Contact individuals who might have knowledge that the area was periodically inundated.

If sufficient data on hydrology that existed prior to site alteration can be obtained to determine whether wetland hydrology was previously present, PROCEED TO STEP 4. If not, a determination involving hydrology cannot be made. Use other parameters (Subsections 1 and 2) for the wetland determination. Return to either the appropriate subsection of Section D or to Section E and complete the necessary data forms. PROCEED TO STEP 4 if the previous hydrology can be characterized.

- *STEP 4 - Determine whether wetland hydrology previously occurred.* Examine the available data and determine whether indicators of wetland hydrology (Part III, paragraph 49) were present prior to site alteration. If no indicators of wetland hydrology were found, the original hydrology of the area was not wetland hydrology. If indicators of wetland hydrology were found, record the appropriate indicators on DATA FORM 3 and return either to the appropriate subsection of Section D or to Section E and complete the wetland determination.

Subsection 4 - Man-Induced Wetlands

76. A man-induced wetland is an area that has developed at least some characteristics of naturally occurring wetlands due to either intentional or incidental human activities. Examples of man-induced wetlands include irrigated wetlands, wetlands resulting from impoundment (e.g., reservoir shorelines), wetlands resulting from filling of formerly deepwater habitats, dredged material disposal areas, and wetlands resulting from stream channel realignment. Some man-induced wetlands may be subject to Section 404. In virtually all cases, man-induced wetlands involve a significant change in the hydrologic regime, which may either increase or decrease the wetness of the area. Although wetland indicators of all three parameters (i.e., vegetation, soils, and hydrology) may be found in some man-induced wetlands, indicators of hydric soils are usually absent. Hydric soils require long periods (hundreds of years) for development of wetness characteristics, and most man-induced wetlands have not been in existence for a sufficient period to allow development of hydric soil characteristics. Therefore, application of the multiparameter approach in making wetland determinations in man-induced wetlands must be based on the presence of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology.[1] There must also be documented evidence that the wetland resulted from human activities. Employ the following steps to determine whether an area consists of wetlands resulting from human activities:

---

[1] Uplands that support hydrophytic vegetation due to agricultural irrigation and that have an obvious hydrologic connection to other "waters of the United States" should not be delineated as wetlands under this subsection.

- *STEP 1 - Determine whether the area represents a potential man-induced wetland.* Consider the following questions:

    a. Has a recent man-induced change in hydrology occurred that caused the area to become significantly wetter?

    b. Has a major man-induced change in hydrology that occurred in the past caused a former deepwater aquatic habitat to become significantly drier?

    c. Has man-induced stream channel realignment significantly altered the area hydrology?

    d. Has the area been subjected to long-term irrigation practices?

  If the answer to any of the above questions is YES, document the approximate time during which the change in hydrology occurred, and PROCEED TO STEP 2. If the answer to all of the questions is NO, procedures described in Section D or E must be used.

- *STEP 2 - Determine whether a permit will be needed if the area is found to be a wetland.* Consider the current CE regulations and policy regarding man-induced wetlands. If the type of activity resulting in the area being a potential man-induced wetland is exempted by regulation or policy, no further action is needed. If not exempt, PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Characterize the area vegetation, soils, and hydrology.* Apply procedures described in Section D (routine determinations) or Section E (comprehensive determinations) to the area. Complete the appropriate data forms and PROCEED TO STEP 4.

- *STEP 4 - Wetland determination.* Based on information resulting from STEP 3, determine whether the area is a wetland. When wetland indicators of all three parameters are found, the area is a wetland. When indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are found *and* there is documented evidence that the change in hydrology occurred so recently that soils could not have developed hydric characteristics, the area is a wetland. In such cases, it is assumed that the soils are functioning as hydric soils. *CAUTION: If hydrophytic vegetation is being maintained only because of man-induced wetland hydrology that would no longer exist if the activity (e.g., irrigation) were to be terminated, the area should not be considered a wetland.*

Section G - Problem Areas

77. There are certain wetland types and/or conditions that may make application of indicators of one or more parameters difficult, at least at certain times of the year. These are not considered to be atypical situations. Instead, they are wetland types in which wetland indicators of one or more parameters may be periodically lacking due to *normal* seasonal or annual variations in environmental conditions that result from causes other than human activities or catastrophic natural events.

Types of problem areas

78. Representative examples of potential problem areas, types of variations that occur, and their effects on wetland indicators are presented in the following subparagraphs. Similar situations may sometimes occur in other wetland types. *NOTE: This section is not intended to bring nonwetland areas having wetland indicators of two, but not all three, parameters into Section 404 jurisdiction.*

a. *Wetlands on drumlins.* Slope wetlands occur in glaciated areas in which thin soils cover relatively impermeable glacial till or in which layers of glacial till have different hydraulic conditions that produce a broad zone of ground-water seepage. Such areas are seldom, if ever, flooded, but downslope groundwater movement keeps the soils saturated for a sufficient portion of the growing season to produce anaerobic and reducing soil conditions. This fosters development of hydric soil characteristics and selects for hydrophytic vegetation. Indicators of wetland hydrology may be lacking during the drier portion of the growing season.

b. *Seasonal wetlands.* In many regions (especially in western states), depressional areas occur that have wetland indicators of all three parameters during the wetter portion of the growing season, but normally lack wetland indicators of hydrology and/or vegetation during the drier portion of the growing season. Obligate hydrophytes and facultative wetland plant species ~~(Appendix C, Section 1 or 2)~~ normally are dominant during the wetter portion of the growing season, while upland species (annuals) may be dominant during the drier portion of the growing season. These areas may be inundated during the wetter portion of the growing season, but wetland hydrology indicators may be totally lacking during the drier portion of the growing season. It is important to establish that an area truly is a water body. Water in a depression normally must be sufficiently persistent to exhibit an ordinary high-water mark or the presence of wetland characteristics before it can be considered as a water body potentially subject to Clean Water Act jurisdiction. The determination that an area exhibits wetland characteristics for a sufficient portion of the growing season to qualify as a wetland under the Clean Water Act must be made on a case-by-case basis. Such determinations should consider the respective length of time that the area exhibits upland and wetland characteristics, and the manner in which the area fits into the overall ecological system as a wetland. Evidence concerning the persistence of an area's wetness can be obtained from its history, vegetation, soil, drainage characteristics, uses to which it has been subjected, and weather or hydrologic records.

c. *Prairie potholes.* Prairie potholes normally occur as shallow depressions in glaciated portions of the north-central United States. Many are landlocked, while others have a drainage outlet to streams or other potholes. Most have standing water for much of the growing season in years of normal or above normal precipitation, but are neither inundated nor have saturated soils during most of the growing season in years of below normal precipitation. During dry years, potholes often become incorporated into farming plans, and are either planted to row crops (e.g., soybeans) or are mowed as part of a haying operation. When this occurs, wetland indicators of one or more parameters may be lacking. For example, tillage would eliminate any onsite hydrologic indicator, and would make detection of soil and vegetation indicators much more difficult.

d. *Vegetated flats.* In both coastal and interior areas throughout the Nation, vegetated flats are often dominated by annual species that are categorized as OBL. Application of procedures described in Sections D and E during the growing season will clearly result in a positive wetland determination. However, these areas will appear to be unvegetated mudflats when examined during the nongrowing season, and the area would not qualify at that time as a wetland due to an apparent lack of vegetation.

Wetland determinations in problem areas

79. Procedures for making wetland determinations in problem areas are presented below. Application of these procedures is appropriate only when a decision has been made in Section D or E that wetland indicators of one or more parameters were lacking, probably due to normal seasonal or annual variations in environmental conditions. Specific procedures to be used will vary according to the nature of the area, site conditions, and parameter(s) affected by the variations in environmental conditions. A determination must be based on the best evidence available to the field inspector, including:

a. Available information (Section B).

b. Field data resulting from an onsite inspection.

c. Basic knowledge of the ecology of the particular community type(s) and environmental conditions associated with the community type.

NOTE: The procedures described below should only be applied to parameters not adequately characterized in Section D or E. Complete the following steps:

- *STEP 1 - Identify the parameter(s) to be considered.* Examine the DATA FORM 1 (Section D or E) and identify the parameter(s) that must be given additional consideration. PROCEED TO STEP 2.

- *STEP 2 - Determine the reason for further consideration.* Determine the reason why the parameter(s) identified in STEP 1 should be given further consideration. This will require a consideration and documentation of:

  a. Environmental condition(s) that have impacted the parameter(s).

  b. Impacts of the identified environmental condition(s) on the parameter(s) in question.

  Record findings in the comments section of DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 3.

- *STEP 3 - Document available information for parameter(s) in question.* Examine the available information and consider personal ecological knowledge of the range of normal environmental conditions of the area. Local experts (e.g., university personnel) may provide additional information. Record information on DATA FORM 1. PROCEED TO STEP 4.

- *STEP 4 - Determine whether wetland indicators are normally present during a portion of the growing season.* Examine the information resulting from STEP 3 and determine whether wetland indicators are *normally* present during part of the growing season. If so, record on DATA FORM 1 the indicators normally present and return to Section D or Section E and make a wetland determination. If no information can be found that wetland indicators of all three parameters are normally present during part of the growing season, the determination must be made using procedures described in Section D or Section E.

References

Clark, J. R., and Benforado, J., eds. (1981). *Wetlands of Bottomland Hardwood Forests, Proceedings of a Workshop on Bottomland Hardwood Forest Wetlands of the Southeastern United States*, Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, New York.

Correll, D. S., and Correll, H. B. (1972). *Aquatic and Wetland Plants of the Southwestern United States*, Publ. No. 16030 DNL 01/72, Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.

Cowardin, L. M., Carter, V., Golet, F. C., and LaRoe, E. T. (1979). "Classification of Wetlands and Deepwater Habitats of the United States," FWS/OBS-79/31, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Office of Biological Services, Washington, DC.

Cronquist, A., Holmgren, A. H., Holmgren, N. H., and Reveal, J. L. (1972). *Intermountain Flora - Vascular Plants of the Intermountain West, USA*, Vol. I and II, Hefner Publishing Company, New York.

Davis, R. J. (1952). *Flora of Idaho*, William C. Brown Company, Dubuque, IA.

Federal Register. (1980). "40 CFR Part 230: Section 404(b)(1) Guidelines for Specification of Disposal Sites for Dredged or Fill Material," U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 45(249), 85,352-85,353.

__________. (1982). "Title 33: Navigation and Navigable Waters; Chapter 2. Regulatory Programs of the Corps of Engineers," U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 47(138), 31,810.

Fernald, M. L. (1950). *Gray's Manual of Botany*, 8th ed., American Book Company, New York.

Gleason, H. A., and Cronquist, A. (1963). *Manual of Vascular Plants of Northeastern United States and Adjacent Canada*, Van Nostrand, Princeton, NJ.

Godfrey, R. K., and Wooten, J. W. (1979). *Aquatic and Wetland Plants of the Southeastern United States*, Vol. I and II, University of Georgia Press, Athens, GA.

Harrington, H. D. (1979). *Manual of the Plants of Colorado*, 2nd ed., Sage Books, Denver, CO.

Hitchcock, A. S. (1950). *Manual of Grasses of the United States*, U.S. Department of Agriculture Miscellaneous Publication No. 200, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Hitchcock, C. L., and Cronquist, A. (1973). *Flora of the Pacific Northwest*, University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA.

Kearney, T. H., and Peebles, R. H. (1960). *Arizona Flora*, 2nd ed., University of California Press, Berkeley, CA.

Long, R. W., and Lakela, O. (1976). *A Flora of Tropical Florida*, Banyan Books, Miami, FL.

Munsell Color. (1975). *Munsell Soil Color Charts*, Kollmorgen Corporation, Baltimore, MD.

Munz, P. A., and Keck, D. D. (1959). *A California Flora*, University of California Press, Berkeley, CA.

Radford, A. E., Ahles, H. E., and Bell, C. R. (1968). *Manual of the Vascular Flora of the Carolinas*, The University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, NC.

Small, J. K. (1933). *Manual of the Southeastern Flora*, The University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, NC.

Steyermark, J. A. (1963). *Flora of Missouri*, The Iowa State University Press, Ames, IA.

Theriot, R. F. (In Review). "Flood Tolerance Indices of Plant Species of Southeastern Bottomland Forests," Technical Report, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

U.S. Department of Agriculture - Soil Conservation Service. (1975). *Soil Taxonomy*, Agriculture Handbook No. 436, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

__________. (1983). "List of Soils with Actual or High Potential for Hydric Conditions," USDA-SCS National Bulletin No. 430-3-10, Washington, DC.

U.S. Department of Agriculture - Soil Conservation Service. (1985). "Hydric Soils of the United States," USDA-SCS National Bulletin No. 430-5-9, Washington, DC.

U.S. Department of the Interior. (1970). *National Atlas of the United States*, U.S. Geological Survey, US Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 110-111.

Bibliography

Copeland, B. J., Hodson, R. G., and Riggs, S. R. (1984). "The Ecology of the Pamlico River, North Carolina: An Estuarine Profile," FWS/OBS-82/06, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Foster, M. S., and Schiel, D. R. (1985). "The Ecology of Giant Kelp Forests in California: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-85(7.2), U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Gosselink, J. G. (1984). "The Ecology of Delta Marshes of Coastal Louisiana: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-84/09, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Hobbie, J. E. (1984). "The Ecology of Tundra Ponds of the Arctic Coastal Plain: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-83/25, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Huffman, R. T., and Tucker, G. E. (1984). "Preliminary Guide to the Onsite Identification and Delineation of the Wetlands of Alaska," Technical Report Y-78-9, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

Huffman, R. T., Tucker, G. E, Wooten, J. W., Limas, C. V., Feel, M. W., Forsythe, S. W., and Wilson, J. S. (1982). "Preliminary Guide to the Onsite Identification and Delineation of the Wetlands of the South Atlantic United States," Technical Report Y-78-7, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

__________. (1982). "Preliminary Guide to the Onsite Identification and Delineation of the Wetlands of the North Atlantic United States," Technical Report Y-78-8, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

Japp, W. C. (1984). "The Ecology of the South Florida Coral Reefs: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-82/08, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Gasolene, M. (1983). "The Ecology of San Francisco Bay Tidal Marshes: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-83/23, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Livingston, R. J. (1984). "The Ecology of the Apalachicola Bay System: An Estuarine Profile," FWS/OBS-82/05, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Nixon, S. W. (1982). "The Ecology of New England High Salt Marshes: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-81/55, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Odum, W. E., McIvor, C. C., and Smith, T. J., III. (1982). "The Ecology of the Mangroves of South Florida: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-81/24, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Odum, W. E., Smith, T. J., III, Hoover, J. K., and McIvor, C. C. (1984). "The Ecology of Tidal Freshwater Marshes of the United States East Coast: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-83/17, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Peterson, C. H., and Peterson, N. M. (1979). "The Ecology of Intertidal Flats of North Carolina: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-79/39, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Phillips, R. C. (1984). "The Ecology of Eelgrass Meadows in the Pacific Northwest: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-84/24, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Seliskar, D. M., and Gallagher, J. L. (1983). "The Ecology of Tidal Marshes of the Pacific Northwest Coast: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-82/32, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Sharitz, R. R., and Gibbons, J. W. (1982). "The Ecology of Southeastern Shrub Bogs (Pocosins) and Carolina Bays: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-82/04, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Thayer, G. W., Kenworthy, W. J., and Fonseca, M. S. (1984). "The Ecology of Eelgrass Meadows of the Atlantic Coast: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-84/02, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. (1978). "Preliminary Guide to Wetlands of Peninsular Florida," Technical Report Y-78-2, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

__________. (1978). "Preliminary Guide to Wetlands of Puerto Rico," Technical Report Y-78-3, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. (1978). "Preliminary Guide to Wetlands of the West Coast States," Technical Report Y-78-4, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

__________. (1978). "Preliminary Guide to Wetlands of the Gulf Coastal Plain," Technical Report Y-78-5, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

__________. (1982). "Preliminary Guide to the Onsite Identification and Delineation of the Wetlands of the Interior United States," Technical Report Y-78-6, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

Witlatch, R. B. (1982). "The Ecology of New England Tidal Flats: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-81/01, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Wharton, C. H., Kitchens, W. M., and Sipe, T. W. (1982). "The Ecology of Bottomland Hardwood Swamps of the Southeast: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-81/37, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Zedler, J. B. (1984). "The Ecology of Southern California Coastal Salt Marshes: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-81/54, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Zieman, J. C. (1982). "The Ecology of the Seagrasses of South Florida: A Community Profile," FWS/OBS-82/25, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Appendix A
Glossary

Active water table. A condition in which the zone of soil saturation fluctuates, resulting in periodic anaerobic soil conditions. Soils with an active water table often contain bright mottles and matrix chromas of 2 or less.

Adaptation. A modification of a species that makes it more fit for existence under the conditions of its environment. These modifications are the result of genetic selection processes.

Adventitious roots. Roots found on plant stems in positions where they normally do not occur.

Aerenchymous tissue. A type of plant tissue in which cells are unusually large and arranged in a manner that results in air spaces in the plant organ. Such tissues are often referred to as spongy and usually provide increased buoyancy.

Aerobic. A situation in which molecular oxygen is a part of the environment.

Anaerobic. A situation in which molecular oxygen is absent (or effectively so) from the environment.

Aquatic roots. Roots that develop on stems above the normal position occupied by roots in response to prolonged inundation.

Aquic moisture regime. A mostly reducing soil moisture regime nearly free of dissolved oxygen due to saturation by ground water or its capillary fringe and occurring at periods when the soil temperature at 19.7 in. is greater than 5 °C.

Arched roots. Roots produced on plant stems in a position above the normal position of roots, which serve to brace the plant during and following periods of prolonged inundation.

Areal cover. A measure of dominance that defines the degree to which above-ground portions of plants (not limited to those rooted in a sample plot) cover the ground surface. It is possible for the total areal cover in a community to exceed 100 percent because (a) most plant communities consist of two or more vegetative strata; (b) areal cover is estimated by vegetative layer; and (c) foliage within a single layer may overlap.

Atypical situation. As used herein, this term refers to areas in which one or more parameters (vegetation, soil, and/or hydrology) have been sufficiently altered by recent human activities or natural events to preclude the presence of wetland indicators of the parameter.

Backwater flooding. Situations in which the source of inundation is overbank flooding from a nearby stream.

Basal area. The cross-sectional area of a tree trunk measured in square inches, square centimeters, etc. Basal area is normally measured at 4.5 ft above the ground level and is used as a measure of dominance. The most easily used tool for measuring basal area is a tape marked in square inches. When plotless methods are used, an angle gauge or prism will provide a means for rapidly determining basal area. This term is also applicable to the cross-sectional area of a clumped herbaceous plant, measured at 1.0 in. above the soil surface.

Bench mark. A fixed, more or less permanent reference point or object, the elevation of which is known. The U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) installs brass caps in bridge abutments or otherwise permanently sets bench marks at convenient locations nationwide. The elevations on these marks are referenced to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD), also commonly known as mean sea level (MSL). Locations of these bench marks on USGS quadrangle maps are shown as small triangles. However, the marks are sometimes destroyed by construction or vandalism. The existence of any bench mark should be field verified before planning work that relies on a particular reference point. The USGS and/or local state surveyor's office can provide information on the existence, exact location, and exact elevation of bench marks.

Biennial. An event that occurs at 2-year intervals.

Buried soil. A once-exposed soil now covered by an alluvial, loessal, or other deposit (including man-made).

Canopy layer. The uppermost layer of vegetation in a plant community. In forested areas, mature trees comprise the canopy layer, while the tallest herbaceous species constitute the canopy layer in a marsh.

Capillary fringe. A zone immediately above the water table (zero gauge pressure) in which water is drawn upward from the water table by capillary action.

Chemical reduction. Any process by which one compound or ion acts as an electron donor. In such cases, the valence state of the electron donor is decreased.

Chroma. The relative purity or saturation of a color; intensity of distinctive hue as related to grayness; one of the three variables of color.

Comprehensive wetland determination. A type of wetland determination that is based on the strongest possible evidence, requiring the collection of quantitative data.

Concretion. A local concentration of chemical compounds (e.g., calcium carbonate, iron oxide) in the form of a grain or nodule of varying size, shape, hardness, and color. Concretions of significance in hydric soils are usually iron and/or manganese oxides occurring at or near the soil surface, which develop under conditions of prolonged soil saturation.

Contour. An imaginary line of constant elevation on the ground surface. The corresponding line on a map is called a "contour line."

Criteria. Standards, rules, or tests on which a judgment or decision may be based.

Deepwater aquatic habitat. Any open water area that has a mean annual water depth >6.6 ft, lacks soil, and/or is either unvegetated or supports only floating or submersed macrophytes.

Density. The number of individuals of a species per unit area.

Detritus. Minute fragments of plant parts found on the soil surface. When fused together by algae or soil particles, this is an indicator that surface water was recently present.

Diameter at breast height (DBH). The width of a plant stem as measured at 4.5 ft above the ground surface.

Dike. A bank (usually earthen) constructed to control or confine water.

Dominance. As used herein, a descriptor of vegetation that is related to the standing crop of a species in an area, usually measured by height, areal cover, or basal area (for trees).

Dominant species. As used herein, a plant species that exerts a controlling influence on or defines the character of a community.

Drained. A condition in which ground or surface water has been reduced or eliminated from an area by artificial means.

Drift line. An accumulation of debris along a contour (parallel to the water flow) that represents the height of an inundation event.

Duration (inundation/soil saturation). The length of time during which water stands at or above the soil surface (inundation), or during which the soil is saturated. As used herein, duration refers to a period during the growing season.

Ecological tolerance. The range of environmental conditions in which a plant species can grow.

Emergent plant. A rooted herbaceous plant species that has parts extending above a water surface.

Field capacity. The percentage of water remaining in a soil after it has been saturated and after free drainage is negligible.

Fill material. Any material placed in an area to increase surface elevation.

Flooded. A condition in which the soil surface is temporarily covered with flowing water from any source, such as streams overflowing their banks, runoff from adjacent or surrounding slopes, inflow from high tides, or any combination of sources.

Flora. A list of all plant species that occur in an area.

Frequency (inundation or soil saturation). The periodicity of coverage of an area by surface water or soil saturation. It is usually expressed as the number of years (e.g., 50 years) the soil is inundated or saturated at least once each year during part of the growing season per 100 years or as a l-, 2-, 5-year, etc., inundation frequency.

Frequency (vegetation). The distribution of individuals of a species in an area. It is quantitatively expressed as

$$\frac{\text{Number of samples containing species A}}{\text{Total number of samples}} \times 100$$

More than one species may have a frequency of 100 percent within the same area.

Frequently flooded. A flooding class in which flooding is likely to occur often under normal weather conditions (more than 50-percent chance of flooding in any year or more than 50 times in 100 years).

Gleyed. A soil condition resulting from prolonged soil saturation, which is manifested by the presence of bluish or greenish colors through the soil mass or in mottles (spots or streaks) among other colors. Gleying occurs under reducing soil conditions resulting from soil saturation, by which iron is reduced predominantly to the ferrous state.

Ground water. That portion of the water below the ground surface that is under greater pressure than atmospheric pressure.

Growing season. The portion of the year when soil temperatures at 19.7 in. below the soil surface are higher than biologic zero (5 °C) (U.S. Department of Agriculture—Soil Conservation Service 1985). For ease of determination this period can be approximated by the number of frost-free days (U.S Department of the Interior 1970).

Habitat. The environment occupied by individuals of a particular species, population, or community.

Headwater flooding. A situation in which an area becomes inundated directly by surface runoff from upland areas.

Herb. A nonwoody individual of a macrophytic species. In this manual, seedlings of woody plants (including vines) that are less than 3.2 ft in height are considered to be herbs.

Herbaceous layer. Any vegetative stratum of a plant community that is composed predominantly of herbs.

Histic epipedon. An 8- to 16-in. soil layer at or near the surface that is saturated for 30 consecutive days or more during the growing season in most years and contains a minimum of 20 percent organic matter when no clay is present or a minimum of 30 percent organic matter when 60 percent or greater clay is present.

Histosols. An order in soil taxonomy composed of organic soils that have organic soil materials in more than half of the upper 80 cm or that are of any thickness if directly overlying bedrock.

Homogeneous vegetation. A situation in which the same plant species association occurs throughout an area.

Hue. A characteristic of color that denotes a color in relation to red, yellow, blue, etc; one of the three variables of color. Each color chart in the Munsell Color Book (Munsell Color 1975) consists of a specific hue.

Hydric soil. A soil that is saturated, flooded, or ponded long enough during the growing season to develop anaerobic conditions that favor the growth and regeneration of hydrophytic vegetation (U.S. Department of Agriculture—Soil Conservation Service 1985). Hydric soils that occur in areas having positive indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are wetland soils.

Hydric soil condition. A situation in which characteristics exist that are associated with soil development under reducing conditions.

Hydrologic regime. The sum total of water that occurs in an area on average during a given period.

Hydrologic zone. An area that is inundated or has saturated soils within a specified range of frequency and duration of inundation and soil saturation.

Hydrology. The science dealing with the properties, distribution, and circulation of water.

Hydrophyte. Any macrophyte that grows in water or on a substrate that is at least periodically deficient in oxygen as a result of excessive water content; plants typically found in wet habitats.

Hydrophytic vegetation. The sum total of macrophytic plant life growing in water or on a substrate that is at least periodically deficient in oxygen as a result of excessive water content. When hydrophytic vegetation comprises a community where indicators of hydric soils and wetland hydrology also occur, the area has wetland vegetation.

Hypertrophied lenticels. An exaggerated (oversized) pore on the surface of stems of woody plants through which gases are exchanged between the plant and the atmosphere. The enlarged lenticels serve as a mechanism for increasing oxygen to plant roots during periods of inundation and/or saturated soils.

Importance value. A quantitative term describing the relative influence of a plant species in a plant community, obtained by summing any combination of relative frequency, relative density, and relative dominance.

Indicator. As used in this manual, an event, entity, or condition that typically characterizes a prescribed environment or situation; indicators determine or aid in determining whether or not certain stated circumstances exist.

Indicator status. One of the categories (e.g., OBL) that describes the estimated probability of a plant species occurring in wetlands.

Intercellular air space. A cavity between cells in plant tissues, resulting from variations in cell shape and configuration. Aerenchymous tissue (a morphological adaptation found in many hydrophytes) often has large intercellular air spaces.

Inundation. A condition in which water from any source temporarily or permanently covers a land surface.

Levee. A natural or man-made feature of the landscape that restricts movement of water into or through an area.

Liana. As used in this manual, a layer of vegetation in forested plant communities that consists of woody vines. The term may also be applied to a given species.

Limit of biological activity. With reference to soils, the zone below which conditions preclude normal growth of soil organisms. This term often is used to refer to the temperature (5 °C) in a soil below which metabolic processes of soil microorganisms, plant roots, and animals are negligible.

Long duration (flooding). A flooding class in which the period of inundation for a single event ranges from 7 days to 1 month.

Macrophyte. Any plant species that can be readily observed without the aid of optical magnification. This includes all vascular plant species and mosses (e.g., *Sphagnum* spp.), as well as large algae (e.g., *Cara* spp., kelp).

Macrophytic. A term referring to a plant species that is a macrophyte.

Major portion of the root zone. The portion of the soil profile in which more than 50 percent of plant roots occur. In wetlands, this usually constitutes the upper 12 in. of the profile.

Man-induced wetland. Any area that develops wetland characteristics due to some activity (e.g., irrigation) of man.

Mapping unit. As used in this manual, some common characteristic of soil, vegetation, and/or hydrology that can be shown at the scale of mapping for the defined purpose and objectives of a survey.

Mean sea level. A datum, or "plane of zero elevation," established by averaging all stages of oceanic tides over a 19-year tidal cycle or "epoch." This plane is corrected for curvature of the earth and is the standard reference for elevations on the earth's surface. The correct term for mean sea level is the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD).

Mesophytic. Any plant species growing where soil moisture and aeration conditions lie between extremes. These species are typically found in habitats with average moisture conditions, neither very dry nor very wet.

Metabolic processes. The complex of internal chemical reactions associated with life-sustaining functions of an organism.

Method. A particular procedure or set of procedures to be followed.

Mineral soil. A soil consisting predominantly of, and having its properties determined predominantly by, mineral matter usually containing less than 20 percent organic matter.

Morphological adaptation. A feature of structure and form that aids in fitting a species to its particular environment (e.g., buttressed base, adventitious roots, aerenchymous tissue).

Mottles. Spots or blotches of different color or shades of color interspersed within the dominant color in a soil layer, usually resulting from the presence of periodic reducing soil conditions.

Muck. Highly decomposed organic material in which the original plant parts are not recognizable.

Multitrunk. A situation in which a single individual of a woody plant species has several stems.

Nonhydric soil. A soil that has developed under predominantly aerobic soil conditions. These soils normally support mesophytic or xerophytic species.

Nonwetland. Any area that has sufficiently dry conditions that indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and/or wetland hydrology are lacking. As used in this manual, any area that is neither a wetland, a deepwater aquatic habitat, nor other special aquatic site.

Organic pan. A layer usually occurring at 12 to 30 in. below the soil surface in coarse-textured soils, in which organic matter and aluminum (with or without iron) accumulate at the point where the top of the water table most often occurs. Cementing of the organic matter slightly reduces permeability of this layer.

Organic soil. A soil is classified as an organic soil when it is: (1) saturated for prolonged periods (unless artificially drained) and has more than 30 percent organic matter if the mineral fraction is more than 50 percent clay, or more than 20 percent organic matter if the mineral fraction has no clay; or (2) never saturated with water for more than a few days and having more than 34 percent organic matter.

Overbank flooding. Any situation in which inundation occurs as a result of the water level of a stream rising above bank level.

Oxidation-reduction process. A complex of biochemical reactions in soil that influences the valence state of component elements and their ions. Prolonged soil saturation during the growing season elicits anaerobic conditions that shift the overall process to a reducing condition.

Oxygen pathway. The sequence of cells, intercellular spaces, tissues, and organs, through which molecular oxygen is transported in plants. Plant species having pathways for oxygen transport to the root system are often adapted for life in saturated soils.

Parameter. A characteristic component of a unit that can be defined. Vegetation, soil, and hydrology are three parameters that may be used to define wetlands.

Parent material. The unconsolidated and more or less weathered mineral or organic matter from which a soil profile develops.

Ped. A unit of soil structure (e.g., aggregate, crumb, prism, block, or granule) formed by natural processes.

Peraquic moisture regime. A soil condition in which a reducing environment always occurs due to the presence of ground water at or near the soil surface.

Periodically. Used herein to define detectable regular or irregular saturated soil conditions or inundation, resulting from ponding of ground water, precipitation, overland flow, stream flooding, or tidal influences that occur(s) with hours, days, weeks, months, or even years between events.

Permeability. A soil characteristic that enables water or air to move through the profile, measured as the number of inches per hour that water moves downward through the saturated soil. The rate at which water moves through the least permeable layer governs soil permeability.

Physiognomy. A term used to describe a plant community based on the growth habit (e.g., trees, herbs, lianas) of the dominant species.

Physiological adaptation. A feature of the basic physical and chemical activities that occurs in cells and tissues of a species, which results in it being better fitted to its environment (e.g., ability to absorb nutrients under low oxygen tensions).

Plant community. All of the plant populations occurring in a shared habitat or environment.

Plant cover. See areal cover.

Pneumatophore. Modified roots that may function as a respiratory organ in species subjected to frequent inundation or soil saturation (e.g., cypress knees).

Ponded. A condition in which water stands in a closed depression. Water may be removed only by percolation, evaporation, and/or transpiration.

Poorly drained. Soils that commonly are wet at or near the surface during a sufficient part of the year that field crops cannot be grown under natural conditions. Poorly drained conditions are caused by a saturated zone, a layer with low hydraulic conductivity, seepage, or a combination of these conditions.

Population. A group of individuals of the same species that occurs in a given area.

Positive wetland indicator. Any evidence of the presence of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soil, and/or wetland hydrology in an area.

Prevalent vegetation. The plant community or communities that occur in an area during a given period. The prevalent vegetation is characterized by the dominant macrophytic species that comprise the plant community.

Quantitative. A precise measurement or determination expressed numerically.

Range. As used herein, the geographical area in which a plant species is known to occur.

Redox potential. A measure of the tendency of a system to donate or accept electrons, which is governed by the nature and proportions of the oxidizing and reducing substances contained in the system.

Reducing environment. An environment conducive to the removal of oxygen and chemical reduction of ions in the soils.

Relative density. A quantitative descriptor, expressed as a percent, of the relative number of individuals of a species in an area; it is calculated by

$$\frac{\text{Number of individuals of species A}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all species}} \times 100$$

Relative dominance. A quantitative descriptor, expressed as a percent, of the relative size or cover of individuals of a species in an area; it is calculated by

$$\frac{\text{Amount}^{1}\text{ of species A}}{\text{Total amount of all species}} \times 100$$

Relative frequency. A quantitative descriptor, expressed as a percent, of the relative distribution of individuals of a species in an area; it is calculated by

$$\frac{\text{Frequency of species A}}{\text{Total frequency of all species}} \times 100$$

Relief. The change in elevation of a land surface between two points; collectively, the configuration of the earth's surface, including such features as hills and valleys.

---

[1] The "amount" of a species may be based on percent areal cover, basal area, or height.

Reproductive adaptation. A feature of the reproductive mechanism of a species that results in it being better fitted to its environment (e.g., ability for seed germination under water).

Respiration. The sum total of metabolic processes associated with conversion of stored (chemical) energy into kinetic (physical) energy for use by an organism.

Rhizosphere. The zone of soil in which interactions between living plant roots and microorganisms occur.

Root zone. The portion of a soil profile in which plant roots occur.

Routine wetland determination. A type of wetland determination in which office data and/or relatively simple, rapidly applied onsite methods are employed to determine whether or not an area is a wetland. Most wetland determinations are of this type, which usually does not require collection of quantitative data.

Sample plot. An area of land used for measuring or observing existing conditions.

Sapling/shrub. A layer of vegetation composed of woody plants <3.0 in. in diameter at breast height but greater than 3.2 ft in height, exclusive of woody vines.

Saturated soil conditions. A condition in which all easily drained voids (pores) between soil particles in the root zone are temporarily or permanently filled with water to the soil surface at pressures greater than atmospheric.

Soil. Unconsolidated mineral and organic material that supports, or is capable of supporting, plants, and which has recognizable properties due to the integrated effect of climate and living matter acting upon parent material, as conditioned by relief over time.

Soil horizon. A layer of soil or soil material approximately parallel to the land surface and differing from adjacent genetically related layers in physical, chemical, and biological properties or characteristics (e.g., color, structure, texture, etc.).

Soil matrix. The portion of a given soil having the dominant color. In most cases, the matrix will be the portion of the soil having more than 50 percent of the same color.

Soil permeability. The ease with which gases, liquids, or plant roots penetrate or pass through a layer of soil.

Soil phase. A subdivision of a soil series having features (e.g., slope, surface texture, and stoniness) that affect the use and management of the soil, but which do not vary sufficiently to differentiate it as a separate series. These are usually the basic mapping units on detailed soil maps produced by the Soil Conservation Service.

Soil pore. An area within soil occupied by either air or water, resulting from the arrangement of individual soil particles or peds.

Soil profile. A vertical section of a soil through all its horizons and extending into the parent material.

Soil series. A group of soils having horizons similar in differentiating characteristics and arrangement in the soil profile, except for texture of the surface horizon.

Soil structure. The combination or arrangement of primary soil particles into secondary particles, units, or peds.

Soil surface. The upper limits of the soil profile. For mineral soils, this is the upper limit of the highest (Al) mineral horizon. For organic soils, it is the upper limit of undecomposed, dead organic matter.

Soil texture. The relative proportions of the various sizes of particles in a soil.

Somewhat poorly drained. Soils that are wet near enough to the surface or long enough that planting or harvesting operations or crop growth is markedly restricted unless artificial drainage is provided. Somewhat poorly drained soils commonly have a layer with low hydraulic conductivity, wet conditions high in the profile, additions of water through seepage, or a combination of these conditions.

Stilted roots. Aerial roots arising from stems (e.g., trunk and branches), presumably providing plant support (e.g., *Rhizophora mangle).*

Stooling. A form of asexual reproduction in which new shoots are produced at the base of senescing stems, often resulting in a multitrunk growth habit.

Stratigraphy. Features of geology dealing with the origin, composition, distribution, and succession of geologic strata (layers).

Substrate. The base or substance on which an attached species is growing.

Surface water. Water present above the substrate or soil surface.

Tidal. A situation in which the water level periodically fluctuates due to the action of lunar and solar forces upon the rotating earth.

Topography. The configuration of a surface, including its relief and the position of its natural and man-made features.

Transect. As used herein, a line on the ground along which observations are made at some interval.

Transition zone. The area in which a change from wetlands to nonwetlands occurs. The transition zone may be narrow or broad.

Transpiration. The process in plants by which water vapor is released into the gaseous environment, primarily through stomata.

Tree. A woody plant >3.0 in. in diameter at breast height, regardless of height (exclusive of woody vines).

Typical. That which normally, usually, or commonly occurs.

Typically adapted. A term that refers to a species being normally or commonly suited to a given set of environmental conditions, due to some feature of its morphology, physiology, or reproduction.

Unconsolidated parent material. Material from which a soil develops, usually formed by weathering of rock or placement in an area by natural forces (e.g., water, wind, or gravity).

Under normal circumstances. As used in the definition of wetlands, this term refers to situations in which the vegetation has not been substantially altered by man's activities.

Uniform vegetation. As used herein, a situation in which the same group of dominant species generally occurs throughout a given area.

Upland. As used herein, any area that does not qualify as a wetland because the associated hydrologic regime is not sufficiently wet to elicit development of vegetation, soils, and/or hydrologic characteristics associated with wetlands. Such areas occurring within floodplains are more appropriately termed nonwetlands.

Value (soil color). The relative lightness or intensity of color, approximately a function of the square root of the total amount of light reflected from a surface; one of the three variables of color.

Vegetation. The sum total of macrophytes that occupy a given area.

Vegetation layer. A subunit of a plant community in which all component species exhibit the same growth form (e.g., trees, saplings/shrubs, herbs).

Very long duration (flooding). A duration class in which the length of a single inundation event is greater than 1 month.

Very poorly drained. Soils that are wet to the surface most of the time. These soils are wet enough to prevent the growth of important crops (except rice) unless artificially drained.

Watermark. A line on a tree or other upright structure that represents the maximum static water level reached during an inundation event.

Water table. The upper surface of ground water or that level below which the soil is saturated with water. It is at least 6 in. thick and persists in the soil for more than a few weeks.

Wetlands. Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas.

Wetland boundary. The point on the ground at which a shift from wetlands to nonwetlands or aquatic habitats occurs. These boundaries usually follow contours.

Wetland determination. The process or procedure by which an area is adjudged a wetland or nonwetland.

Wetland hydrology. The sum total of wetness characteristics in areas that are inundated or have saturated soils for a sufficient duration to support hydrophytic vegetation.

Wetland plant association. Any grouping of plant species that recurs wherever certain wetland conditions occur.

Wetland soil. A soil that has characteristics developed in a reducing atmosphere, which exists when periods of prolonged soil saturation result in anaerobic conditions. Hydric soils that are sufficiently wet to support hydrophytic vegetation are wetland soils.

Wetland vegetation. The sum total of macrophytic plant life that occurs in areas where the frequency and duration of inundation or soil saturation produce permanently or periodically saturated soils of sufficient duration to exert a controlling influence on the plant species present. As used herein, hydrophytic vegetation occurring in areas that also have hydric soils and wetland hydrology may be properly referred to as wetland vegetation.

Woody vine. See liana.

Xerophytic. A plant species that is typically adapted for life in conditions where a lack of water is a limiting factor for growth and/or reproduction. These species are capable of growth in extremely dry conditions as a result of morphological, physiological, and/or reproductive adaptations.

Appendix B
Blank and Example Data Forms

USER NOTES: The following field data form ("Data Form, Routine Wetland Determination, 1987 COE Wetlands Delineation Manual") dated 3/92 is the HQUSACE-approved replacement for Data Form 1 given in the 1987 Manual. (HQUSACE, 6 Mar 92)

DATA FORM
ROUTINE WETLAND DETERMINATION
(1987 COE Wetlands Delineation Manual)

Project/Site: ______________________ Applicant/Owner: ______________________ Investigator: ______________________	Date: __________ County: __________ State: __________
Do Normal Circumstances exist on the site? Yes No Is the site significantly disturbed (Atypical Situation)? Yes No Is the area a potential Problem Area? Yes No (If needed, explain on reverse.)	Community ID: _____ Transect ID: _____ Plot ID: _____

VEGETATION

Dominant Plant Species	Stratum	Indicator	Dominant Plant Species	Stratum	Indicator
1.			9.		
2.			10.		
3.			11.		
4.			12.		
5.			13.		
6.			14.		
7.			15.		
8.			16.		

Percent of Dominant Species that are OBL, FACW or FAC
(excluding FAC-). ______________________

Remarks:

HYDROLOGY

___ Recorded Data (Describe in Remarks):
  ___ Stream, Lake, or Tide Gauge
  ___ Aerial Photographs
  ___ Other
___ No Recorded Data Available

Field Observations:

Depth of Surface Water: ________(in.)

Depth to Free Water in Pit: ________(in.)

Depth to Saturated Soil: ________(in.)

Wetland Hydrology Indicators:
Primary Indicators:
  ___ Inundated
  ___ Saturated in Upper 12 Inches
  ___ Water Marks
  ___ Drift Lines
  ___ Sediment Deposits
  ___ Drainage Patterns in Wetlands
Secondary Indicators (2 or more required):
  ___ Oxidized Root Channels in Upper 12 Inches
  ___ Water-Stained Leaves
  ___ Local Soil Survey Data
  ___ FAC-Neutral Test
  ___ Other (Explain in Remarks)

Remarks:

SOILS

Map Unit Name
(Series and Phase): ____ Drainage Class: ______________
Field Observations
Taxonomy (Subgroup): ____ Confirm Mapped Type? Yes No

Profile Description:

Depth (inches)	Horizon	Matrix Color (Munsell Moist)	Mottle Colors (Munsell Moist)	Mottle Abundance/ Size/Contrast	Texture, Concretions, Structure, etc.

Hydric Soil Indicators:

___ Histosol
___ Histic Epipedon
___ Sulfidic Odor
___ Aquic Moisture Regime
___ Reducing Conditions
___ Gleyed or Low-Chroma Colors

___ Concretions
___ High Organic Content in Surface Layer in Sandy Soils
___ Organic Streaking in Sandy Soils
___ Listed on Local Hydric Soils List
___ Listed on National Hydric Soils List
___ Other (Explain in Remarks)

Remarks:

WETLAND DETERMINATION

Hydrophytic Vegetation Present? Yes No (Circle)
Wetland Hydrology Present? Yes No
Hydric Soils Present? Yes No

(Circle)
Is this Sampling Point Within a Wetland? Yes No

Remarks:

Approved by HQUSACE 3/92

DATA FORM 1

WETLAND DETERMINATION

Applicant Name:__________ Application Number:__________ Project Name:__________

State:________County:________Legal Description: Township:_____Range:_____

Date:__________ Plot No.:__________ Section:__________

Vegetation [list the three dominant species in each vegetation layer (5 if only 1 or 2 layers)]. Indicate species with observed morphological or known physiological adaptations with an asterisk.

Species	Indicator Status	Species	Indicator Status
Trees		Herbs	
1.		7.	
2.		8.	
3.		9.	
Saplings/shrubs		Woody vines	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

% of species that are OBL, FACW, and/or FAC:____. Other indicators:________.

Hydrophytic vegetation: Yes ____ No ____. Basis:__________.

Soil

Series and phase:__________ On hydric soils list? Yes_____; No____.

Mottled: Yes_____; No_____. Mottle color:________; Matrix color:________.

Gleyed: Yes_____ No_____ Other indicators:__________.

Hydric soils: Yes_____ No_____; Basis:__________.

Hydrology

Inundated: Yes_____; No_____. Depth of standing water:__________.

Saturated soils: Yes_____; No_____. Depth to saturated soil:__________.

Other indicators:__________.

Wetland hydrology: Yes_____; No_____. Basis:__________.

Atypical situation: Yes____; No_____.

Normal Circumstances? Yes_____ No_____.

Wetland Determination: Wetland__________; Nonwetland__________.

Comments:

Determined by:__________

DATA FORM 2

VEGETATION-COMPREHENSIVE DETERMINATION

Applicant Name:____________ Application No.:____________ Project Name:____________

Location:____________ Plot #:____________ Date:____________ Determined By:____________

VEGETATION LAYER

TREES	BASAL AREA	TOTAL BASAL AREA	RANK	HERBS	MIDPOINT OF % COVER CLASS	RANK
1				1		
2				2		
3				3		
4				4		
5				5		
6				6		
7				7		
8				8		
9				9		
10				10		

SAPLINGS/SHRUBS	MIDPOINT OF HEIGHT CLASS	TOTAL HEIGHT CLASS	RANK	WOODY VINES	NUMBER OF STEMS	RANK
1				1		
2				2		
3				3		
4				4		
5				5		
6				6		
7				7		
8				8		
9				9		
10				10		

DATA FORM 3

ATYPICAL SITUATIONS

Applicant Name:____________ Application Number:____________ Project Name:____________

Location:____________ Plot Number:____________ Date:____________

A. VEGETATION:

1. Type of Alteration:____________

____

____________.

2. Effect on Vegetation:____________

____

____________.

3. Previous Vegetation:____________

(Attach documentation) ____________

____________.

4. Hydrophytic Vegetation? Yes____________No____________.

B. SOILS:

1. Type of Alteration:____________

____

____________.

2. Effect on Soils:____________

____

____________.

3. Previous Soils:____________

(Attach documentation) ____________

____________.

4. Hydric Soils? Yes____________No____________.

C. HYDROLOGY:

1. Type of Alteration:____________

____

____________.

2. Effect on Hydrology:____________

____

____________.

3. Previous Hydrology:____________

(Attach documentation) ____________

____________.

4. Wetland Hydrology? Yes____________No____________.

Characterized By:____________

DATA FORM 1

WETLAND DETERMINATION

Applicant Name: John Doe

Application Number: R-85-1421

Project Name: Zena Acricultural Land

State: LA County: Choctaw Legal Description: Township: 7N Range: 2E

Date: 10/08/85 Plot No.: 1-1 Section: 32

Vegetation [list the three dominant species in each vegetation layer (5 if only 1 or 2 layers)]. Indicate species with observed morphological or known physiological adaptations with an asterisk.

Species	Indicator Status	Species	Indicator Status
Trees		Herbs	
1. *Quercus lyrata*	OBL	7. *Polygonum hydropiperoides*	OBL
2. *Carya aquatica*	OBL	8. *Boehmeria cylindrica*	FACW+
3. *Gleditsia aquatica*	OBL	9. *Brunnichia cirrhosa*	--
Saplings/shurbs		Woody vines	
4. *Forestiera acuminata*	OBL	10. *Toxicodendron radicans*	FAC
5. *Planera aquatica*	OBL	11. --	--
6. --	--	12. --	--

% of species that are OBL, FACW, and/or FAC: 100% . Other indicators: -- .

Hydrophytic vegetation: Yes X No ____. Basis: 50% of dominants are OBL, FACW, and/or FAC on plant list.

Soil

Series and phase: Sharkey, frequently flooded On hydric soils list? Yes X; No___.

Mottled: Yes X ; No_____. Mottle color: 5YR4/6 ; Matrix color: 10YR4/1 .

Gleyed: Yes_____ No X . Other indicators:__________.

Hydric soils: Yes X No_____; Basis: On hydric soil list and matrix color .

Hydrology

Inundated: Yes_____; No X . Depth of standing water: -- .

Saturated soils: Yes X ; No_____. Depth to saturated soil: 6" .

Other indicators: Drift lines and sediment deposits present on trees .

Wetland hydrology: Yes X ; No_____. Basis: Saturated soils .

Atypical situation: Yes____; No X .

Normal Circumstances?: Yes X No_____.

Wetland Determination: Wetland X ; Nonwetland__________.

Comments: No rain reported from area in previous two weeks.

Determined by: Zelda Schmell (Signed)

DATA FORM 2

VEGETATION-COMPREHENSIVE DETERMINATION

Applicant Name: John Doe Application No.: R-85-1421 Project Name: Zena Agricultural Land

Location: LA (Choctaw Parish) Plot #: 1-1 Date: 10/08/85 Determined By: Zelda Schmell

VEGETATION LAYER

TREES		BASAL AREA (in^2)	TOTAL BASAL AREA	RANK
1	*Quercus lyrata*	465	1,145	1
2	*Quercus lyrata*	680		
3	*Carya aquatica*	85	243	3
4	*Carya aquatica*	120		
5	*Carya aquatica*	38		
6	*Gleditsia aquatica*	235	253	2
7	*Gleditsia aquatica*	18		
8	*Diospyros virginiana*	46	46	
9				
10				

HERBS		MIDPOINT OF % COVER CLASS	RANK
1	*Boehmeria cylindrica*	37.5	2
2	*Polygonum hydropiperoides*	62.5	1
3	*Brunnichia ovata*	37.5	3
4	*Gleditsia aquatica* (seedling)	2.5	
5	*Eclipta alba*	2.5	
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

SAPLINGS/SHRUBS		MIDPOINT OF HEIGHT CLASS	TOTAL HEIGHT CLASS	RANK
1	*Forestiera acuminata*	4.5	13.0	1
2	*Forestiera acuminata*	4.5		
3	*Forestiera acuminata*	1.5		
4	*Forestiera acuminata*	2.5		
5	*Planera aquatica*	4.5	8.0	2
6	*Planera aquatica*	3.5		
7	*Carya aquatica*	1.5	1.5	
8				
9				
10				

WOODY VINES		NUMBER OF STEMS	RANK
1	*Toxicodendron radicans*	35	1
2	(only woody vine present)		
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

DATA FORM 3

ATYPICAL SITUATIONS

Applicant Name: Wetland Developers, Inc. Application Number: R-85-12 Project Name: Big Canal

Location: Joshua Co., MT Plot Number: 2 Date: 10/08/85

A. VEGETATION:

1. Type of Alteration: Vegetation totally removed or covered by placement of fill from canal (1984).

2. Effect on Vegetation: None remaining.

3. Previous Vegetation: *Carex nebrascensis - Juncus effusus* freshwater (Attach documentation) marsh (based on contiguous plant communities and aerial photography predating fill).

4. Hydrophytic Vegetation? Yes X No ____.

B. SOILS:

1. Type of Alteration: Original soil covered by 4 feet of fill material excavated from canal.

2. Effect on Soils: Original soil buried in 1984.

3. Previous Soils: Original soil examined at 10 inches below (Attach documentation) original soil surface. Soil gleyed (color notation 5Y2/0).

4. Hydric Soils? Yes X No ____.

C. HYDROLOGY:

1. Type of Alteration: 4 feet of fill material placed on original surface.

2. Effect on Hydrology: Area no longer is inundated.

3. Previous Hydrology: Examination of color IR photography taken on 6/5/84 (Attach documentation) showed the area to be inundated. Gaging station data from gage 2 miles upstream indicated the area has been inundated for as much as 3 months of the growing season during 8 of the past 12 years.

4. Wetland Hydrology? Yes X No ____.

Characterized By: Joe Zook

Appendix C Vegetation

1. This appendix contains three sections. ~~Section 1 is a subset of the regional list of plants that occur in wetlands, but includes only those species having an indicator status of OBL, FACW, or FAC. Section 2 is a list of plants that commonly occur in wetlands of a given region. Since many geographic areas of Section 404 responsibility include portions of two or more plant list regions, users will often need more than one regional list; thus, Sections 1 and 2 will be published separately from the remainder of the manual. Users will be furnished all appropriate regional lists.~~

> USER NOTES: CE-supplied plant lists are obsolete and have been superseded by the May 1988 version of the "National List of Plant Species that Occur in Wetlands" published by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and available on the World Wide Web. (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91)

2. Section 3, which is presented herein, describes morphological, physiological, and reproductive adaptations that can be observed or are known to occur in plant species that are typically adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions.

Section 3 - Morphological, Physiological, and Reproductive Adaptations of Plant Species for Occurrence in Areas Having Anaerobic Soil Conditions

Morphological adaptations

3. Many plant species have morphological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands. These structural modifications most often provide the plant with increased buoyancy or support. In some cases (e.g., adventitious roots), the adaptation may facilitate the uptake of nutrients and/or gases (particularly oxygen). However, not all species occurring in areas having anaerobic soil condi-

tions exhibit morphological adaptations for such conditions. The following is a list of morphological adaptations that a species occurring in areas having anaerobic soil conditions may possess (a partial list of species with such adaptations is presented in Table Cl):

Table C1
Partial List of Species with Known Morphological Adaptations for Occurrence in Wetlands[1]

Species	Common Name	Adaptation
Acer negundo	Box elder	Adventitious roots
Acer rubrum	Red maple	Hypertrophied lenticels
Acer saccharinum	Silver maple	Hypertrophied lenticels; adventitious roots (juvenile plants)
Alisma spp.	Water plantain	Polymorphic leaves
Alternanthera philoxeroides	Alligatorweed	Adventitious roots; inflated, floating stems
Avicennia nitida	Black mangrove	Pneumatophores; hypertrophied lenticels
Brasenia schreberi	Watershield	Inflated, floating leaves
Caladium mariscoides	Twig rush	Inflated stems
Cyperus spp. (most species)	Flat sedge	Inflated stems and leaves
Eleocharis spp. (most species)	Spikerush	Inflated stems and leaves
Forestiera accuminata	Swamp privet	Multi-trunk, stooling
Fraxinus pennsylvanica	Green ash	Buttressed trunks; adventitious roots
Gleditsia aquatica	Water locust	Hypertrophied lenticels
Juncus spp.	Rush	Inflated stems and leaves
Limnobium spongia	Frogbit	Inflated, floating leaves
Ludwigia spp.	Waterprimrose	Adventitious roots; inflated floating stems
Menyanthes trifoliata	Buckbean	Inflated stems (rhizome)
Myrica gale	Sweetgale	Hypertrophied lenticels
Nelumbo spp.	Lotus	Floating leaves
Nuphar spp.	Cowlily	Floating leaves
Nymphaea spp.	Waterlily	Floating leaves
Nyssa aquatica	Water tupelo	Buttressed trunks; pneumatophores; adventitious roots
Nyssa ogechee	Ogechee tupelo	Buttressed trunks; multi-trunk; stooling
Nyssa sylvatica var. *biflora*	Swamp blackgum	Buttressed trunks
Platanus occidentalis	Sycamore	Adventitious roots
Populus deltoides	Cottonwood	Adventitious roots
Quercus laurifolia	Laurel oak	Shallow root system
Quercus palustris	Pin oak	Adventitious roots
Rhizophora mangle	Red mangrove	Pneumatophores
Sagittaria spp.	Arrowhead	Polymorphic leaves
Salix spp.	Willow	Hypertrophied lenticels; adventitious roots; oxygen pathway to roots
Scirpus spp.	Bulrush	Inflated stems and leaves
Spartina alterniflora	Smooth cordgrass	Oxygen pathway to roots
Taxodium distichum	Bald cypress	Buttressed trunks; pneumatophores

[1] Many other species exhibit one or more morphological adaptations for occurrence in wetlands. However, not all individuals of a species will exhibit these adaptations under field conditions, and individuals occurring in uplands characteristically may not exhibit them.

a. *Buttressed tree trunks*. Tree species (e.g., *Taxodium distichum)* may develop enlarged trunks (Figure Cl) in response to frequent inundation. This adaptation is a strong indicator of hydrophytic vegetation in non-tropical forested areas.

b. *Pneumatophores*. These modified roots may serve as respiratory organs in species subjected to frequent inundation or soil saturation. Cypress knees (Figure C2) are a classic example, but other species (e.g., *Nyssa aquatica, Rhizophora mangle)* may also develop pneumatophores.

Figure C1. Buttressed tree truck (bald cypress)

Figure C2. Pneumatophores (bald cypress)

c. *Adventitious roots*. Sometimes referred to as "water roots," adventitious roots occur on plant stems in positions where roots normally are not found. Small fibrous roots protruding from the base of trees (e.g., *Salix nigra)* or roots on stems of herbaceous plants and tree seedlings in positions immediately above the soil surface (e.g., *Ludwigia* spp.) occur in response to inundation or soil saturation (Figure C3). These usually develop during periods of sufficiently prolonged soil saturation to destroy most of the root system. *CAUTION: Not all adventitious roots develop as a result of inundation or soil saturation. For example, aerial roots on woody vines are not normally produced as a response to inundation or soil saturation.*

Figure C3. Adventitious roots

d. *Shallow root systems*. When soils are inundated or saturated for long periods during the growing season, anaerobic conditions develop in the zone of root growth. Most species with deep root systems cannot survive in such conditions. Most species capable of growth during periods when soils are oxygenated only near the surface have shallow root systems. In forested wetlands, windthrown trees (Figure C4) are often indicative of shallow root systems.

Figure C4. Wind-thrown tree with shallow root system

e. *Inflated leaves, stems, or roots.* Many hydrophytic species, particularly herbs (e.g., *Limnobium spongia, Ludwigia* spp.) have or develop spongy (aerenchymous) tissues in leaves, stems, and/or roots that provide buoyancy or support and serve as a reservoir or passageway for oxygen needed for metabolic processes. An example of inflated leaves is shown in Figure C5.

Figure C5. Inflated leaves

f. *Polymorphic leaves.* Some herbaceous species produce different types of leaves, depending on the water level at the time of leaf formation. For example, *Alisma* spp. produce strap-shaped leaves when totally submerged, but produce broader, floating leaves when plants are emergent. *CAUTION: Many upland species also produce polymorphic leaves.*

g. *Floating leaves.* Some species (e.g., *Nymphaea* spp.) produce leaves that are uniquely adapted for floating on a water surface (Figure C6). These leaves have stomata primarily on the upper surface and a thick waxy cuticle that restricts water penetration. The presence of species with floating leaves is strongly indicative of hydrophytic vegetation.

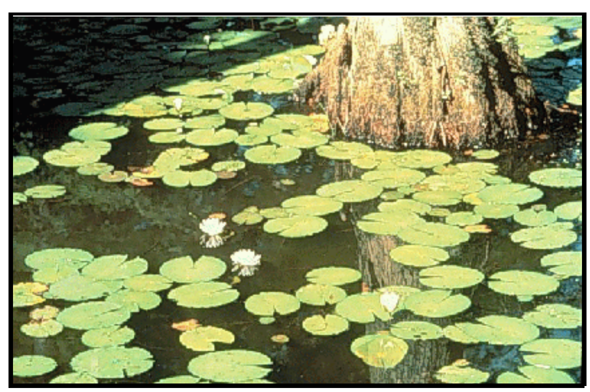


Figure C6. Floating leaves

h. *Floating stems.* A number of species (e.g., *Alternanthera philoxeroides*) produce matted stems that have large internal air spaces when occurring in inundated areas. Such species root in shallow water and grow across the water surface into deeper areas. Species with floating stems often produce adventitious roots at leaf nodes.

i. *Hypertrophied lenticels.* Some plant species (e.g., *Gleditsia aquatica*) produce enlarged lenticels on the stem in response to prolonged inundation or soil saturation. These are thought to increase oxygen uptake through the stem during such periods.

Figure C7. Multitrunk plant

k. *Multitrunks or stooling.* Some woody hydrophytes characteristically produce several trunks of different ages (Figure C7) or produce new stems arising from the base of a senescing individual (e.g., *Forestiera acuminata, Nyssa ogechee)* in response to inundation.

l. *Oxygen pathway to roots.* Some species (e.g., *Spartina alterniflora*) have a specialized cellular arrangement that facilitates diffusion of gaseous oxygen from leaves and stems to the root system.

Physiological adaptations

4. Most, if not all, hydrophytic species are thought to possess physiological adaptations for occurrence in areas that have prolonged periods of anaerobic soil conditions. However, relatively few species have actually been proven to possess such adaptations, primarily due to the limited research that has been conducted. Nevertheless, several types of physiological adaptations known to occur in hydrophytic species are discussed below, and a list of species having one or more of these adaptations is presented in Table C2. *NOTE: Since it is impossible to detect these adaptations in the field, use of this indicator will be limited to observing the species in the field and checking the list in Table C2 to determine whether the species is known to have a physiological adaptation for occurrence in areas having anaerobic soil conditions.*

Table C2
Species Exhibiting Physiological Adaptations for Occurrence in Wetlands

Species	Physiological Adaptation
Alnus incana	Increased levels of nitrate reductase; malate accumulation
Alnus rubra	Increased levels of nitrate reductase
Baccharis viminea	Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions
Betula pubescens	Oxidizes the rhizosphere; malate accumulation
Carex arenaria	Malate accumulation
Carex flacca	Absence of ADH activity
Carex lasiocarpa	Malate accumulation
Deschampsia cespitosa	Absence of ADH activity
Filipendula ulmaria	Absence of ADH activity
Fraxinus pennsylvanica	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Glyceria maxima	Malate accumulation; absence of ADH activity
Juncus effusus	Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions; absence of ADH activity
Larix laricina	Slight increases in metabolic rates; increased levels of nitrate reductase
Lobelia dortmanna	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Lythrum salicaria	Absence of ADH activity
Molinia caerulea	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Myrica gale	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Nuphar lutea	Organic acid production
Nyssa aquatica	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Nyssa sylvatica var. *biflora*	Oxidizes the rhizosphere; malate accumulation
Phalaris arundinacea	Absence of ADH activity; ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions
Phragmites australis	Malate accumulation
Pinus contorta	Slight increases in metabolic rates; increased levels of nitrate reductase
Polygonum amphibium	Absence of ADH activity
Potentilla anserina	Absence of ADH activity; ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions
Ranunculus flammula	Malate accumulation; absence of ADH activity
Salix cinerea	Malate accumulation
Salix fragilis	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Salix lasiolepis	Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions
Scirpus maritimus	Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions
Senecio vulgaris	Slight increases in metabolic rates
Spartina alterniflora	Oxidizes the rhizosphere
Trifolia subterraneum	Low ADH activity
Typha angustifolia	Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions

a. *Accumulation of malate.* Malate, a nontoxic metabolite, accumulates in roots of many hydrophytic species (e.g., *Glyceria maxima*, *Nyssa sylvatica* var. *biflora*). Nonwetland species concentrate ethanol, a toxic by-product of anaerobic respiration, when growing in anaerobic soil conditions. Under such conditions, many hydrophytic species produce high concentrations of malate and unchanged concentrations of ethanol, thereby avoiding accumulation of toxic materials. Thus, species having the ability to concentrate malate instead of ethanol in the root system under anaerobic soil conditions are adapted for life in such conditions, while species that concentrate ethanol are poorly adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions.

b. *Increased levels of nitrate reductase.* Nitrate reductase is an enzyme involved in conversion of nitrate nitrogen to nitrite nitrogen, an intermediate step in ammonium production. Ammonium ions can accept electrons as a replacement for gaseous oxygen in some species, thereby allowing continued functioning of metabolic processes under low soil oxygen conditions. Species that produce high levels of nitrate reductase (e.g., *Larix laricina*) are adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions.

c. *Slight increases in metabolic rates.* Anaerobic soil conditions effect short-term increases in metabolic rates in most species. However, the rate of metabolism often increases only slightly in wetland species, while metabolic rates increase significantly in nonwetland species. Species exhibiting only slight increases in metabolic rates (e.g., *Larix laricina, Senecio vulgaris)* are adapted for life in anaerobic soil conditions.

d. *Rhizosphere oxidation.* Some hydrophytic species (e.g., *Nyssa sylvatica*, *Myrica gale*) are capable of transferring gaseous oxygen from the root system into soil pores immediately surrounding the roots. This adaptation prevents root deterioration and maintains the rates of water and nutrient absorption under anaerobic soil conditions.

e. *Ability for root growth in low oxygen tensions.* Some species (e.g., *Typha angustifolia*, *Juncus effusus*) have the ability to maintain root growth under soil oxygen concentrations as low as 0.5 percent. Although prolonged (>l year) exposure to soil oxygen concentrations lower than 0.5 percent generally results in the death of most individuals, this adaptation enables some species to survive extended periods of anaerobic soil conditions.

f. *Absence of alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) activity.* ADH is an enzyme associated with increased ethanol production. When the enzyme is not functioning, ethanol production does not increase significantly. Some hydrophytic species (e.g., *Potentilla anserina, Polygonum amphibium*) show only slight increases in ADH activity under anaerobic soil conditions. Therefore, ethanol production occurs at a slower rate in species that have low concentrations of ADH.

Reproductive adaptations

5. Some plant species have reproductive features that enable them to become established and grow in saturated soil conditions. The following have been identified in the technical literature as reproductive adaptations that occur in hydrophytic species:

a. *Prolonged seed viability.* Some plant species produce seeds that may remain viable for 20 years or more. Exposure of these seeds to atmospheric oxygen usually triggers germination. Thus, species (e.g., *Taxodium distichum)* that grow in very wet areas may produce seeds that germinate only during infrequent periods when the soil is dewatered. *NOTE: Many upland species also have prolonged seed viability, but the trigger mechanism for germination is not exposure to atmospheric oxygen.*

b. *Seed germination under low oxygen concentrations.* Seeds of some hydrophytic species germinate when submerged. This enables germination during periods of early-spring inundation, which may provide resulting seedlings a competitive advantage over species whose seeds germinate only when exposed to atmospheric oxygen.

c. *Flood-tolerant seedlings.* Seedlings of some hydrophytic species (e.g., *Fraxinus pennsylvanica)* can survive moderate periods of total or partial inundation. Seedlings of these species have a competitive advantage over seedlings of flood-intolerant species.

Appendix D
Hydric Soils

1. This appendix consists of two sections. Section 1 describes the basic procedure for digging a soil pit and examining for hydric soil indicators. ~~Section 2 is a list of hydric soils of the United States.~~

Section I - Procedures for Digging a Soil Pit and Examining for Hydric Soil Indicators

Digging a soil pit

2. Apply the following procedure: Circumscribe a 1-ft-diam area, preferably with a tile spade (sharpshooter). Extend the blade vertically downward, cut all roots to the depth of the blade, and lift the soil from the hole. This should provide approximately 16 inches of the soil profile for examination. *NOTE: Observations are usually made immediately below the A-horizon or 10 in. (whichever is shallower).* In many cases, a soil auger or probe can be used instead of a spade. If so, remove successive cores until 16 inches of the soil profile have been removed. Place successive cores in the same sequence as removed from the hole. *NOTE: An auger or probe cannot be effectively used when the soil profile is loose, rocky, or contains a large volume of water (e.g., peraquic moisture regime).*

Examining the soil

3. Examine the soil for hydric soils indicators (paragraphs 44 and/or 45 of main text (for sandy soils)). *NOTE: It may not be necessary to conduct a classical characterization (e.g., texture, structure, etc.) of the soil.* Consider the hydric soil indicators in the following sequence *(NOTE: The soil examination can be terminated when a positive hydric soil indicator is found):*

Nonsandy soils.

a. Determine whether an organic soil is present (see paragraph 44 of the main text). If so, the soil is hydric.

b. Determine whether the soil has a histic epipedon (see paragraph 44 of the main text). Record the thickness of the histic epipedon on Data Form 1.

c. Determine whether sulfidic materials are present by smelling the soil. The presence of a "rotten egg" odor is indicative of hydrogen sulfide, which forms only under extreme reducing conditions associated with prolonged inundation/soil saturation.

d. Determine whether the soil has an aquic or peraquic moisture regime (see paragraph 44 of the main text). If so, the soil is hydric.

e. Conduct a ferrous iron test. A colorimetric field test kit has been developed for this purpose. A reducing soil environment is present when the soil extract turns pink upon addition of α,α'-dipyridyl.

f. Determine the color(s) of the matrix and any mottles that may be present. Soil color is characterized by three features: hue, value, and chroma. Hue refers to the soil color in relation to red, yellow, blue, etc. Value refers to the lightness of the hue. Chroma refers to the strength of the color (or departure from a neutral of the same lightness). Soil colors are determined by use of a Munsell Color Book (Munsell Color 1975).[1] Each Munsell Color Book has color charts of different hues, ranging from 10R to 5Y. Each page of hue has color chips that show values and chromas. Values are shown in columns down the page from as low as 0 to as much as 8, and chromas are shown in rows across the page from as low as 0 to as much as 8. In writing Munsell color notations, the sequence is always hue, value, and chroma (e.g., 10YR 5/2). To determine soil color, place a small portion of soil[2] in the openings behind the color page and match the soil color to the appropriate color chip. *NOTE: Match the soil to the nearest color chip.* Record on DATA FORM 1 the hue, value, and chroma of the best matching color chip. *CAUTION: Never place soil on the face or front of the color page because this might smear the color chips.* Mineral hydric soils usually have one of the following color features immediately below the A-horizon or 10 inches (whichever is shallower):

(1) Gleyed soil.

---

1 See references at the end of the main text.
2 The soil must be moistened if dry at the time of examination.

Determine whether the soil is gleyed. If the matrix color best fits a color chip found on the gley page of the Munsell soil color charts, the soil is gleyed. This indicates prolonged soil saturation, and the soil is highly reduced.

(2) Nongleyed soil.

(a) Matrix chroma of 2 or less in mottled soils.[1]

(b) Matrix chroma of 1 or less in unmottled soils.[1]

(c) Gray mottles within 10 in. of the soil surface in dark (black) mineral soils (e.g., Mollisols) that do not have characteristics of (a) or (b) above.

Soils having the above color characteristics are normally saturated for significant duration during the growing season. However, hydric soils with significant coloration due to the nature of the parent material (e.g., red soils of the Red River Valley) may not exhibit chromas within the range indicated above. In such cases, this indicator cannot be used.

g. Determine whether the mapped soil series or phase is on the national list of hydric soils (Section 2). *CAUTION: It will often be necessary to compare the profile description of the soil with that of the soil series or phase indicated on the soil map to verify that the soil was correctly mapped. This is especially true when the soil survey indicates the presence of inclusions or when the soil is mapped as an association of two or more soil series.*

h. Look for iron and manganese concretions. Look for small (>0.08-in.) aggregates within 3 in. of the soil surface. These are usually black or dark brown and reflect prolonged saturation near the soil surface.

Sandy soils.

Look for one of the following indicators in sandy soils:

a. A layer of organic material above the mineral surface or high organic matter content in the surface horizon (see paragraph 45*a* of the main text). This is evidenced by a darker color of the surface layer due to organic matter interspersed among or adhering to the sand particles. This is not observed in upland soils due to associated aerobic conditions.

b. Streaking of subsurface horizons (see paragraph 45*b* of the main text). Look for dark vertical streaks in subsurface horizons. These streaks

---

[1] The soil must be moistened if dry at the time of examination.

represent organic matter being moved downward in the profile. When soil is rubbed between the fingers, the organic matter will leave a dark stain on the fingers.

c. Organic pans (see paragraph 45*c* of the main text). This is evidenced by a thin layer of hardened soil at a depth of 12 to 30 inches below the mineral surface.

Section 2 - Hydric Soils of the United States

4. The list of hydric soils of the United States ~~(Table D1)~~ was developed by the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils (NTCHS), a panel consisting of representatives of the Soil Conservation Service (SCS), Fish and Wildlife Service, Environmental Protection Agency, Corps of Engineers, Auburn University, University of Maryland, and Louisiana State University. Keith Young of SCS was committee chairman.

5. The NTCHS developed the following definition of hydric soils:

~~A hydric soil is a soil that is saturated, flooded, or ponded long enough during the growing season to develop anaerobic conditions that favor the growth and regeneration of hydrophytic vegetation (U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Soil Conservation Service 1985, as amended by the NTCHS in December 1986).~~

> USER NOTES: The hydric soil definition, criteria, and hydric soil list (Table D1) published in the 1987 Corps Manual are obsolete. Current hydric soil definition, criteria, and lists are available over the World Wide Web from the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). (HQUSACE, 27 Aug 91, 6 Mar 92)

Criteria for hydric soils

6. Based on the above definition, the NTCHS developed the following criteria for hydric soils, and all soils appearing on the list will meet at least one criterion:

a. ~~All Histosols[+] except Folists;~~

b. ~~Soils in Aquic suborders, Aquic subgroups, Albolls suborder, Salorthids great group, or Pell great groups of Vertisols that are:~~

[1] Soil taxa conform to USDA-SCS (1975).

(1) Somewhat poorly drained and have water table less than 0.5 ft from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season, or

(2) Poorly drained or very poorly drained and have either:

(a) A water table at less than 1.0 ft from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season if permeability is equal to or greater than 6.0 in/hr in all layers within 20 inches; or

(b) A water table at less than 1.5 ft from the surface for a significant period (usually a week or more) during the growing season if permeability is less than 6.0 in/hr in any layer within 20 inches; or

c. Soils that are ponded for long duration or very long duration during part of the growing season; or

d. Soils that are frequently flooded for long duration or very long duration during the growing season.

7. The hydric soils list was formulated by applying the above criteria to soil properties documented in USDA-SCS (1975) and the SCS Soil Interpretation Records (SOI-5).

Use of the list

8. The list of hydric soils of the United States (Table D1) is arranged alphabetically by soil series. Unless otherwise specified, all phases of a listed soil series are hydric. In some cases, only those phases of a soil series that are ponded, frequently flooded, or otherwise designated as wet are hydric. Such phases are denoted in Table D1 by the following symbols in parentheses after the series name:

F - flooded

FF - frequently flooded

P - ponded

W - wet

D - depressional

9. Drained phases of some soil series retain their hydric properties even after drainage. Such phases are identified in Table D1 by the symbol "DR" in parentheses following the soil series name. In such cases, both the drained and un-

~~drained phases of the soil series are hydric.~~ *CAUTION: Be sure that the profile description of the mapping unit conforms to that of the sampled soil. Also, designation of a soil series or phase as hydric does not necessarily mean that the area is a wetland. An area having a hydric soil is a wetland only if positive indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are also present.*

REPORT DOCUMENTATION PAGE

Form Approved
OMB No. 0704-0188

1. AGENCY USE ONLY ***(Leave blank)***

2. REPORT DATE
January 1987

3. REPORT TYPE AND DATES COVERED
Final report

4. TITLE AND SUBTITLE
Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual

5. FUNDING NUMBERS

6. AUTHOR(S)
Environmental Laboratory

7. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)
U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station
3909 Halls Ferry Road, Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199

8. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER
Technical Report Y-87-1

9. SPONSORING/MONITORING AGENCY NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

10. SPONSORING/MONITORING AGENCY REPORT NUMBER

11. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES
Available from National Technical Information Service, 5285 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161.

12a. DISTRIBUTION/AVAILABILITY STATEMENT

Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

12b. DISTRIBUTION CODE

13. ABSTRACT ***(Maximum 200 words)***

This document presents approaches and methods for identifying and delineating wetlands for purposes of Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. It is designed to assist users in making wetland determinations using a multiparameter approach. Except where noted in the manual, this approach requires positive evidence of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology for a determination that an area is a wetland. The multiparameter approach provides a logical, easily defensible, and technical basis for wetland determinations. Technical guidelines are presented for wetlands, deepwater aquatic habitats, and nonwetlands (uplands).

Hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology are also characterized, and wetland indicators of each parameter are listed.

Methods for applying the multiparameter approach are described. Separate sections are devoted to preliminary data gathering and analysis, method selection, routine determinations, comprehensive determinations, atypical situations, and problem areas. Three levels of routine determinations are described, thereby affording significant flexibility in method selection.

(Continued)

14. SUBJECT TERMS

Delineation	Methods	Vegetation
Hydrology	Plant communities	Wetlands
Manual	Soil	

15. NUMBER OF PAGES
169

16. PRICE CODE

17. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF REPORT
UNCLASSIFIED

18. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF THIS PAGE
UNCLASSIFIED

19. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF ABSTRACT

20. LIMITATION OF ABSTRACT

13. (Concluded).

Four appendices provide supporting information. Appendix A is a glossary of technical terms used in the manual. Appendix B contains data forms for use with the various methods. Appendix C, developed by a Federal interagency panel, contains a list of all plant species known to occur in wetlands of the region. Each species has been assigned an indicator status that describes its estimated probability of occurring in wetlands of the region. Morphological, physiological, and reproductive adaptations that enable a plant species to occur in wetlands are also described, along with a listing of some species having such adaptations. Appendix D describes the procedure for examining the soil for indicators of hydric soil conditions, and includes a national list of hydric soils developed by the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils.

Appendix B - USACE Regional Supplement NCNE

ERDC/EL TR-12-1

Environmental Laboratory

US Army Corps of Engineers®
Engineer Research and Development Center

Wetlands Regulatory Assistance Program

Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual: Northcentral and Northeast Region

(Version 2.0)

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

January 2012

Wetlands Regulatory Assistance Program

ERDC/EL TR-12-1
January 2012

Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual: Northcentral and Northeast Region

(Version 2.0)

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center
3909 Halls Ferry Road
Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199

Final report

Prepared for Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

Abstract: This document is one of a series of Regional Supplements to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual, which provides technical guidance and procedures for identifying and delineating wetlands that may be subject to regulatory jurisdiction under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act or Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act. The development of Regional Supplements is part of a nationwide effort to address regional wetland characteristics and improve the accuracy and efficiency of wetland-delineation procedures. This supplement is applicable to the Northcentral and Northeast Region, which consists of all or portions of 15 states: Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Maine, Massachusetts, Michigan, Minnesota, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Wisconsin.

Contents

Figures and Tables

Figures

Tables

Preface

This document is one of a series of Regional Supplements to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual. It was developed by the U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center (ERDC) at the request of Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), with funding provided through the Wetlands Regulatory Assistance Program (WRAP). This is Version 2.0 of the Northcentral and Northeast Regional Supplement; it replaces the “interim” version, which was published in October 2009.

This document was developed in cooperation with the Northcentral and Northeast Regional Working Group, whose members contributed their time and expertise to the project over a period of many months. Working Group meetings were held in Hanover, NH, on 6-8 November 2007 and Madison, WI, on 15-17 April 2008. Members of the Regional Working Group and contributors to this document were:

- James Wakeley, Project Leader and Working Group Chair, Environmental Laboratory (EL), ERDC, Vicksburg, MS
- Robert Lichvar, Chair, Vegetation Subcommittee, Cold Regions Research and Engineering Laboratory, ERDC, Hanover, NH
- Chris Noble, Chair, Soils Subcommittee, EL, ERDC, Vicksburg, MS
- Edward Arthur, U.S. Army Engineer Detroit District, Sault Ste Marie, MI
- Al Averill, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service, Amherst, MA
- Jacob F. Berkowitz, EL, ERDC, Vicksburg, MS
- Steve Carlisle, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, Seneca Falls, NY
- Greg Carlson, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Chicago, IL
- Christine Delorier, U.S. Army Engineer District, New York, NY
- Steve Eggers, U.S. Army Engineer District, St. Paul, MN
- Joseph Homer, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, Conway, NH
- Theresa Hudson, U.S. Army Engineer District, Buffalo, NY
- Joseph Kassler, U.S. Army Engineer District, Buffalo, NY
- Greg Larson, Minnesota Board of Water and Soil Resources, St. Paul, MN

- Michael Leggiero, U.S. Army Engineer Philadelphia District, Gouldsboro, PA
- Todd Losee, Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, Lansing, MI
- Todd Lutte, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Philadelphia, PA
- Mike Machalek, U.S. Army Engineer District, Chicago, IL
- Rob Marsh, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Stony Brook, NY
- Tom Mings, U.S. Army Engineer District, St. Paul, MN
- Paul Minkin, U.S. Army Engineer New England District, Concord, MA
- John Overland, Minnesota Board of Water and Soil Resources, St. Paul, MN
- Frank Plewa, U.S. Army Engineer Baltimore District, Carlisle, PA
- Donald Reed, Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI
- John Ritchey, U.S. Army Engineer District, Detroit, MI
- David Rocque, Maine Department of Agriculture, Augusta, ME
- Charles Rosenburg, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Buffalo, NY
- Daniel Spada, New York State Adirondack Park Agency, Ray Brook, NY
- Mary Anne Thiesing, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, New York, NY
- Ralph Tiner, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Inventory, Hadley, MA
- Pat Trochlell, Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Madison, WI
- Lenore Vasilas, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, Washington, DC
- Thomas Villars, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, White River Junction, VT
- P. Michael Whited, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, St. Paul, MN
- Sally Yost, EL, ERDC, Vicksburg, MS
- Yone Yu, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Chicago, IL

Technical reviews were provided by the following members of the National Advisory Team for Wetland Delineation: Steve Eggers, U.S. Army Engineer (USAE) District, St. Paul, MN; Michael Gilbert, USAE District, Omaha, NE; Dan Martel, USAE District, San Francisco, CA; Norman Melvin, NRCS National Wetland Team, Fort Worth, TX; Paul Minkin,

USAE District, New England, Concord, MA; Karen Mulligan, USAE Headquarters, Washington, DC; David Olsen, USAE Headquarters, Washington, DC; Stuart Santos, USAE District, Jacksonville, FL; Ralph Spagnolo, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Region 3, Philadelphia, PA; Mary Anne Thiesing, EPA Region 10, Seattle, WA; Ralph Tiner, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Hadley, MA; Katherine Trott, USAE Institute for Water Research, Alexandria, VA; and Lenore Vasilas, NRCS, Washington DC. In addition, portions of this Regional Supplement addressing soils issues were reviewed and endorsed by the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils (Christopher W. Smith, chair).

Independent peer reviews were performed in accordance with Office of Management and Budget guidelines. The peer-review team consisted of Barry Isaacs (chair), USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service, Harrisburg, PA; Richard Bostwick, Maine Department of Transportation, Environmental Office, Augusta, ME; Mallory Gilbert, M. N. Gilbert Environmental Consulting and Planning Services, Troy, NY; Ingeborg Hegemann, BSC Group, Inc., Worcester, MA; Allyz Kramer, Short Elliott Hendrickson, Inc., St. Paul, MN; Peter Miller, Wenck Associates, Inc., Maple Plain, MN; Kelly Rice, JF New and Associates, Inc., West Olive, MI; and Barbara Walther, SRF Consulting Group, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.

Technical editors for this Regional Supplement were Dr. James S. Wakeley, Robert W. Lichvar, Chris V. Noble, and Jacob F. Berkowitz, ERDC. Karen C. Mulligan was the project proponent and coordinator at Headquarters, USACE. During the conduct of this work, R. Daniel Smith was Acting Chief of the Wetlands and Coastal Ecology Branch; Dr. Edmond Russo was Chief, Ecosystem Evaluation and Engineering Division; Sally Yost was Acting Program Manager, WRAP; and Dr. Elizabeth Fleming was Director, EL.

COL Kevin J. Wilson was Commander of ERDC. Dr. Jeffery P. Holland was Director.

The correct citation for this document is:

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2011. *Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual: Northcentral and Northeast Region (Version 2.0)*, ed. J. S. Wakeley, R. W. Lichvar, C. V. Noble, and J. F. Berkowitz. ERDC/EL TR-12-1. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center.

1 Introduction

Purpose and use of this regional supplement

This document is one of a series of Regional Supplements to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual (hereafter called the Corps Manual). The Corps Manual provides technical guidance and procedures, from a national perspective, for identifying and delineating wetlands that may be subject to regulatory jurisdiction under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1344) or Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act (33 U.S.C. 403). According to the Corps Manual, identification of wetlands is based on a three-factor approach involving indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soil, and wetland hydrology. This Regional Supplement presents wetland indicators, delineation guidance, and other information that is specific to the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

This Regional Supplement is part of a nationwide effort to address regional wetland characteristics and improve the accuracy and efficiency of wetland-delineation procedures. Regional differences in climate, geology, soils, hydrology, plant and animal communities, and other factors are important to the identification and functioning of wetlands. These differences cannot be considered adequately in a single national manual. The development of this supplement follows National Academy of Sciences recommendations to increase the regional sensitivity of wetland-delineation methods (National Research Council 1995). The intent of this supplement is to bring the Corps Manual up to date with current knowledge and practice in the region and not to change the way wetlands are defined or identified. The procedures given in the Corps Manual, in combination with wetland indicators and guidance provided in this supplement, can be used to identify wetlands for a number of purposes, including resource inventories, management plans, and regulatory programs. The determination that a wetland is subject to regulatory jurisdiction under Section 404 or Section 10 must be made independently of procedures described in this supplement.

This Regional Supplement is designed for use with the current version of the Corps Manual (Environmental Laboratory 1987) and all subsequent versions. Where differences in the two documents occur, this Regional Supplement takes precedence over the Corps Manual for applications in the Northcentral and Northeast Region. Table 1 identifies specific sections of the Corps Manual that are replaced by this supplement. Other guidance and procedures given in this supplement and not listed in Table 1 are intended to augment the Corps Manual but not necessarily to replace it. The Corps of Engineers has final authority over the use and interpretation of the Corps Manual and this supplement in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Table 1. Sections of the Corps Manual replaced by this Regional Supplement for applications in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Item	Replaced Portions of the Corps Manual (Environmental Laboratory 1987)	Replacement Guidance (this Supplement)
Hydrophytic Vegetation Indicators	Paragraph 35, all subparts, and all references to specific indicators in Part IV.	Chapter 2
Hydric Soil Indicators	Paragraphs 44 and 45, all subparts, and all references to specific indicators in Part IV.	Chapter 3
Wetland Hydrology Indicators	Paragraph 49(b), all subparts, and all references to specific indicators in Part IV.	Chapter 4
Growing Season Definition	Glossary	Chapter 4, Growing Season; Glossary
Hydrology Standard for Highly Disturbed or Problematic Wetland Situations	Paragraph 48, including Table 5 and the accompanying User Note in the online version of the Manual	Chapter 5, Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology, Procedure item 3(f)

Indicators and procedures given in this Supplement are designed to identify wetlands as defined jointly by the Corps of Engineers (33 CFR 328.3) and Environmental Protection Agency (40 CFR 230.3). Wetlands are a subset of the "waters of the United States" that may be subject to regulation under Section 404. One key feature of the definition of wetlands is that, under normal circumstances, they support "a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions." Many waters of the United States are unvegetated and thus are excluded from the Corps/EPA definition of wetlands, although they may still be subject to Clean Water Act regulation. Other potential waters of the United States in the region include, but are not limited to, tidal flats and shorelines along the Atlantic coast, in estuaries, and along the shores of the Great Lakes; unvegetated temporary pools; ponds; lakes; mud flats; and perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral stream channels. Delineation of these waters is based on the high tide line, the "ordinary high water mark" (33 CFR 328.3e), or other criteria and is beyond the scope of this Regional Supplement.

Amendments to this document will be issued periodically in response to new scientific information and user comments. Between published versions, Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers may provide updates to this document and any other supplemental information used to make wetland determinations under Section 404 and Section 10. Wetland delineators should use the most recent approved versions of this document and supplemental information. See the Corps of Engineers Headquarters regulatory web site for information and updates (http://www.usace.army.mil/-CECW/Pages/reg_supp.aspx). The Corps of Engineers has established an interagency National Advisory Team for Wetland Delineation. The Team's role is to review new data and make recommendations for changes in wetland-delineation procedures to Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Items for consideration should include full documentation and supporting data and should be submitted to:

National Advisory Team for Wetland Delineation
Regulatory Branch (Attn: CECW-CO)
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
441 G Street, N.W.
Washington, DC 20314-1000

Applicable region and subregions

This supplement is applicable to the Northcentral and Northeast Region, which consists of all or portions of 15 states: Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Maine, Massachusetts, Michigan, Minnesota, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Wisconsin (Figure 1). The region encompasses considerable topographic and climatic diversity, but is differentiated from surrounding regions mainly by the combination of a humid temperate climate with cold, snowy winters, short growing seasons, and seasonally frozen soils in many areas; glacially sculpted landscape; hardwood, conifer, mixed-forest, and hardwood-savanna natural vegetation; and the preponderance of forest, crop, pasture, and developed land uses (Bailey 1995, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006).

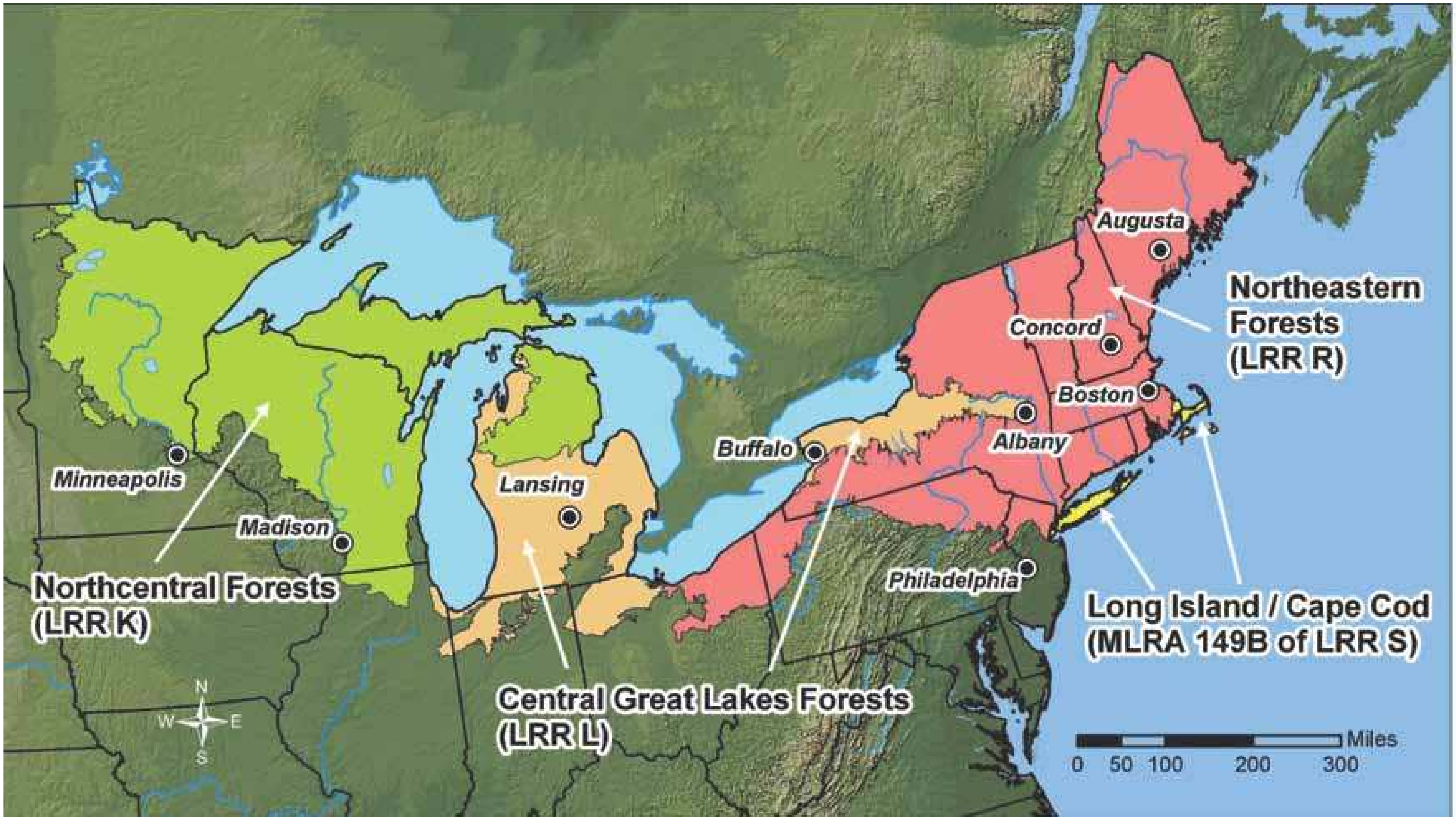


Figure 1. Approximate boundaries of the Northcentral and Northeast Region. Subregions used in this supplement correspond to USDA Land Resource Regions (LRR). This supplement is applicable throughout the highlighted areas, although some indicators may be restricted to specific subregions or smaller areas. See text for details.

The approximate spatial extent of the Northcentral and Northeast Region is shown in Figure 1. The region map is based on a combination of Land Resource Regions (LRR) K, L, and R, and Major Land Resource Area (MLRA) 149B in LRR S, as recognized by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006). Most of the wetland indicators presented in this supplement are applicable throughout the entire Northcentral and Northeast Region. However, some indicators are restricted to specific subregions (i.e., LRRs) or smaller areas (i.e., MLRAs).

Region and subregion boundaries are depicted in Figure 1 as sharp lines. However, climatic conditions and the physical and biological characteristics of landscapes do not change abruptly at the boundaries. In reality, regions and subregions often grade into one another in broad transition zones that may be tens or hundreds of miles wide. The lists of wetland indicators presented in these Regional Supplements may differ between adjoining regions or subregions. In transitional areas, the investigator must use experience and good judgment to select the supplement and indicators that are appropriate to the site based on its physical and biological characteristics. Wetland boundaries are not likely to differ between two supplements in transitional areas, but one supplement may provide more detailed treatment of certain problem situations encountered on the site. If in doubt about which supplement to use in a transitional area, apply both supplements and compare the results. For additional guidance, contact the appropriate Corps of Engineers District Regulatory Office. Contact information for District regulatory offices is available at the Corps Headquarters web site (http://www.usace.army.mil/CECW/Pages/reg_districts.aspx).

Physical and biological characteristics of the region

The Northcentral and Northeast Region is a vast area of nearly level to mountainous terrain, ranging from sea level to 6,288 ft (1,917 m) at Mount Washington in New Hampshire. During the Wisconsinan stage of Pleistocene glaciation, nearly all of the region was covered by continental ice sheets. It is a region of warm summers and cold, snowy winters, with average annual temperatures ranging from 39 to 49 °F (4 to 10 °C) except along the immediate coast. Average annual precipitation varies from 26 to 62 in. (660 to 1,575 mm), depending upon location, and exceeds annual evapotranspiration. In general, precipitation increases across the region from west to east. In Minnesota and Wisconsin, most precipitation occurs in spring and summer; in the rest of the region, precipitation is more evenly distributed throughout the year (Bailey 1995, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006). The combination of relatively abundant rainfall, low evapotranspiration, and varied topography has created a region rich in perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral streams, natural lakes, and wetlands.

Soil parent materials in the Northcentral and Northeast Region are predominantly the result of Pleistocene glaciations. Glaciers and meltwater shaped the landscape of the region and deposited the debris as glacial landforms, including moraines, drumlins, eskers, outwash plains, kettles, lake plains, deltas, and other features (Embleton and King 1968). Nearly every landscape in the region has been smoothed by glacial ice and has some sort of glacial material on its surface.

Glacial features can be categorized into two broad groups: ice-contact deposits and glaciofluvial or meltwater deposits. Till is the most extensive ice-contact deposit in the region. It is an unsorted mixture of fine particles, sand, gravel, cobbles, and boulders that was scoured and redeposited by ice (Embleton and King 1968). Deposits are generally thickest in valleys and thinnest over highlands. The properties of glacial till are directly related to the source materials. Till from granitic bedrock is commonly rocky, sandy, and acidic. Till from Mesozoic rocks can be reddish in color, and that derived from former lake plains can be very clayey. Ground moraine is a landform of low relief consisting of basal till deposited by receding ice. The topography is often gently rolling, with numerous shallow depressions. Terminal and lateral moraines are ridges or chains of hills that formed at the ends and sides of glaciers, respectively. For example, Long Island in New York was formed, in part, by the terminal moraine marking the southernmost extent of Wisconsinan glaciers. Drumlins are elongated, streamlined hills of glacial till. They occur in groups oriented parallel to the direction of glacial flow and number in the thousands in some areas. Extensive drumlin fields are found in northwestern New York, east-central Wisconsin, and south-central New England. Slope wetlands are associated with drumlins and other ice-contact deposits throughout the region as a result of water perching in the spring over dense glacial till. Eskers are long narrow ridges composed of stratified sand and gravel deposited by streams flowing through tunnels within and beneath glaciers (Embleton and King 1968; Martini et al. 2001).

Glaciofluvial deposits are formed of materials transported by glacial meltwater. They tend to be sorted by particle size, forming stratified deposits. Meltwater emerging from beneath a glacier often forms braided streams that deposit sand and gravel over a broad area, producing an outwash plain. As glaciers recede, blocks of ice may be isolated and partly buried in the accumulating sediments. As these blocks melt, the unsupported glacial sediments collapse and form depressions called kettles (Embleton and King 1968). Walden Pond in Massachusetts is one example. Some outwash plains are dotted with numerous kettles and are known as pitted outwash. In the Northcentral and Northeast Region, numerous wetlands exist today where kettle holes intercept the regional water table. The finer particles in glacial meltwater may be deposited farther downstream and in the still waters of glacial lakes. Lake (lacustrine) deposits include horizontal strata of silts and clays that accumulate on lake bottoms, and deltas of sandy materials deposited at the mouths of incoming streams. Lacustrine deposits in some areas support complexes of small, rainwater-fed depressional wetlands (Stone and Ashley 1992). In other areas, such as in northern Minnesota, extensive organic soils have formed on glacial lake plains.

Post-glacial, clayey, marine deposits exist in the Champlain Valley of Vermont and along the Atlantic coast from southeastern Massachusetts north to Canada. In Maine, marine deposits occur at elevations up to 420 ft (128 m) above sea level, as a result of post-glacial isostatic (crustal) rebound (Maine Geological Survey 2005). These clayey deposits can be somewhat confusing for wetland delineation as they commonly have gray, lithochromic (inherited from parent material) colors. In addition, windblown deposits of silt and fine sand (loess) form a surface cap over glacial materials in some soils in the region. Other parent materials in the region include sand dunes adjacent to the Great Lakes and the Atlantic coast, and recent alluvial deposits along the Mississippi, Hudson, Connecticut, and other rivers.

The Northcentral and Northeast Region occupies the transition zone between the boreal forest to the north and broadleaf deciduous forest to the south. Individual forest stands may consist primarily of conifers, hardwoods, or a mixture of the two. Pines (*Pinus* spp.) and other conifers often dominate in areas with nutrient-poor soils or recent disturbance by fire or human activity. Areas with nutrient-rich soils are often dominated by hardwoods, such as sugar maple (*Acer saccharum*), American basswood (*Tilia americana*), and American beech (*Fagus grandifolia*) (Bailey 1995).

In the mountainous areas of New York and the New England states, there is distinct altitudinal zonation of forest types.

The Northcentral and Northeast Region is composed of three major subregions: Northcentral Forests (corresponds to LRR K), Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L), and Northeastern Forests (LRR R). In addition, the Long Island/Cape Cod area (MLRA 149B in LRR S) has been included in this region because of its similar climate, geologic history, and soil parent materials (Figure 1). Important characteristics of each subregion are described briefly below; further details can be found in USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (2006). Wetland indicators presented in this Regional Supplement are applicable across all subregions unless otherwise noted.

Northcentral Forests (LRR K)

This subregion lies mainly south and west of the western Great Lakes in Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, and Illinois (Figure 1) and is covered mostly by level to gently rolling deposits of glacial till, loess, outwash, and glacial lake sediments. The subregion receives 26 to 34 in. (660 to 865 mm) of precipitation each year. The area is largely forested, with lesser amounts of cropland, grassland, and urban development. Common tree species in higher landscape positions include eastern white pine (*Pinus strobus*), red pine (*P. resinosa*), jack pine (*P. banksiana*), eastern hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis*), American beech, yellow birch (*Betula alleghaniensis*), paper birch (*B. papyrifera*), northern red oak (*Quercus rubra*), white oak (*Q. alba*), sugar maple, white ash (*Fraxinus americana*), and quaking aspen (*Populus tremuloides*). Lowlands are dominated mainly by black spruce (*Picea mariana*), tamarack (*Larix laricina*), northern white cedar or arborvitae (*Thuja occidentalis*), balsam fir (*Abies balsamea*), black ash (*Fraxinus nigra*), green ash (*F. pennsylvanica*), silver maple (*Acer saccharinum*), red maple (*A. rubrum*), American elm (*Ulmus americana*), and swamp white oak (*Q. bicolor*) (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006).

Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L)

This subregion contains most of Lower Michigan along with portions of Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, Pennsylvania, and New York (Figure 1). It consists of nearly level to gently rolling glacial plains covered by till, outwash, and glacial lake sediments with scattered moraine hills. Most of the area receives 30 to 41 in. (760 to 1,040 mm) of precipitation each year, with higher amounts in the small area southeast of Lake Erie. The subregion supports mainly broadleaf deciduous forests dominated by bitternut hickory (*Carya cordiformis*), shagbark hickory (*C. ovata*), white oak, northern red oak, black oak (*Quercus velutina*), sugar maple, red maple, American beech, American elm, and American basswood. Eastern white pine, red pine, and jack pine are common species in the portion of the subregion in northwestern Lower Michigan (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006).

Northeastern Forests (LRR R)

This large subregion extends from northern Ohio to New Jersey to Maine (Figure 1) and encompasses a variety of landforms, including rugged mountains and highly dissected plateaus and plains. Most of the area is covered by a mantle of glacial till, outwash sands and gravels, and glacial lake sediments. Eskers, kames, and drumlins are common features in some areas. Deposits of recent alluvium are present along major rivers, and marine sediments are common along the coast and in the lower portions of river valleys. In the mountains, some areas are dominated by talus and exposed igneous and metamorphic bedrock. Average annual precipitation mostly ranges from 34 to 62 in. (865 to 1,575 mm), but is more than 100 in. (2,540 mm) on the highest peaks in Vermont and New Hampshire, and in the area of lake-effect snows east of Lake Ontario. The subregion supports a mosaic of northern hardwood, spruce, fir, and pine forests. Common species include American beech, paper birch, yellow birch, sugar maple, oaks, eastern hemlock, balsam fir, red spruce (*Picea rubens*), black spruce, eastern white pine, and quaking aspen (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006).

Long Island/Cape Cod (MLRA 149B)

This area is restricted to New York, Massachusetts, and Rhode Island and is part of LRR S, but is included in the Northcentral and Northeast Region (Figure 1). The area is formed of deep glacial outwash deposits of sand and gravel, mostly covered by a layer of glacial till. Moraines form scattered low hills and ridges. The area receives 41 to 48 in. (1,040 to 1,220 mm) of precipitation each year. Much of the area is developed. Native forests support pitch pine (*Pinus rigida*), eastern white pine, northern red oak, red maple, American beech, yellow birch, and other tree species (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2006).

Types and distribution of wetlands

The Northcentral and Northeast Region is rich in wetlands, due in large part to plentiful precipitation, low evapotranspiration, and diverse landscapes resulting from its recent glacial history. Some of the places where wetlands have formed include (1) shores of the region's many lakes and ponds, (2) broad flats on former glacial lake plains, (3) kettle depressions where ice blocks were left on the landscape as the glaciers retreated, (4) depressions and blocked drainages formed by morainal deposits, (5) outwash deposits of sand and gravel where groundwater discharges or is often near the surface, and (6) deposits of unsorted glacial till that have created relatively impermeable subsoils on flats and slopes. The region also contains large river systems that periodically flood low-lying areas, creating floodplain wetlands of various types. Coastal marshes and dune/swale wetlands have also formed along the Atlantic coast, in estuaries, and along the shores of the Great Lakes. Generalized descriptions of the region's wetlands can be found in Curtis (1971), Eggers and Reed (1997), and Tiner (2005). Additional details on wetland plant communities are given in state natural heritage program reports (e.g., Reschke 1990, Minnesota Department of Natural Resources 2003, and Sperduto 2005) and National Wetlands Inventory (NWI) state reports for Rhode Island and Connecticut (Tiner 1989; Metzler and Tiner 1992). Specific wetland types are described by Johnson (1985), Wright et al. (1992), Tiner (2008), and many others.

Wetlands in the region can be divided broadly into freshwater and saltwater wetlands. Most saltwater wetlands in the region are dominated by herbaceous emergent plants. Freshwater wetlands, on the other hand, can be categorized as forested, shrub-dominated, or herbaceous, and further subdivided by soil type (e.g., mineral or organic) and hydrology. For example, various types of bogs are common in the region. Bogs are peat-forming wetlands with acidic soils that support relatively few species of acid-loving plants, such as *Sphagnum* mosses, and develop in areas where precipitation is the primary water source. Other peat-forming wetlands, called fens, have circumneutral to alkaline soils that range from mineral-poor to mineral-rich. Their hydrology is driven predominantly by groundwater discharge and their plant communities can be very diverse.

Forested wetlands are the most abundant wetlands in the region and represent many different types. Boreal coniferous forested wetlands occur in the more northerly parts of the region and at higher elevations in more southerly areas. They may support black spruce, tamarack, balsam fir, northern white cedar, Atlantic white cedar (*Chamaecyparis thyoides*), or red spruce. Coniferous forested bogs include tamarack and black spruce bogs, and usually have a continuous carpet of *Sphagnum*. Those forming on neutral to alkaline peat soils, such as northern white cedar swamps, lack the carpet of *Sphagnum* but may have a rich understory of other bryophytes. Forested fens with similar mineral-rich peat soils often support northern white cedar and tamarack. Eastern hemlock, eastern white pine, and pitch pine also dominate coniferous forested wetlands in various parts of the region.

Deciduous forested wetlands are common throughout much of the region in depressions, on floodplains, on flats on glacial lake plains, and along lake shores. Dominant swamp trees include red maple, black ash, green ash, and pin oak (*Quercus palustris*). Skunk cabbage (*Symplocarpus foetidus*), several species of ferns (e.g., cinnamon [*Osmunda cinnamomea*], royal [*O. regalis*], sensitive [*Onoclea sensibilis*], and eastern marsh fern [*Thelypteris palustris*]), and numerous shrubs (e.g., highbush blueberry [*Vaccinium corymbosum*], alders [*Alnus* spp.], arrowwood [*Viburnum dentatum*], withe-rod [*V. nudum* var. *cassinoides*], red-osier dogwood [*Cornus sericea = C. stolonifera*] and silky dogwood [*C. amomum*]) are common in many swamps. Floodplain forests occupy lowlands adjacent to the larger rivers in the region. Silver maple, eastern cottonwood (*Populus deltoides*), American sycamore (*Platanus occidentalis*), American elm, black willow (*Salix nigra*), and balsam poplar (*Populus balsamifera*) are characteristic bottomland trees, while ostrich fern (*Matteuccia struthiopteris*), false nettle (*Boehmeria cylindrica*), and Canadian woodnettle (*Laportea canadensis*) are common herbs. Other important wetland trees include yellow birch, black gum (*Nyssa sylvatica*), swamp white oak, and quaking aspen. Wet flatwoods occur on broad, glacial lake plains, such as those along Lake Ontario. These wetlands are dominated by typical swamp species, but are not flooded as long as most swamps. Instead, they have seasonally high or perched water tables that may persist from winter to early summer.

Shrub bogs are prominent in northern areas, while deciduous shrub swamps are common throughout the region. Typical shrub-bog species that grow on acidic peat soils in association with a mat of *Sphagnum* mosses include evergreen members of the heath family, such as leatherleaf (*Chamaedaphne calyculata*), bog laurel (*Kalmia polifolia*), bog rosemary

(*Andromeda polifolia* var. *glaucophylla* = *A. glaucophylla*), Labrador tea (*Ledum groenlandicum*), and cranberries (*Vaccinium macrocarpon* and *V. oxycoccos*), as well as sweetgale (*Myrica gale*), black spruce, tamarack, purple pitcher plant (*Sarracenia purpurea*), sundews (*Drosera* spp.), bog aster (*Oclemena nemoralis* = *Aster nemoralis*), bog goldenrod (*Solidago uliginosa*), and threeleaf false lily-of-the-valley (*Maianthemum trifolium* = *Smilacina trifolia*). Characteristic species of deciduous shrub swamps are alders (*Alnus incana* and *A. serrulata*), willows (*Salix* spp.), dog-woods, swamp rose (*Rosa palustris*), steeplebush (*Spiraea tomentosa*), white meadowsweet (*Spiraea alba*), and buttonbush (*Cephalanthus occidentalis*). The ground layer can be composed of a diversity of ferns, sedges, rushes, and forbs, such as those listed below in the paragraph describing wet meadows. The ground layer in disturbed, deciduous shrub swamps may be composed of reed canarygrass (*Phalaris arundinacea*) or other invasive species.

Herbaceous wetlands include marshes, wet meadows, and fens. Two basic types of marshes are found in the region – freshwater and saline marshes. The former occur throughout the region in lakes, ponds, shallow slow-flowing rivers, and isolated depressions, while the latter are found in the intertidal zone of estuaries.

Freshwater marshes, both tidal and nontidal, are generally represented by cattails (*Typha latifolia* and *T. angustifolia*), pickerelweed (*Pontederia cordata*), arrowheads (*Sagittaria* spp.), yellow pond-lily (*Nuphar lutea*), white waterlily (*Nymphaea odorata*), softstem bulrush (*Schoenoplectus tabernaemontani* = *Scirpus validus*), bur-reeds (*Sparganium* spp.), and wild rice (*Zizania aquatica* and *Z. palustris*). Bayonet rush (*Juncus militaris*) grows in shallow water along sandy lake shores. Common reed (*Phragmites australis*) dominates many disturbed freshwater and brackish marshes.

Salt and brackish marshes are dominated by halophytes or salt-tolerant species. Smooth cordgrass (*Spartina alterniflora*) occupies the low marsh that is flooded at least daily by the tides. The high marsh is more diverse, with saltmeadow cordgrass (*Spartina patens*), salt grass (*Distichlis spicata*), and black grass (*Juncus gerardii*) being most common, while switch grass (*Panicum virgatum*) and the shrubby marsh-elder (*Iva frutescens*) often form the marsh border. Other species characteristic of salt marshes include seaside goldenrod (*Solidago sempervirens*), saltmarsh aster (*Symphyotrichum tenuifolium* = *Aster tenuifolius*), saltmarsh bulrush (*Schoenoplectus robustus* = *Scirpus robustus*), and rose mallow (*Hibiscus moscheutos*); these species become more abundant and dominate brackish marshes upstream.

Herbaceous fens occur in northern portions of the region and elsewhere at higher altitudes where they are less common. Fen species at the most mineral-rich end of the gradient include many calciphiles that thrive in soils with higher pH. They include numerous herbs, such as marsh muhly (*Muhlenbergia glomerata*), bluejoint grass (*Calamagrostis canadensis*), twig rush (*Cladium mariscoides*), several sedges (*Carex flava*, *C. sterilis*, *C. lasiocarpa*, *C. lacustris*, *C. stricta*, and *C. utriculata*), thinleaf cotton-sedge (*Eriophorum viridicarinatum*), moor rush (*Juncus stygius*), grass-of-Parnassus (*Parnassia glauca*), purple avens (*Geum rivale*), white lady's slipper (*Cypripedium candidum*), and marsh cinquefoil (*Comarum palustre* = *Potentilla palustris*), plus several shrubs including shrubby cinquefoil (*Dasiphora fruticosa* ssp. *floribunda* = *Potentilla fruticosa*), alderleaf buckthorn (*Rhamnus alnifolia*), sageleaf willow (*Salix candida*), autumn willow (*S. serissima*), bog birch (*Betula pumila*), sweetgale, speckled alder (*Alnus incana*), and red-osier dogwood. Minerotrophic moss species (e.g., *Drapanocladus aduncus* and *Campylium stellatum*) may or may not be present.

Wet meadows occur on seasonally saturated mineral or organic soils that may be associated with high water tables and/or surface water inputs. They may be characterized by (1) a single species, such as reed canary-grass, bluejoint grass, or sweetflag (*Acorus calamus*); (2) various sedges, such as tussock sedge (*Carex stricta*), lake sedge (*C. lacustris*), green bulrush (*Scirpus atrovirens*), and woolgrass (*Scirpus cyperinus*), that can be described as a sedge-meadow subtype; or (3) a diverse assemblage of plants including many flowering herbs. Among the more common flowering herbs are Joe-Pye-weeds (*Eupatoriadelphus* spp.), boneset (*Eupatorium perfoliatum*), square-stem monkeyflower (*Mimulus ringens*), asters (e.g., *Symphyotrichum puniceum* [= *Aster puniceus*], *S. lateriflorum*, *S. lanceolatum*, *S. novi-belgii*, *Doellingeria umbellata* [= *Aster umbellatus*]), goldenrods (*Euthamia* spp. and *Solidago* spp.), fringed loosestrife (*Lysimachia ciliata*), swamp candles (*L. terrestris*), irises (*Iris* spp.), jewelweed (*Impatiens capensis* and *I. pallida*), beggar-ticks (*Bidens* spp.), swamp milkweed (*Asclepias incarnata*), blue vervain (*Verbena hastata*), ironweeds (*Vernonia* spp.), and willow-herbs (*Epilo-*

bium spp.). Many wet meadows occur in agricultural areas where they are often used as pasture.

Many wetlands are used for agricultural purposes, including commercial cranberry bogs, farmed mucklands, wild rice impoundments, farmed floodplains, and sod fields. Commercial cranberry bogs generally were constructed from existing wetlands but, more recently, have been created in sandy uplands by excavating to a depth where the water table is at or near the surface for extended periods. These bogs are diked and water levels controlled by irrigation or dewatering. Farmed mucklands were created from hardwood swamps, tamarack swamps, and sedge meadows. After removing natural vegetation, diking, and draining through the use of pumps and siphons, their productive organic soils are planted with a variety of crops including onions, lettuce, celery, and carrots. In Minnesota, wetlands have been converted to impoundments for cultivating wild rice (*Zizania palustris*). Many floodplains in the region have been converted to row crops (e.g., corn or soybeans) and some of these are flooded often enough and long enough to meet wetland standards. Sod fields managed to produce lawn or turf grasses, predominantly Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), are often constructed in wetlands where the surface water is drained by ditches and groundwater levels are closely managed.

Numerous nonnative and/or invasive species have replaced native species and reduced plant diversity in one or more wetland types in the region. Among the problematic herbs are common reed, reed canarygrass, cattails (e.g., *Typha* × *glauca*), purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria*), Japanese stiltgrass (*Microstegium vimineum* = *Eulalia viminea*), garlic mustard (*Alliaria petiolata*), and Japanese knotweed (*Fallopia japonica* = *Polygonum cuspidatum*) plus three aquatic species – water chestnut (*Trapa natans*), curly pondweed (*Potamogeton crispus*), and Eurasian watermilfoil (*Myriophyllum spicatum*). Major invasive woody plants include common buckthorn (*Rhamnus cathartica*), glossy buckthorn (*Frangula alnus* = *Rhamnus frangula*), multiflora rose (*Rosa multiflora*), non-native honeysuckles (*Lonicera* spp.), and Japanese barberry (*Berberis thunbergii*).

2 Hydrophytic Vegetation Indicators

Introduction

The Corps Manual defines hydrophytic vegetation as the community of macrophytes that occurs in areas where inundation or soil saturation is either permanent or of sufficient frequency and duration to influence plant occurrence. The manual uses a plant-community approach to evaluate vegetation. Hydrophytic vegetation decisions are based on the assemblage of plant species growing on a site, rather than the presence or absence of particular indicator species. Hydrophytic vegetation is present when the plant community is dominated by species that require or can tolerate prolonged inundation or soil saturation during the growing season. Hydrophytic vegetation in the Northcentral and Northeast Region is identified by using the indicators described in this chapter.

Many factors besides site wetness affect the composition of the plant community in an area, including regional climate, local weather patterns, topography, soils, natural and human-caused disturbances, and current and historical plant distributional patterns at various spatial scales. Braun (1950) described the vegetation of this region as "… a complex vegetation unit most conspicuously characterized by the prevalence of the deciduous habit of most of its woody constituents. This gives to it a certain uniformity of physiognomy, with alternating summer green and winter leafless aspects. Evergreen species, both broad-leaved and needle-leaved, occur in the arboreal and shrub layers, particularly in seral stages and in marginal and transitional areas." The vegetation reflects the region's glacial past and the most recent retreat of continental glaciers about 10,000 years ago. Freshly exposed tills and bedrock areas were originally dominated by boreal coniferous forest (Davis 1981), which was later replaced mostly by deciduous forests from the west and south of the region and by prairies penetrating eastward (Barbour and Billings 1988). The migration of past and present vegetation across this topographically and climatically varied region has resulted in a highly diverse flora. The regional flora contains more than 4,000 vascular plant species (Stein et al. 2000), of which approximately 2,800 species occur in wetlands to some degree (Reed 1988).

Human disturbances and land-use patterns have affected some parts of the region more than others. Prior to European settlement, Native Americans used fire to clear underbrush in forested areas and woody vegetation from grasslands, but their activities had little long-lasting impact (Russell 1983). Greater impacts occurred in the 1800s due to extensive logging for pine and hemlock, clearing of forests for homesteading and grazing, and the beginning of a long-term trend in conversion of forest to agriculture and urban development. These major land-use changes have increased the number and occurrence of "weedy" species in the flora. More than 30 percent of the flora in many parts of the region now consists of non-native species (Stuckey and Barkley 1993).

The characteristics of wetland plant communities in the region are also affected by seasonal changes in availability of water, short- and long-term droughts, and natural and human-caused disturbances (e.g., floods, fires, grazing). Wetlands subject to seasonal hydrology in the region include wet meadows, springs, seeps, seasonal ponds, vernal pools, and floodplain forested wetlands. These wetlands often exhibit seasonal shifts in vegetation composition, potentially changing the status of the community from hydrophytic during the wet season to non-hydrophytic during the dry season. Long-term climatic fluctuations (e.g., multi-year droughts) and fluctuations in lake and sea levels can also change the composition of plant communities over longer periods (Barkley 1986). Woody shrubs and trees in wetlands are often resistant to droughts, while herbaceous vegetation may show dramatic turnover in species composition from drought years to pluvial years. See Chapter 5 for discussions of these and other problematic vegetation situations in the region.

Hydrophytic vegetation decisions are based on the wetland indicator status (Reed [1988] or current approved list) of species that make up the plant community. Species in the facultative categories (FACW, FAC, and FACU) are recognized as occurring in both wetlands and uplands to varying degrees. Although most wetlands are dominated mainly by species rated OBL, FACW, and FAC, some wetland communities may be dominated primarily by FACU species and cannot be identified by dominant species alone. In those cases, other indicators of hydrophytic vegetation must also be considered, particularly where indicators of hydric soils and wetland hydrology are present. This situation is not necessarily due to inaccurate wetland indicator ratings; rather, it is due to the broad tolerances of certain plant species that allow them to be widely distributed across the moisture gradient. Therefore, for some species, it is difficult to assign a single indicator status rating that encompasses all of the various landscape and ecological settings it can occupy.

Hydrophytic vegetation indicators and procedures presented in this chapter are designed to identify the majority of wetland plant communities in the region. However, some wetland communities may lack any of these indicators. These situations are considered in Chapter 5 (Difficult Wetland Situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region).

Guidance on vegetation sampling and analysis

General guidance on sampling of vegetation for wetland-delineation purposes is given in the Corps Manual. Those procedures are intended to be flexible and may need to be modified for application in a given region or on a particular site. Vegetation sampling done as part of a routine wetland delineation is designed to characterize the site in question rapidly. A balance must be established between the need to accomplish the work quickly and the need to characterize the site's heterogeneity accurately and at an appropriate scale. The following guidance on vegetation sampling is intended to supplement the Corps Manual for applications in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

The first step is to identify the major landscape or vegetation units so that they can be evaluated separately. This may be done in advance using an aerial photograph or topographic map, or by walking the site. In general, routine wetland determinations are based on visual estimates of percent cover of plant species that can be made either (1) within the vegetation unit as a whole, or (2) within one or more sampling plots established in representative locations within each unit. Percent cover estimates are more accurate and repeatable if taken within a defined plot. This also facilitates field verification of another delineator's work. The sizes and shapes of plots, if used, may be modified as appropriate to adapt to site conditions and should be recorded on the field data form. When sampling near a plant community boundary, and particularly near the wetland boundary, it may be necessary to adjust plot size or shape to avoid overlapping the boundary and extending into an adjacent community having different vegetation, soils, or hydrologic conditions.

If it is not possible to locate one or a few plots in a way that adequately represents the vegetation unit being sampled, then percent cover estimates for each species can be made during a meandering survey of the broader community. If additional quantification of cover estimates is needed, then the optional procedure for point-intercept sampling along transects (see Appendix B) or other sampling procedures may be used to characterize the vegetation unit. To use either of these sampling methods, soil and hydrologic conditions must be uniform across the sampled area.

Definitions of strata

Vegetation strata within the sampled area or plot are sampled separately when evaluating indicators of hydrophytic vegetation. In this region, the vegetation strata described in the Corps Manual are recommended (see below). Unless otherwise noted, a stratum for sampling purposes is defined as having 5 percent or more total plant cover. If a stratum has less than 5 percent cover during the peak of the growing season, then those species and their cover values should be recorded on the data form but should not be used in the calculations for the dominance test, unless it is the only stratum present.

1. *Tree stratum* – Consists of woody plants 3 in. (7.6 cm) or more in diameter at breast height (DBH), regardless of height.
2. *Sapling/shrub stratum* – Consists of woody plants less than 3 in. DBH and greater than or equal to 3.28 ft (1 m) tall.
3. *Herb stratum* – Consists of all herbaceous (non-woody) plants, including herbaceous vines, regardless of size, and woody plants less than 3.28 ft tall.
4. *Woody vines* – Consists of all woody vines greater than 3.28 ft in height.

Plot and sample sizes

Hydrophytic vegetation determinations under the Corps Manual are based on samples taken in representative locations within each community. Random sampling of the vegetation is not required, except for certain sampling approaches in comprehensive determinations or in rare cases where representative sampling might give misleading results. For routine determinations in fairly uniform vegetation, one or more plots in each community are usually sufficient for an accurate determination. Sampling of a multi-layered community is usually accomplished using a graduated series of plots, one for each stratum, or a number of small plots nested within the largest plot (Figure 2). Nested plots to sample the herb stratum can be helpful in forested areas with highly variable understories or in very diverse communities. Plant abundance data are averaged across the multiple small plots.

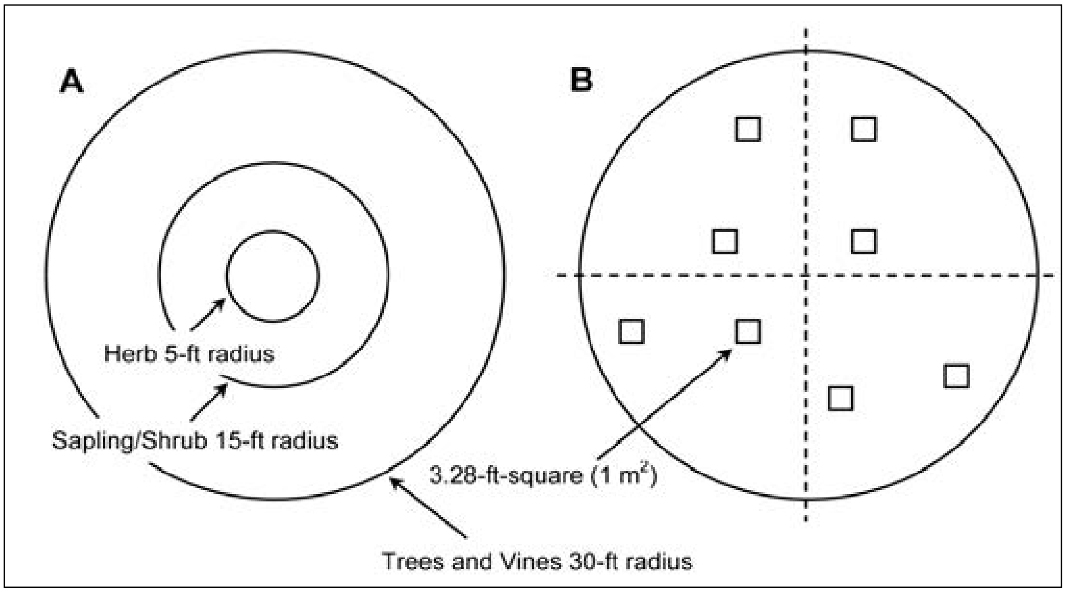


Figure 2. Suggested plot arrangements for vegetation sampling. (A) Single plots in graduated sizes. (B) Nested 3.28- by 3.28-ft square (1-m^2) plots for herbs within the 30-ft radius plot.

The appropriate size and shape for a sample plot depend on the type of vegetation (i.e., trees, shrubs, herbaceous plants, etc.) and the size or shape of the plant community or patch being sampled. The size of a plot needs to be large enough to include adequate numbers of individuals in all strata, but small enough so that plant species or individuals can be separated and measured without duplication or omission, and the sampling can be done in a timely fashion (Cox 1990, Barbour et al. 1999). For hydrophytic vegetation determinations, the abundance of each species is determined by using areal cover estimates. Plot sizes should make visual sampling both accurate and efficient. In this region, the following plot sizes are suggested.

1. Tree stratum – 30-ft (9.1-m) radius
2. Sapling/shrub stratum – 15-ft (4.6-m) radius
3. Herb stratum – 5-ft (1.5-m) radius
4. Woody vines – 30-ft (9.1-m) radius

The sampling plot should not be allowed to extend beyond the edges of the plant community being sampled or to overlap an adjacent community having different vegetation, soil, or hydrologic conditions. This may happen if vegetation patches are small or occur as narrow bands or zones along a topographic gradient. In such cases, plot sizes and shapes should be adjusted to fit completely within the vegetation patch or zone. For example, in linear riparian communities where the width of a standard plot may exceed the width of the plant community, an elongated rectangular plot or belt transect that follows the stream is recommended. If possible, the area sampled should be equivalent to the 30-ft-radius plot (2,827 ft^2 [263 m^2]) for the tree stratum or the 15-ft-radius plot (707 ft^2 [65.7 m^2]) for the sapling/shrub stratum. Thus the sapling/shrub stratum could be sampled using a 10- by 71-ft (3.1- by 21.6-m) plot lying completely within the riparian fringe. An alternative approach involves sampling a series of small subplots (e.g., 5 by 5 ft [1.5 by 1.5 m], or 10 by 10 ft [3.1 by 3.1 m]) in the riparian community and averaging the data across subplots.

A 30-ft radius tree plot works well in most forests but can be increased to 35 ft (10.7 m) or 40 ft (12.2 m) or more in a nonlinear forest stand if tree diversity is high or diameters are large. Highly diverse or patchy communities of herbs or other low vegetation may be sampled with nested 3.28- by 3.28-ft (1-m^2) quadrats randomly located within a 30-ft radius (Figure 2B). Furthermore, point-intercept sampling performed along a transect is an alternative to plot-based methods that can improve the accuracy and repeatability of vegetation sampling in diverse or heterogeneous communities (see Appendix B). To use this method, soil and hydrologic conditions must be uniform across the area where transects are located.

Vegetation sampling guidance presented here should be adequate for hydrophytic vegetation determinations in most situations. However, many variations in vegetation structure, diversity, and spatial arrangement exist on the landscape that are not addressed in this supplement. A list of references is given in Table 2 for more complex sampling situations. If alternative sampling techniques are used, they should be derived from the scientific literature and described in field notes or in the delineation report. The basic data must include abundance values for each species present. Typical abundance measures include basal area for tree species, percent areal cover, stem density, or frequency based on point-intercept sampling. In any case, the data must be in a format that can be used in the dominance test or prevalence index for hydrophytic vegetation (see the section on Hydrophytic Vegetation Indicators).

In this supplement, absolute percent cover is the preferred abundance measure for all species. For percent cover estimates, plants do not need to be rooted in the plot as long as they are growing under the same soil and hydrologic conditions. It may be necessary to exclude plants that overhang the plot if they are rooted in areas having different soil and hydrologic conditions, particularly when sampling near the wetland boundary.

Table 2. Selected references to additional vegetation sampling approaches that could be used in wetland delineation.

Reference	Comment
Brohman, R. J., and L. D. Bryant, eds. 2005. *Existing vegetation classification and mapping technical guide, Version 1.0.* General Technical Report WO-67. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service.	Contains a brief summary of vegetation sampling methods.
Kent, M., and P. Coker. 1992. *Vegetation description and analysis: A practical approach.* New York, NY: Wiley.	Contains simple and clear methods for setting up a study and collecting and analyzing the data. Initial chapters are helpful for data collection and sampling approaches in wetland delineation.
Mueller-Dombois, D., and H. Ellenberg. 1974. *Aims and methods of vegetation ecology*. New York, NY: Wiley.	A standard text in vegetation ecology, sampling, and analysis. This reference provides many sampling and analytical methods that are helpful in complex delineations.
Tiner, R. W. 1999. *Wetland indicators: A guide to wetland delineation, classification, and mapping.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.	Includes reviews of various sampling techniques and provides a list of vegetation references.
U.S. Department of the Interior (USDI), Bureau of Land Management. 1996. *Sampling vegetation attributes.* BLM/RS/ST-96/002+1730. Denver, CO.	Describes many aspects of vegetation sampling, including sampling protocols, data collection, and analysis.

Basal area is an alternative abundance measure for species in the tree stratum. Basal area of each species in a stand can be estimated quickly and efficiently with a basal-area prism or angle gauge. In this region, a prism with a basal-area factor (BAF) of 10 works well. Basal-area estimates can be used to select dominant species from the tree stratum for use in the dominance test for hydrophytic vegetation (see Hydrophytic Vegetation Indicators). However, basal-area estimates cannot be used to calculate a prevalence index, which is based on absolute percent cover of species in each stratum. Therefore, if basal-area estimates are used initially to evaluate the tree stratum but the dominance test is inconclusive, then the use of the prevalence index will require that the tree stratum be resampled to estimate absolute percent cover of each species.

Seasonal considerations and cautions

To the extent possible, the hydrophytic vegetation decision should be based on the plant community that is normally present during the wet portion of the growing season in a normal rainfall year. However, wetland determinations must often be performed at other times of year, or in years with unusual or atypical weather conditions. The Northcentral and Northeast Region has a temperate climate with cold, snowy winters. Vegetation sampling for a wetland determination can be challenging when some plants are covered by snow or die back due to freezing temperatures or other factors. At these times, experience and professional judgment may be required to adapt the vegetation sampling scheme or use other sources of information to determine the plant community that is normally present.

When an on-site evaluation of the vegetation is impractical due to snow and ice or other factors, one option is to use existing off-site data sources, such as National Wetlands Inventory (NWI) maps, soil surveys, and aerial photographs, to make a preliminary hydrophytic vegetation determination. These sources may be supplemented with limited on-site data, including those plant species that can be observed and identified. Later, when conditions are favorable, an on-site investigation should be made to verify the preliminary determination and complete the wetland delineation.

Other factors can alter the plant community on a site and affect a hydrophytic vegetation determination, including seasonal changes in species composition, intensive grazing, wildfires and other natural disturbances, and human land-use practices. These factors are considered in Chapter 5.

Hydrophytic vegetation indicators

The following indicators should be applied in the sequence presented. The stepwise procedure is designed to reduce field effort by requiring that only one or two indicators — variations of the dominance test — be evaluated in the majority of wetland determinations. However, hydrophytic vegetation is present if any of the indicators is satisfied. All of these indicators are applicable throughout the entire Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Indicators of hydrophytic vegetation involve looking up the wetland indicator status of plant species on the wetland plant list (Reed [1988] or current list). For the purposes of this supplement, only the five basic levels of wetland indicator status (i.e., OBL, FACW, FAC, FACU, and UPL) are used in hydrophytic vegetation indicators. Plus (+) and minus (–) modifiers are not used (e.g., FAC–, FAC, and FAC+ plants are all considered to be FAC). For species listed as NI (reviewed but given no regional indicator) or NO (no known occurrence in the region at the time the list was compiled), apply the indicator status assigned to the species in the nearest adjacent region. If the species is listed as NI or NO but no adjacent regional indicator is assigned, do not use the species to calculate hydrophytic vegetation indicators. In general, species that are not listed on the wetland plant list are assumed to be upland (UPL) species. However, recent changes in plant nomenclature have resulted in a number of species that are not listed by Reed (1988) but are not necessarily UPL plants. Procedures described in Chapter 5, in the section on Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation, can be used if it is believed that individual FACU, NI, NO, or unlisted plant species are functioning as hydrophytes on a particular site. For Clean Water Act purposes, wetland delineators should use the latest plant lists approved by Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (Figure 3) (http://www.usace.army.mil/CECW/Pages/reg_supp.aspx).

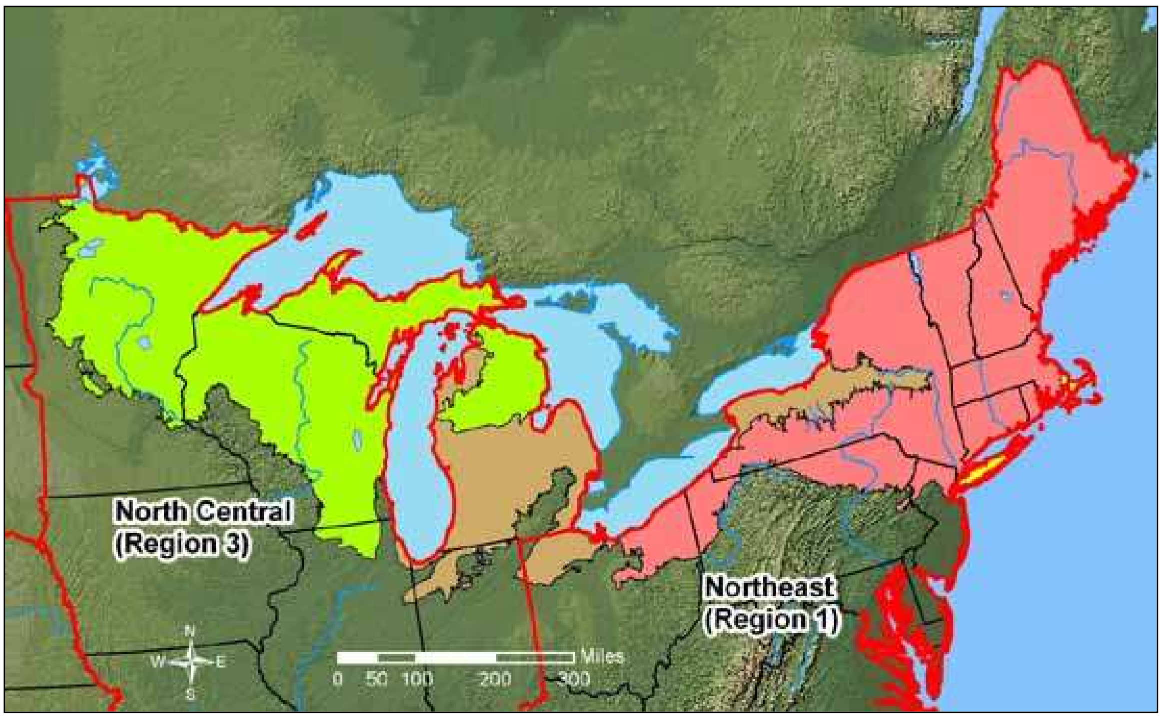


Figure 3. Plant list regional boundaries (red lines) currently used by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Inventory, in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Evaluation of vegetation can begin with a rapid field test for hydrophytic vegetation to determine if there is a need to collect more detailed vegetation data. The rapid test for hydrophytic vegetation (Indicator 1) is met if all dominant species across all strata are OBL or FACW, or a combination of the two, based on a visual assessment. If the site is not dominated solely by OBL and FACW species, proceed to the standard dominance test (Indicator 2), which is the basic hydrophytic vegetation indicator. Either Indicator 1 or 2 should be applied in every wetland determination. Most wetlands in the Northcentral and Northeast Region have plant communities that will meet one or both of these indicators. These are the only indicators that need to be considered in most situations. However, some wetland plant communities may fail a test based only on dominant species. Therefore, in those cases where indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present, the vegetation should be re-evaluated with the prevalence index (Indicator 3), which takes non-dominant plant species into consideration, or by observing plant morphological adaptations for life in wetlands (Indicator 4). Finally, certain disturbed or problematic wetland situations may lack any of these indicators and are described in Chapter 5.

Procedure

The procedure for using hydrophytic vegetation indicators is as follows:

1. Apply Indicator 1 (Rapid Test for Hydrophytic Vegetation).
   a. If the plant community passes the rapid test for hydrophytic vegetation, then the vegetation is hydrophytic and no further vegetation analysis is required.
   b. If the rapid test for hydrophytic vegetation is not met, then proceed to step 2.

2. Apply Indicator 2 (Dominance Test).
   a. If the plant community passes the dominance test, then the vegetation is hydrophytic and no further vegetation analysis is required.
   b. If the plant community fails the dominance test, and indicators of hydric soil and/or wetland hydrology are absent, then hydrophytic vegetation is absent unless the site meets requirements for a problematic wetland situation (see Chapter 5).
   c. If the plant community fails the dominance test, but indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are both present, proceed to step 3.

3. Apply Indicator 3 (Prevalence Index). This and the following step assume that at least one indicator of hydric soil and one primary or two secondary indicators of wetland hydrology are present.
   a. If the plant community satisfies the prevalence index, then the vegetation is hydrophytic. No further vegetation analysis is required.
   b. If the plant community fails the prevalence index, proceed to step 4.

4. Apply Indicator 4 (Morphological Adaptations).
   a. If the indicator is satisfied, the vegetation is hydrophytic.
   b. If none of the indicators is satisfied, then hydrophytic vegetation is absent unless indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are

present and the site meets the requirements for a problematic wetland situation (Chapter 5).

Indicator 1: Rapid test for hydrophytic vegetation

Description: All dominant species across all strata are rated OBL or FACW, or a combination of these two categories, based on a visual assessment.

User Notes: This test is intended as a quick confirmation in obvious cases that a site has hydrophytic vegetation, without the need for more intensive sampling. Dominant species are selected visually from each stratum of the community using the "50/20 rule" (see Indicator 2 – Dominance Test below) as a general guide but without the need to gather quantitative data. Only the dominant species in each stratum must be recorded on the data form.

Indicator 2: Dominance test

Description: More than 50 percent of the dominant plant species across all strata are rated OBL, FACW, or FAC.

User Notes: Use the 50/20 rule described below to select dominant species from each stratum of the community. Combine dominant species across strata and apply the dominance test to the combined list. Once a species is selected as a dominant, its cover value is not used in the dominance test; each dominant species is treated equally. Thus, a plant community with seven dominant species across all strata would need at least four dominant species that are OBL, FACW, or FAC to be considered hydrophytic by this indicator. Species that are dominant in two or more strata should be counted in each stratum where they are dominant.

Procedure for Selecting Dominant Species by the 50/20 Rule: Dominant plant species are the most abundant species in the community; they contribute more to the character of the community than do the other non-dominant species present. The 50/20 rule is a repeatable and objective procedure for selecting dominant plant species and is recommended when data are available for all species in the community. The rule can also be used to guide visual sampling of plant communities in rapid wetland determinations.

Dominant species are chosen independently from each stratum of the community. In general, dominants are the most abundant species that individually or collectively account for more than 50 percent of the total coverage of vegetation in the stratum, plus any other species that, by itself, accounts for at least 20 percent of the total. For the purposes of this regional supplement, absolute percent cover is the recommended abundance measure for plants in all vegetation strata. See Table 3 for an example application of the 50/20 rule in evaluating a plant community. Steps in selecting dominant species by the 50/20 rule are as follows:

1. Estimate the absolute percent cover of each species in the first stratum. Since the same data may be used later to calculate the prevalence index, the data should be recorded as absolute cover and not converted to relative cover.
2. Rank all species in the stratum from most to least abundant.
3. Calculate the total coverage of all species in the stratum (i.e., sum their individual percent cover values). Absolute cover estimates do not necessarily sum to 100 percent.
4. Calculate the 50-percent threshold for the stratum by multiplying the total cover of that stratum by 50 percent.
5. Calculate the 20-percent threshold for the stratum by multiplying the total cover of that stratum by 20 percent.
6. Select plant species from the ranked list, in decreasing order of coverage, until the cumulative coverage of selected species *exceeds* the threshold representing 50 percent of the total coverage for the stratum. If two or more species are equal in coverage (i.e., they are tied in rank), they should all be selected. The selected plant species are all considered to be dominants. All dominants must be identified to species.
7. In addition, select any other species that, by itself, is at least 20 percent of the total percent cover in the stratum. Any such species is also considered to be a dominant and must be accurately identified.
8. Repeat steps 1-7 for any other stratum present. Combine the lists of dominant species across all strata. Note that a species may be dominant in more than one stratum (e.g., a woody species may be dominant in both the tree and sapling/shrub strata). Species that are dominant in two or more strata should be counted in each stratum where they are dominant.

Table 3. Example of the selection of dominant species by the 50/20 rule and determination of hydrophytic vegetation by the dominance test.

Stratum	Species Name	Wetland Indicator Status (Region 1)	Absolute Percent Cover	Dominant?
Herb	*Impatiens capensis*	FACW	15	Yes
	Geranium carolinianum	UPL	7	Yes
	Toxicodendron radicans	FAC	5	No
	Lonicera tatarica	FACU	2	No
	Glyceria striata	OBL	2	No
	Parthenocissus quinquefolia	FACU	1	No
	Arisaema triphyllum	FACW	0.5	No
	Carex laxiflora	FACU	0.5	No
		Total cover	33.0	
		50/20 Thresholds: 50% of total cover = 16.5% 20% of total cover = 6.6%		
Sapling/shrub	*Carpinus caroliniana*	FAC	35	Yes
	Carya ovata	FACU	10	No
	Acer saccharum	FACU	5	No
	Quercus rubra	FACU	5	No
		Total cover	55.0	
		50/20 Thresholds: 50% of total cover = 27.5% 20% of total cover = 11.0%		
Tree	*Quercus bicolor*	FACW	40	Yes
	Fraxinus pennsylvanica	FACW	17	Yes
	Ulmus americana	FACW	10	No
	Carya ovata	FACU	8	No
		Total Cover	75.0	
		50/20 Thresholds: 50% of total cover = 37.5% 20% of total cover = 15.0%		
Woody vine	*Toxicodendron radicans*	FAC	1	No[1]
Hydrophytic Vegetation Determination	Total number of dominant species across all strata = 5. Percent of dominant species that are OBL, FACW, or FAC = 80%. Therefore, this community is hydrophytic by Indicator 2 (Dominance Test).			

[1] A stratum with less than 5 percent total cover is not considered in the dominance test, unless it is the only stratum present.

Indicator 3: Prevalence index

Description: The prevalence index is 3.0 or less.

User Notes: The prevalence index ranges from one to five. A prevalence index of 3.0 or less indicates that hydrophytic vegetation is present. If practical, all species in the plot should be identified and recorded on the data form. At a minimum, at least 80 percent of the total vegetation cover on the plot (summed across all strata) must be of species that have been correctly identified and have assigned wetland indicator statuses (Reed [1988] or current list) or are not listed and assumed to be UPL.

Procedure for Calculating a Plot-Based Prevalence Index: The prevalence index is a weighted-average wetland indicator status of all plant species in the sampling plot. All plants are given a numeric value based on indicator status (OBL = 1, FACW = 2, FAC = 3, FACU = 4, and UPL = 5) and their abundance (absolute percent cover) is used to calculate the prevalence index. It is a more comprehensive analysis of the hydrophytic status of the community than one based on just a few dominant species. It is particularly useful in (1) communities with only one or two dominants, (2) highly diverse communities where many species may be present at roughly equal coverage, and (3) cases where strata differ greatly in total plant cover (e.g., total herb cover is 80 percent but sapling/shrub cover is only 10 percent).

The following procedure is used to calculate a plot-based prevalence index. The method was described by Wentworth et al. (1988) and modified by Wakeley and Lichvar (1997). It uses the same field data (i.e., percent cover estimates for each plant species) that were used to select dominant species by the 50/20 rule, with the added constraint that at least 80 percent of the total vegetation cover on the plot must be of species that have been correctly identified and have an assigned indicator status (including UPL). For any species that occurs in more than one stratum, cover estimates are summed across strata. Steps for determining the prevalence index are as follows:

1. Identify and estimate the absolute percent cover of each species in each stratum of the community. Sum the cover estimates for any species that is present in more than one stratum.
2. Organize all species (across all strata) into groups according to their wetland indicator status (i.e., OBL, FACW, FAC, FACU, or UPL) and sum their cover values within groups. Do not include species that were not identified.
3. Calculate the prevalence index using the following formula:

$$PI = \frac{A_{OBL} + 2A_{FACW} + 3A_{FAC} + 4A_{FACU} + 5A_{UPL}}{A_{OBL} + A_{FACW} + A_{FAC} + A_{FACU} + A_{UPL}}$$

where:

PI = Prevalence index
A_{OBL} = Summed percent cover values of obligate (OBL) plant species;
A_{FACW} = Summed percent cover values of facultative wetland (FACW) plant species;
A_{FAC} = Summed percent cover values of facultative (FAC) plant species;
A_{FACU} = Summed percent cover values of facultative upland (FACU) plant species;
A_{UPL} = Summed percent cover values of upland (UPL) plant species.

See Table 4 for an example calculation of the prevalence index using the same data set as in Table 3. The following web link provides free public-domain software for simultaneous calculation of the 50/20 rule, dominance test, and prevalence index: http://www.crrel.usace.army.mil/rsgisc/wetshed/wetdatashed.htm.

Table 4. Example of the Prevalence Index using the same data as in Table 3.

Indicator Status Group	Species Name	Absolute Percent Cover by Species	Total Cover by Group	Multiply by:[1]	Product
OBL species	*Glyceria striata*	2	2	1	2
FACW species	*Impatiens capensis* *Arisaema triphyllum* *Quercus bicolor* *Fraxinus pennsylvanica* *Ulmus americana*	15 0.5 40 17 10	82.5	2	165
FAC species	*Toxicodendron radicans*[2] *Carpinus caroliniana*	6 35	41	3	123
FACU species	*Lonicera tatarica* *Parthenocissus quinquefolia* *Carex laxiflora* *Carya ovata*[3] *Acer saccharum* *Quercus rubra*	2 1 0.5 18 5 5	31.5	4	126
UPL species	*Geranium carolinianum*	7	7	5	35
Sum			164 (A)		451 (B)
Hydrophytic Vegetation Determination		Prevalence Index = B/A = 451/164 = 2.75 Therefore, this community is hydrophytic by Indicator 3 (Prevalence Index).			

[1] Where OBL = 1, FACW = 2, FAC = 3, FACU = 4, and UPL = 5.

[2] A stratum with less than 5 percent cover is not considered in the dominance test but is included in the prevalence index. *Toxicodendron radicans* was recorded in two strata (see Table 3), so the cover estimates for this species were summed across strata.

[3] *Carya ovata* was recorded in two strata (see Table 3) so the cover estimates for this species were summed across strata.

Indicator 4: Morphological adaptations

Description: The plant community passes either the dominance test (Indicator 2) or the prevalence index (Indicator 3) after reconsideration of the indicator status of certain plant species that exhibit morphological adaptations for life in wetlands.

User Notes: Some hydrophytes in the Northcentral and Northeast Region develop easily recognized physical characteristics, or morphological adaptations, when they occur in wetland areas. Some of these adaptations may help them to survive prolonged inundation or saturation in the root zone; others may simply be a consequence of living under such wet conditions. Common morphological adaptations in the region include, but are not limited to, adventitious roots, hypertrophied lenticels, multi-stemmed trunks, and shallow root systems developed on or near the soil surface (Figure 4). Users need to be cautious that shallow roots were not caused by erosion, near-surface bedrock, or rocky till, and that multi-trunk plants were not the result of sprouting after logging or browsing. Morphological adaptations may develop on FACU species when they occur in wetlands, indicating that those individuals are functioning as hydrophytes in that setting.

To apply this indicator, these morphological features must be observed on more than 50 percent of the individuals of a FACU species living in an area where indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present. Follow this procedure:

1. Confirm that the morphological feature is present mainly in the potential wetland area and is not also common on the same species in the surrounding non-wetlands.
2. For each FACU species that exhibits morphological adaptations, estimate the percentage of individuals that have the features. Record this percentage on the data form.
3. If more than 50 percent of the individuals of a FACU species have morphological adaptations for life in wetlands, that species is considered to be a hydrophyte and its indicator status on that plot should be reassigned as FAC. All other species retain their published indicator statuses. Record any supporting information on the data sheet, including a description of the morphological adaptation(s) present and any other observations of the growth habit of the species in adjacent wetland and non-wetland locations (photo documentation is recommended).

4. Recalculate the dominance test (Indicator 2) and/or the prevalence index (Indicator 3) using a FAC indicator status for this species. The vegetation is hydrophytic if either test is satisfied.

Figure 4. Shallow roots of eastern hemlock are a response to high water tables in this forested wetland.

3 Hydric Soil Indicators

Introduction

The National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils (NTCHS) defines a hydric soil as a soil that formed under conditions of saturation, flooding, or ponding long enough during the growing season to develop anaerobic conditions in the upper part (USDA Soil Conservation Service 1994). Most hydric soils exhibit characteristic morphologies that result from repeated periods of saturation or inundation for more than a few days. Saturation or inundation, when combined with microbial activity in the soil, causes the depletion of oxygen. This anaerobiosis promotes certain biogeochemical processes, such as the accumulation of organic matter and the reduction, translocation, or accumulation of iron and other reducible elements. These processes result in distinctive characteristics that persist in the soil during both wet and dry periods, making them particularly useful for identifying hydric soils in the field (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

This chapter presents indicators that are designed to help identify hydric soils in the Northcentral and Northeast Region. Indicators are not intended to replace or relieve the requirements contained in the definition of a hydric soil. Therefore, a soil that meets the definition of a hydric soil is hydric whether or not it exhibits indicators. Guidance for identifying hydric soils that lack indicators can be found later in this chapter (see the sections on documenting the site and its soils) and in Chapter 5 (Difficult Wetland Situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region).

This list of indicators is dynamic; changes and additions to the list are anticipated with new research and field testing. The indicators presented in this supplement are a subset of the NTCHS *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service [2010 or current version) that are commonly found in the region. Any change to the NTCHS *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* represents a change to this subset of indicators for the Northcentral and Northeast Region. The current version of the indicators can be found on the NRCS hydric soils web site (http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric). To use the indicators properly, a basic knowledge of soil/landscape relationships is necessary.

Most of the hydric soil indicators presented in this Supplement are applicable throughout the region; however, some are specific to certain subregions. As used in this supplement, subregions are equivalent to the Land Resource Regions (LRR) or Major Land Resource Areas (MLRA) recognized by the USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (2006) (see Chapter 1, Figure 1). It is important to understand that boundaries between subregions are actually broad transition zones. Although an indicator may be noted as most relevant in a specific subregion, it may also be applicable in the transition to an adjacent subregion.

Concepts

Hydric soil indicators are formed predominantly by the accumulation or loss of iron, manganese, sulfur, or carbon compounds in a saturated and anaerobic environment. These processes and the features that develop are described in the following paragraphs.

Iron and manganese reduction, translocation, and accumulation

In an anaerobic environment, soil microbes reduce iron from the ferric (Fe^{3+}) to the ferrous (Fe^{2+}) form, and manganese from the manganic (Mn^{4+}) to the manganous (Mn^{2+}) form. Of the two, evidence of iron reduction is more commonly observed in soils. Areas in the soil where iron is reduced often develop characteristic bluish-gray or greenish-gray colors known as *gley*. Ferric iron is insoluble but ferrous iron easily enters the soil solution and may be moved or translocated to other areas of the soil. Areas that have lost iron typically develop characteristic gray or reddish-gray colors and are known as *redox depletions*. If a soil reverts to an aerobic state, iron that is in solution will oxidize and become concentrated in patches and along root channels and other pores. These areas of oxidized iron are called *redox concentrations*. Since water movement in these saturated or inundated soils can be multi-directional, redox depletions and concentrations can occur anywhere in the soil and have irregular shapes and sizes. Soils that are saturated and contain ferrous iron at the time of sampling may change color upon exposure to the air, as ferrous iron is rapidly converted to ferric iron in the presence of oxygen. Such soils are said to have a *reduced matrix* (Vepraskas 1992).

While indicators related to iron or manganese depletion or concentration are the most common in hydric soils, they cannot form in soils whose parent materials are low in Fe or Mn. Soils formed in such materials may have low-chroma colors that are not related to saturation and reduction. For such soils, features formed through accumulation of organic carbon may be present.

Sulfate reduction

Sulfur is one of the last elements to be reduced by microbes in an anaerobic environment. The microbes convert SO_4^{2-} to H_2S, or hydrogen sulfide gas. This results in a very pronounced "rotten egg" odor in some soils that are inundated or saturated for very long periods. In non-saturated or non-inundated soils, sulfate is not reduced and there is no rotten egg odor. The presence of hydrogen sulfide is a strong indicator of a hydric soil, but this indicator is found only in the wettest sites in soils that contain sulfur-bearing compounds.

Organic matter accumulation

Soil microbes use carbon compounds found in organic matter as an energy source. However, the rate at which organic carbon is utilized by soil microbes is considerably lower in a saturated and anaerobic environment than under aerobic conditions. Therefore, in saturated soils, partially decomposed organic matter may accumulate. The result in wetlands is often the development of thick organic surfaces, such as peat or muck, or dark organic-rich mineral surface layers.

Non-saturated or non-inundated organic soils. In northern regions, cool temperatures and acid conditions slow the decomposition of organic matter. Under these conditions, even some well-drained soils, under predominantly aerobic conditions, can develop thick organic surface layers called folistic epipedons. These layers are not necessarily related to wetness. Folistic layers are organic accumulations that are saturated less than 30 days cumulatively in normal years (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1999). Most folistic layers consist of poorly decomposed organic material (i.e., fibric or hemic material; see the following section) although some consist of highly decomposed (i.e., sapric) material. Folistic surface layers may overlie rock, a mineral layer, or saturated organic layers, and are most commonly found on north- and east-facing slopes, in dense shade, and on nearly level, convex landforms in coniferous or mixed deciduous/coniferous forests in the colder, northern or high-elevation portions of the region. It may be necessary to involve a soil scientist with local knowledge to help distinguish folistic surface layers from saturated organic layers.

Determining the texture of soil materials high in organic carbon. Material high in organic carbon could fall into three categories: organic, mucky mineral, or mineral. In lieu of laboratory data, the following estimation method can be used for soil material that is wet or nearly saturated with water. This method may be inconclusive with loamy or clayey textured mineral soils. Gently rub the wet soil material between forefinger and thumb. If upon the first or second rub the material feels gritty, it is mineral soil material. If after the second rub the material feels greasy, it is either mucky mineral or organic soil material. Gently rub the material two or three more times. If after these additional rubs it feels gritty or plastic, it is mucky mineral soil material; if it still feels greasy, it is organic soil material. If the material is organic soil material a further division should be made, as follows.

Organic soil materials are classified as sapric, hemic, or fibric based on the percentage of visible fibers observable with a hand lens in an undisturbed state and after rubbing between thumb and fingers 10 times (Table 5). If there is a conflict between unrubbed and rubbed fiber content, rubbed content is used. *Live roots are not considered*. In saturated organic materials, the terms sapric, hemic, and fibric correspond to the textures muck, mucky peat, and peat, respectively (Table 5). The terms muck, mucky peat, and peat should only be used for organic accumulations associated with wetness.

Table 5. Proportion of sample consisting of fibers visible with a hand lens.

Unrubbed	Rubbed	Horizon Descriptor	Soil Texture (Saturated Organic Soils)
<33%	<17%	Sapric	Muck
33-67%	17-40%	Hemic	Mucky peat
>67%	>40%	Fibric	Peat

Adapted from USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (1999).

Another field method for determining the degree of decomposition for organic materials is a system modified from a method originally developed by L. von Post and described in detail in ASTM standard D 5715-00 (http://www.astm.org/). This method is based on a visual examination of the color of the water that is expelled and the soil material remaining in the hand after a saturated sample is squeezed (Table 6). If a conflict occurs between results for sapric, hemic, or fibric material using percent visible fiber (Table 5) and degree of humification (Table 6), then percent visible fiber should be used.

Table 6. Determination of degree of decomposition of organic materials.

Degree of Humification	Nature of Material Extruded upon Squeezing	Nature of Plant Structure in Residue	Horizon Descriptor	Soil Texture
H1	Clear, colorless water; no organic solids squeezed out	Unaltered, fibrous, undecomposed	Fibric	Peat
H2	Yellowish water; no organic solids squeezed out	Almost unaltered, fibrous		
H3	Brown, turbid water; no organic solids squeezed out	Easily identifiable		
H4	Dark brown, turbid water; no organic solids squeezed out	Visibly altered but identifiable	Hemic	Mucky Peat
H5	Turbid water and some organic solids squeezed out	Recognizable but vague, difficult to identify		
H6	Turbid water; 1/3 of sample squeezed out	Indistinct, pasty		
H7	Very turbid water; 1/2 of sample squeezed out	Faintly recognizable; few remains identifiable, mostly amorphous	Sapric	Muck
H8	Thick and pasty; 2/3 of sample squeezed out	Very indistinct		
H9	No free water; nearly all of sample squeezed out	No identifiable remains		
H10	No free water; all of sample squeezed out	Completely amorphous		

Cautions

A soil that is artificially drained or protected (for instance, by dikes or levees) is still hydric if the soil in its undisturbed state would meet the definition of a hydric soil. To be identified as hydric, these soils should generally have one or more of the indicators. However, not all areas that have hydric soils will qualify as wetlands if they no longer have wetland hydrology or do not support hydrophytic vegetation.

Morphological features that do not reflect contemporary or recent conditions of saturation and anaerobiosis are called relict features. Contemporary and relict hydric soil features can be difficult to distinguish. For example, nodules and concretions that are actively forming often have gradual or diffuse boundaries, whereas relict or degrading nodules and concretions have sharp boundaries (Vepraskas 1992). Guidance for some of the most common problem hydric soils can be found in Chapter 5. When soil morphology seems inconsistent with the landscape, vegetation, or observable hydrology, it may be necessary to obtain the assistance of an experienced soil or wetland scientist to determine whether the soil is hydric.

Procedures for sampling soils

Observe and document the site

Before making any decision about the presence or absence of hydric soils, the overall site and how it interacts with the soil should be considered. The questions below, while not required to identify a hydric soil, can help to explain why a hydric soil is or is not present. Always look at the landscape features of the immediate site and compare them to the surrounding areas. Try to contrast the features of wet and dry sites that are in close proximity. When observing slope features, look first at the area immediately around the sampling point. For example, a nearly level bench or depression at the sampling point may be more important to site wetness than the overall landform on which it occurs. By understanding how water moves across the site, the reasons for the presence or absence of hydric soil indicators should be clear.

If one or more of the hydric soil indicators given later in this chapter is present, then the soil is hydric. If no hydric soil indicator is present, the additional site information below may be useful in documenting whether the soil is indeed non-hydric or if it might represent a “problem” hydric soil that meets the hydric soil definition despite the absence of indicators.

- *Hydrology*–Is standing water observed on the site or is water observed in the soil pit? What is the depth of the water table in the area? Is there indirect evidence of ponding or flooding?
- *Slope*–Is the site level or nearly level so that surface water does not run off readily, or is it steeper where surface water would run off from the soil?
- *Slope shape*–Is the surface concave (e.g., depressions), where water would tend to collect and possibly pond on the soil surface? On hillsides, are there convergent slopes (Figure 5), where surface or

groundwater may be directed toward a central stream or swale? Is the surface or slope shape convex, causing water to run off or disperse?

- *Landform*–Is the soil on a low terrace or floodplain that may be subject to seasonal high water tables or flooding? Is it at the toe of a slope (Figure 6) where runoff may tend to collect or groundwater emerge at or near the surface? Has the microtopography been altered by cultivation?
- *Soil materials*–Is there a restrictive layer in the soil that could slow or prevent the infiltration of water, perhaps resulting in a perched water table? Restrictive layers could include consolidated bedrock, fragipans, dense glacial till, layers of silt or substantial clay content, strongly contrasting soil textures (e.g., silt over sand), or cemented layers, such as ortstein. Or is there relatively loose soil material (sand, gravel, or rocks) or fractured bedrock that would allow the water to flow laterally down slope?
- *Vegetation*–Does the vegetation at the site indicate wetter conditions than at other nearby sites, or is it similar to what is found at nearby upland sites?

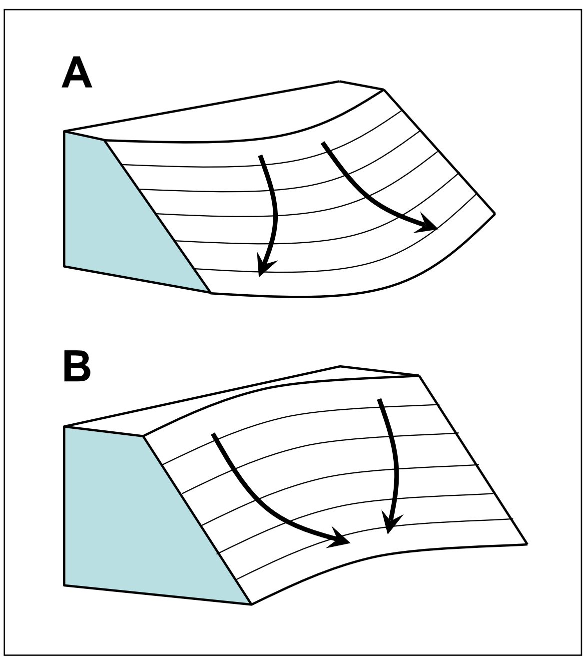


Figure 5. Divergent slopes (A) disperse surface water, whereas convergent slopes (B) concentrate water. Surface flow paths are indicated by the arrows.

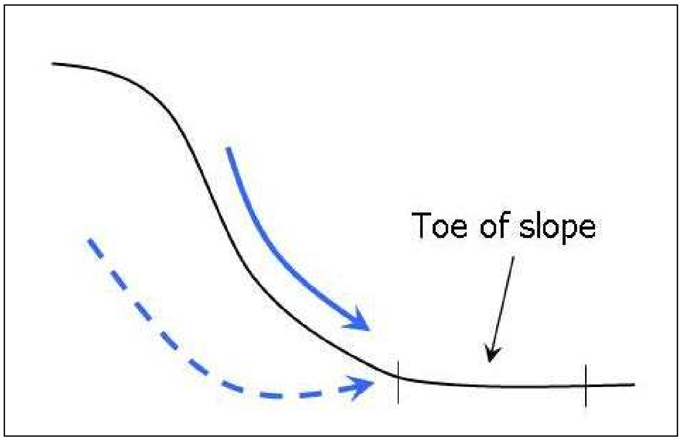


Figure 6. At the toe of a hill slope, the gradient is only slightly inclined or nearly level. Blue arrows represent flow paths of surface water (solid arrow) and groundwater (dashed arrow).

Observe and document the soil

To observe and document a hydric soil, first remove any loose leaves, needles, or bark from the soil surface. Do not remove the organic surface layers of the soil, which usually consist of plant remains in varying stages of decomposition. Dig a hole and describe the soil profile. In general, the hole should be dug to the depth needed to document an indicator or to confirm the absence of indicators. For most soils, the recommended excavation depth is approximately 20 in. (50 cm) from the soil surface, although a shallower soil pit may suffice for some indicators (e.g., A2 – Histic Epipedon). Digging may be difficult in some areas due to rocks and hardpans. Use the completed profile description to determine which hydric soil indicators have been met (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

For soils with deep, dark surface layers, deeper examination may be required when field indicators are not easily seen within 20 in. (50 cm) of the surface. The accumulation of organic matter in these soils may mask redoximorphic features in the surface layers. Examination to 40 in. (1 m) or more may be needed to determine whether they meet the requirements of indicator A12 (Thick Dark Surface). A soil auger or probe may be useful for sampling soil materials below 20 in.

Whenever possible, excavate the soil deep enough to determine if there are layers or materials present that might restrict soil drainage. This will help to understand why the soil may or may not be hydric. After a sufficient number of exploratory excavations have been made to understand the soil-hydrologic relationships at the site, subsequent excavations can be limited to the depth needed to identify hydric soil indicators. Consider taking photographs of both the soil and the overall site, including a clearly marked measurement scale in soil pictures.

The starting point for depth measurements used in the indicators varies by Land Resource Region (LRR). In LRR R (Figure 1), depths are measured from the mineral surface (underneath any and all fibric, hemic, and/or sapric material), except for indicators A1 (Histosol), A2 (Histic Epipedon), A3 (Black Histic), and S3 (Mucky Peat or Peat) for which measurements begin at the actual soil surface. In all other LRRs in the Northcentral and Northeast Region, measurements begin at the muck or mineral surface (underneath any fibric and/or hemic material), except for indicators A1, A2, A3, and S3 where they begin at the actual soil surface (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

All colors noted in this supplement refer to moist Munsell® colors (Gretag/Macbeth 2000). Do not attempt to determine colors while wearing sunglasses or tinted lenses. Colors must be determined under natural light and not under artificial light.

Soil colors specified in the indicators do not have decimal points (except for indicator A12); however, intermediate colors do occur between Munsell chips. Soil color should not be rounded to qualify as meeting an indicator. For example, a soil matrix with a chroma between 2 and 3 should be recorded as having a chroma of 2+. This soil material does not have a chroma of 2 and would not meet any indicator that requires a chroma of 2 or less.

Always examine soil matrix colors in the field immediately after sampling. Ferrous iron, if present, can oxidize rapidly and create colors of higher chroma or redder hue. In soils that are saturated at the time of sampling, redox concentrations may be absent or difficult to see, particularly in dark-colored soils. It may be necessary to let the soil dry to a moist state (5 to 30 minutes or more) for the iron or manganese to oxidize and redox features to become visible.

Particular attention should be paid to changes in microtopography over short distances. Small changes in elevation may result in repetitive sequences of hydric/non-hydric soils, making the delineation of individual areas of hydric and non-hydric soils difficult. Often the dominant condition (hydric or non-hydric) is the only reliable interpretation (also see the section on Wetland/Non-Wetland Mosaics in Chapter 5). The shape of the local landform can greatly affect the movement of water through the landscape. Significant changes in parent material or lithologic discontinuities in the soil can also affect the hydrologic properties of the soil.

Use of existing soil data

Soil surveys

Soil surveys are available for most areas of the Northcentral and Northeast Region and can provide useful information regarding soil properties and soil moisture conditions for an area. A list of available soil surveys is located at http://soils.usda.gov/survey/online_surveys/, and soil survey maps and data are available online from the Web Soil Survey at http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/. Soil survey maps divide the landscape into areas called map units. Map units usually contain more than one soil type or component. They often contain several minor components or inclusions of soils with properties that may be similar to or quite different from the major component. Some of these inclusions may be hydric while the major component is not, and vice versa. Those soils that are hydric are noted in the *Hydric Soils List* published separately from the soil survey report. Soil survey information can be valuable for planning purposes, but it is not site-specific and does not preclude the need for an on-site investigation.

Hydric soils lists

Hydric Soils Lists are developed for each detailed soil survey. Using criteria approved by the NTCHS, these lists rate each soil component as either hydric or non-hydric based on soil property data. If the soil is rated as hydric, information is provided regarding which hydric criteria are met and on what landform the soil typically occurs. Hydric Soils Lists are useful as general background information for an on-site delineation. The hydric soils list should be used as a tool, indicating that hydric soil will likely be found within a given area. However, not all areas within a polygon identified as having hydric soils may be hydric.

Hydric Soils Lists developed for individual detailed soil surveys are known as Local Hydric Soils Lists. They are available from state or county NRCS offices and over the internet from the Soil Data Mart (http://soildatamart.nrcs.usda.gov/). Local Hydric Soils Lists have been compiled into a National Hydric Soils List available at http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/. However, use of Local Hydric Soils Lists is preferred since they are more current and reflect local variations in soil properties.

Hydric soil indicators

Many of the hydric soil indicators were developed specifically for wetland-delineation purposes. During the development of these indicators, soils in the interior of wetlands were not always examined; therefore, there are wetlands that lack any of the approved hydric soil indicators in the wettest interior portions. Wetland delineators and other users of the hydric soil indicators should concentrate their sampling efforts near the wetland edge and, if these soils are hydric, assume that soils in the wetter, interior portions of the wetland are also hydric, even if they lack an indicator.

Hydric soil indicators are presented in three groups. Indicators for “All Soils” are used in any soil regardless of texture. Indicators for “Sandy Soils” are used in soil layers with USDA textures of loamy fine sand or coarser. Indicators for “Loamy and Clayey Soils” are used with soil layers of loamy very fine sand and finer. Both sandy and loamy/clayey layers may be present in the same soil profile. Therefore, a soil that contains a loamy surface layer over sand is hydric if it meets all of the requirements of matrix color, amount and contrast of redox concentrations, depth, and thickness for a specific A (All Soils), F (Loamy and Clayey Soils), or S (Sandy Soils) indicator. Additional indicators for problematic hydric soils are presented on pages 71-79. These indicators are used in conjunction with the procedure given in Chapter 5.

It is permissible to combine certain hydric soil indicators if all requirements of the individual indicators are met except thickness (see Hydric Soil Technical Note 4, http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/ntchs/tech_notes/index.html). The most restrictive requirements for thickness of layers in any indicators used must be met. Not all indicators are possible candidates for combination. For example, indicator F2 (Loamy Gleyed Matrix) has no thickness requirement, so a site would either meet the requirements of this indicator or it would not. Table 7 lists the indicators that are the most likely candidates for combining in the region.

Table 7. Minimum thickness requirements for commonly combined indicators in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Indicator	Thickness Requirement
S5 – Sandy Redox	4 in. (10 cm) thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface
S7 – Dark Surface	4 in. (10 cm) thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface
F1 – Loamy Mucky Mineral	4 in. (10 cm) thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface
F3 – Depleted Matrix	6 in. (15 cm) thick starting within 10 in. (25 cm) of the soil surface
F6 – Redox Dark Surface	4 in. (10 cm) thick entirely within the upper 12 in. (30 cm)
F7 – Depleted Dark Surface	4 in. (10 cm) thick entirely within the upper 12 in. (30 cm)

Table 8 presents an example of a soil in which a combination of layers meets the requirements for indicators F6 (Redox Dark Surface) and F3 (Depleted Matrix). The second layer meets the morphological characteristics of F6 and the third layer meets the morphological characteristics of F3, but neither meets the thickness requirement for its respective indicator. However, the combined thickness of the second and third layers meets the more restrictive conditions of thickness for F3 (i.e., 6 in. [15 cm] starting within 10 in. [25 cm] of the soil surface). Therefore, the soil is considered to be hydric based on the combination of indicators.

Table 8. Example of a soil that is hydric based on a combination of indicators F6 and F3.

Depth (inches)	Matrix Color	Redox Concentrations			Texture
		Color	Abundance	Contrast	
0 – 3	10YR 2/1	--	--	–	Loamy/clayey
3 – 6	10YR 3/1	7.5YR 5/6	3 percent	Prominent	Loamy/clayey
6 – 10	10YR 5/2	7.5YR 5/6	5 percent	Prominent	Loamy/clayey
10 – 14	2.5Y 4/2	--	--	–	Loamy/clayey

Another common situation in which it is appropriate to combine the characteristics of hydric soil indicators is when stratified textures of sandy (i.e., loamy fine sand and coarser) and loamy (i.e., loamy very fine sand and finer) material occur in the upper 12 in. of the soil. For example, the soil shown in Table 9 is hydric based on a combination of indicators F6 (Redox Dark Surface) and S5 (Sandy Redox). This soil meets the morphological characteristics of F6 in the first layer and S5 in the second layer, but neither layer by itself meets the thickness requirement for its respective indicator. However, the combined thickness of the two layers (6 in.) meets the more restrictive thickness requirement of either indicator (4 in.).

Table 9. Example of a soil that is hydric based on a combination of indicators F6 and S5.

Depth (inches)	Matrix Color	Redox Concentrations			Texture
		Color	Abundance	Contrast	
0 – 3	10YR 3/1	10YR 5/6	3 percent	Prominent	Loamy/clayey
3 – 6	10YR 4/1	10YR 5/6	3 percent	Prominent	Sandy
6 – 16	10YR 4/1	--	--	--	Loamy/clayey

All soils

"All soils" refers to soils with any USDA soil texture. Use the following indicators regardless of soil texture.

All mineral layers above any of the layers meeting an A indicator, except for indicator A16, must have a dominant chroma of 2 or less, or the layer(s) with a dominant chroma of more than 2 must be less than 6 in. (15 cm) thick to meet any hydric soil indicator. Nodules and concretions are not considered to be redox concentrations unless otherwise noted.

Indicator A1: Histosol

Technical Description: Classifies as a Histosol (except Folists)

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: In most Histosols, 16 in. (40 cm) or more of the upper 32 in. (80 cm) is organic soil material (Figure 7). Histosols also include soils that have organic soil material of any thickness over rock or fragmental soil material that has interstices filled with organic soil material (Figure 8). Organic soil material has an organic carbon content (by weight) of 12 to 18 percent or more, depending on the clay content of the soil. The material includes muck (sapric soil material), mucky peat (hemic soil material), or peat (fibric soil material). See the glossary of *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) for definitions of muck, mucky peat, peat, and organic soil material. See the Concepts section of this chapter for field methods to identify organic soil materials, and Appendix A for the definition of fragmental soil material.

Figure 7. Example of a Histosol, in which muck (sapric soil material) is greater than 3 ft (0.9 m) thick.

Figure 8. This Histosol consists of only a few inches of organic soil material over bedrock in a shallow glacial groove.

Histosols are relatively abundant in the Northcentral and Northeast Region. They are often found in bogs, fens, and slope wetlands that are ponded or saturated to the surface nearly all of the growing season in most years. Use caution in areas that may have folistic surface layers (see the Concepts section of this chapter). Folistic layers do not meet the requirements of this indicator.

Indicator A2: Histic Epipedon

Technical Description: A histic epipedon underlain by mineral soil material with a chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Most histic epipedons are surface horizons 8 in. (20 cm) or more thick of organic soil material (Figure 9). Aquic conditions or artificial drainage are required (see *Soil Taxonomy*, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1999); however, aquic conditions can be assumed if indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are present. See the glossary of *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) for definitions. See the Concepts section of this chapter for field methods to identify organic soil materials. See indicator A1 for organic carbon requirements. Slightly lower organic carbon contents are allowed in plowed soils.

Figure 9. In this soil, the organic surface layer is about 9 in. (23 cm) thick. Scale is in centimeters.

This indicator is common in the region. It is often found in bogs, fens, and slope wetlands that are ponded or saturated to the surface nearly all of the growing season in most years.

Indicator A3: Black Histic

Technical Description: A layer of peat, mucky peat, or muck 8 in. (20 cm) or more thick that starts within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface; has a hue of 10YR or yellower, value of 3 or less, and chroma of 1 or less; and is underlain by mineral soil material with a chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator does not require proof of aquic conditions or artificial drainage. See the glossary of *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) for definitions of peat, mucky peat, and muck. See the Concepts section of this chapter for field methods to identify organic soil materials. See indicator A1 for organic carbon requirements.

This indicator is common in the region. It is often found in bogs, fens, and slope wetlands that are ponded or saturated to the surface nearly all of the growing season in most years.

Indicator A4: Hydrogen Sulfide

Technical Description: A hydrogen sulfide (rotten egg) odor within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Any time the soil smells of hydrogen sulfide (rotten egg odor), sulfur is currently being reduced and the soil is definitely in an anaerobic state. In some soils, the odor is pronounced; in others it is very fleeting as the gas dissipates rapidly. If in doubt, quickly open several small holes in the area of concern to determine if a hydrogen sulfide odor is really present. This indicator generally is not found at the boundaries between wetlands and non-wetlands. It is most commonly found in areas that are permanently saturated or inundated.

Indicator A5: Stratified Layers

Technical Description: Several stratified layers starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface. At least one of the layers has a value of 3 or less with a chroma of 1 or less or it is muck, mucky peat, peat, or mucky modified mineral texture. The remaining layers have chromas of 2 or less (Figure 10). Any sandy material that constitutes the layer with a value of 3 or less and a chroma of 1 or less, when viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, must have at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles masked with organic material (Figure 11). When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked.

Figure 10. Stratified layers in loamy material.

Figure 11. Stratified layers in sandy material.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Use of this indicator may require assistance from a soil scientist with local experience. An undisturbed sample must be observed. Individual strata are dominantly less than 1 in. (2.5 cm) thick. A hand lens can aid in the identification of this indicator. Many alluvial soils have stratified layers at depths greater than 6 in. (15 cm); these do not fit this indicator. Many alluvial soils have stratified layers at the required depths but lack a chroma of 2 or less; these do not fit this indicator. Stratified layers occur in any type of soil material, generally in floodplains and other areas where wet soils are subject to rapid and repeated burial with thin deposits of sediment.

Indicator A11: Depleted Below Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer with a depleted or gleyed matrix that has 60 percent or more chroma of 2 or less, starting within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface, and having a minimum thickness of either:

- 6 in. (15 cm), or
- 2 in. (5 cm) if the 2 in. (5 cm) consists of fragmental soil material.

Loamy/clayey layer(s) above the depleted or gleyed matrix must have a value of 3 or less and chroma of 2 or less. Any sandy material above the depleted or gleyed matrix must have a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less and, when viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, must have at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator often occurs in hydric soils that have dark-colored surface layers, such as umbric epipedons and dark-colored ochric epipedons (Figure 12). For soils that have dark surface layers greater than 12 in. (30 cm) thick, use indicator A12. Two percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations, including iron/manganese soft masses, pore linings, or both, are required in soils that have matrix values/chromas of 4/1, 4/2, and 5/2 (Figure A1). If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. See the Glossary (Appendix A) for definitions of depleted matrix, gleyed matrix, distinct and prominent features, and fragmental soil material.

Figure 12. In this soil, a depleted matrix starts immediately below the black surface layer at approximately 11 in. (28 cm).

In some places, the gleyed matrix may change color upon exposure to air (reduced matrix). This phenomenon is included in the concept of a gleyed matrix (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2002).

This indicator is commonly found at the boundary of wetlands in Mollisols or other dark-colored soils. It is often found in soils formed on alluvial terraces along larger river systems in areas subject to ponding due to high water tables.

Indicator A12: Thick Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer at least 6 in. (15 cm) thick with a depleted or gleyed matrix that has 60 percent or more chroma of 2 or less starting below 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface. The layer(s) above the depleted or gleyed matrix must have a value of 2.5 or less and chroma of 1 or less to a depth of at least 12 in. (30 cm) and a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less in any remaining layers above the depleted or gleyed matrix. Any sandy material above the depleted or gleyed matrix, when viewed with a 10- or

15-power hand lens, must have at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: The soil has a depleted matrix or gleyed matrix below a black or very dark gray surface layer 12 in. (30 cm) or more thick (Figure 13). This indicator is most often associated with overthickened soils in concave landscape positions. Two percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations (Table A1), including iron/manganese soft masses, pore linings, or both, are required in soils that have matrix values/chromas of 4/1, 4/2, and 5/2 (Figure A1). If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. See the Glossary (Appendix A) for the definitions of depleted and gleyed matrix.

In some places, the gleyed matrix may change color upon exposure to air (reduced matrix). This phenomenon is included in the concept of a gleyed matrix (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2002).

This indicator is almost never found at the wetland/non-wetland boundary and is much less common than indicators A11 (Depleted Below Dark Surface), F3 (Depleted Matrix), and F6 (Redox Dark Surface).

Sandy soils

"Sandy soils" refers to soil materials with a USDA soil texture of loamy fine sand and coarser. Use the following indicators in soil layers consisting of sandy soil materials.

All mineral layers above any of the layers meeting an S indicator, except for indicator S6, must have a dominant chroma of 2 or less, or the layer(s) with a dominant chroma of more than 2 must be less than 6 in. (15 cm) thick to meet any hydric soil indicator. Nodules and concretions are not considered to be redox concentrations unless otherwise noted.

Figure 13. Deep observations may be necessary to identify the depleted or gleyed matrix below a thick, dark surface layer. In this example, the depleted matrix starts at 20 in. (50 cm).

Indicator S1: Sandy Mucky Mineral

Technical Description: A layer of mucky modified sandy soil material 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface (Figure 14).

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator is uncommon but is found in localized areas in this region. *Mucky* is a USDA texture modifier for mineral soils. The organic carbon content is at least 5 percent and ranges up to 14 percent for sandy soils. The percentage requirement is dependent upon the clay content of the soil; the higher the clay content, the higher the organic carbon

Figure 14. The mucky modified sandy layer is approximately 3 in. (7.5 cm) thick. Scale in inches on the right side of ruler.

requirement. See the glossary of *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) for the definition of mucky modified mineral texture. A field procedure for identifying mucky mineral soil material is presented in the Concepts section of this chapter.

Indicator S4: Sandy Gleyed Matrix

Technical Description: A gleyed matrix that occupies 60 percent or more of a layer starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface (Figure 15).

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: The gleyed matrix only has to be present within 6 in. (15 cm) of the surface. Soils with gleyed matrices are saturated for significant periods; therefore, *no minimum thickness of gleyed layer is required*. See the Glossary (Appendix A) for the definition of a gleyed matrix.

This indicator is most frequently found in tidal marshes and generally is not found at the boundaries between wetlands and non-wetlands.

Figure 15. In this example, the gleyed matrix begins at the soil surface.

Indicator S5: Sandy Redox

Technical Description: A layer starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface that is at least 4 in. (10 cm) thick and has a matrix with 60 percent or more chroma of 2 or less with 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings (Figure 16).

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Distinct and prominent are defined in the Glossary (Appendix A). Redox concentrations include iron and manganese masses (reddish mottles) and pore linings (Vepraskas 1992). Included within the concept of redox concentrations are iron/manganese bodies as soft masses with diffuse boundaries. Common (2 to less than 20 percent) to many (20 percent or more) redox concentrations (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2002) are required. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible.

Figure 16. Redox concentrations (orange areas) in sandy soil material.

This is a very common indicator of hydric soils and is often used to identify the hydric/non-hydric boundary in sandy soils. This indicator is often associated with depressions or swales in dune/swale complexes.

Indicator S6: Stripped Matrix

Technical Description: A layer starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface in which iron/manganese oxides and/or organic matter have been stripped from the matrix and the primary base color of the soil material has been exposed. The stripped areas and translocated oxides and/or organic matter form a faintly contrasting pattern of two or more colors with diffuse boundaries. The stripped zones are 10 percent or more of the volume and are rounded.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator includes the indicator previously named streaking (Environmental Laboratory 1987). The stripped areas are typically 0.5 to 1 in. (1 to 3 cm) in size but may be larger or smaller. Commonly, the stripped areas have a value of 5 or more and chroma of 1 and/or 2 and unstripped areas have a chroma of 3 and/or 4 (Figure 17).

Figure 17. In this example, a faint splotchy pattern of stripped and unstripped areas lies beneath a thin dark surface layer.

However, there are no specific color requirements for this indicator. The mobilization and translocation of the oxides and/or organic matter are the important processes involved in this indicator and should result in splotchy coated and uncoated soil areas. A 10-power hand lens can be helpful in seeing stripped and unstripped areas. This may be a difficult pattern to recognize and is often more evident in a horizontal slice.

This is a very common indicator of hydric soils and is often used to identify the hydric/non-hydric boundary in sandy soils. This indicator is found in all wetland types and all wet landscape positions.

Indicator S7: Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer 4 in. (10 cm) thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface with a matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. The matrix color of the layer immediately below the dark layer must have the same colors as those described above or any color that has a chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable to the Northeastern Forests Subregion (LRR R) (Figure 1) and the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S) (Figure 18). For testing in LRRs K, L, and M.

User Notes: If the dark layer is greater than 4 in. (10 cm) thick, then the indicator is met, because any dark soil material in excess of 4 in. (10 cm) meets the requirement that "the layer immediately below the dark layer must have the same colors as those described above… ." If the dark layer is exactly 4 in. (10 cm) thick, then the material immediately below must have a matrix chroma of 2 or less.

This indicator is applicable to interdunal swales along the Atlantic Ocean. The organic carbon content of this indicator is slightly less than that required for "mucky." An undisturbed sample must be observed (Figure 19). Many moderately wet soils have a ratio of about 50 percent of soil particles covered or coated with organic matter to about 50 percent uncoated or uncovered soil particles, giving the soil a salt-and-pepper appearance. Where the percent coverage by organic matter is less than 70 percent, the Dark Surface indicator is not present.

Indicator S8: Polyvalue Below Surface

Technical Description: A layer with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles in this layer must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. Immediately below this layer, 5 percent or more of the soil volume has a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less and the remainder of the soil volume has a value of 4 or more and chroma of 1 or less to a depth of 12 in. (30 cm) or to the spodic horizon, whichever is less.

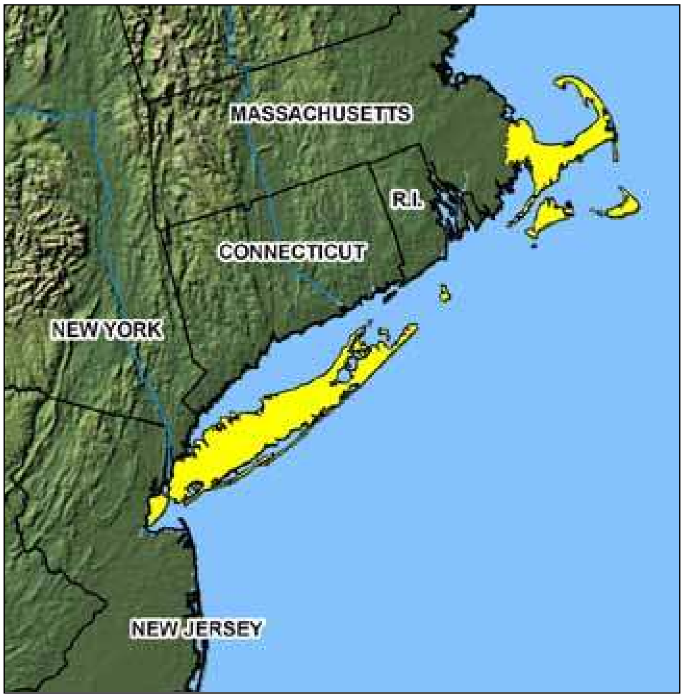


Figure 18. Location of MLRA 149B of LRR S.

Figure 19. Example of indicator S7 (Dark Surface) in a sandy soil. Scale in inches on right.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable to the Northeastern Forests Subregion (LRR R) (Figure 1) and the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S) (Figure 18).

User Notes: This indicator applies to soils with a very dark gray or black surface or near-surface layer that is underlain by a layer in which organic matter has been differentially distributed within the soil by water movement (Figure 20). The mobilization and translocation of organic matter result in splotchy coated and uncoated soil areas, as described in the Sandy Redox (S5) and Stripped Matrix (S6) indicators, except that for S8 the whole soil is in shades of black and gray. The chroma of 1 or less is critical because it limits application of this indicator to only those soils that are depleted of iron. This indicator includes the indicator previously termed "streaking." See *Soil Taxonomy* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1999) for the definition of spodic horizon.

Figure 20. In this soil, the splotchy pattern below the dark surface is due to mobilization and translocation of organic matter. Scale in inches.

Indicator S9: Thin Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick starting within the upper 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil, with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles in this layer must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. This layer is underlain by a layer(s) with a value of 4 or less and chroma of 1 or less to a depth of 12 in. (30 cm) or to the spodic horizon, whichever is less.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable to the Northeastern Forests Subregion (LRR R) (Figure 1) and the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S) (Figure 18).

User Notes: This indicator applies to soils with a very dark gray or black near-surface layer that is at least 2 in. (5 cm) thick and is underlain by a layer in which organic matter has been carried downward by flowing water (Figure 21). The mobilization and translocation of organic matter result in an even distribution of organic matter in the eluvial (E) horizon. The chroma of 1 or less is critical because it limits application of this indicator to only those soils that are depleted of iron. This indicator commonly occurs in hydric Spodosols; however, a spodic horizon is not required. See *Soil Taxonomy* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1999) for the definitions of Spodosol and spodic horizon.

Figure 21. Example of indicator S9 (Thin Dark Surface). Scale in inches on right.

Loamy and clayey soils

"Loamy and clayey soils" refers to soil materials with USDA textures of loamy very fine sand and finer. Use the following indicators in soil layers consisting of loamy or clayey soil materials.

All mineral layers above any of the layers meeting an F indicator, except for indicators F8, F12, and F19, must have a dominant chroma of 2 or less, or the layer(s) with a dominant chroma of more than 2 must be less than 6 in. (15 cm) thick to meet any hydric soil indicator. Nodules and concretions are not considered to be redox concentrations unless otherwise noted.

Indicator F1: Loamy Mucky Mineral

Technical Description: A layer of mucky modified loamy or clayey soil material 4 in. (10 cm) or more thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable to the Northcentral Forests (LRR K) and Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L) Subregions (Figure 1).

User Notes: *Mucky* is a USDA texture modifier for mineral soils. The organic carbon is at least 8 percent, but can range up to 18 percent. The percentage requirement is dependent upon the clay content of the soil; the higher the clay content, the higher the organic carbon requirement. See the Concepts section of this chapter for guidance on identifying mucky mineral soil materials in the field; however, loamy mucky soil material is difficult to distinguish without laboratory testing.

Indicator F2: Loamy Gleyed Matrix

Technical Description: A gleyed matrix that occupies 60 percent or more of a layer starting within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface (Figure 22).

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Gley colors are not synonymous with gray colors. Gley colors are those colors that are on the gley pages (Gretag/Macbeth 2000). They have hue N, 10Y, 5GY, 10GY, 5G, 10G, 5BG, 10BG, 5B, 10B, or 5PB, with

Figure 22. This soil has a gleyed matrix in the lowest layer, starting about 7 in. (18 cm) from the soil surface. The layer above the gleyed matrix has a depleted matrix.

value 4 or more. The gleyed matrix only has to be present within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface. Soils with gleyed matrices are saturated for significant periods; therefore, no minimum thickness of gleyed layer is required. See the Glossary (Appendix A) for the definition of a gleyed matrix.

This indicator is found in soils that are inundated or saturated nearly all of the growing season in most years (e.g., in oxbows with permanent water) and is not usually found at the boundaries between wetlands and non-wetlands.

Indicator F3: Depleted Matrix

Technical Description: A layer that has a depleted matrix with 60 percent or more chroma of 2 or less and that has a minimum thickness of either:

- 2 in. (5 cm) if the 2 in. (5 cm) is entirely within the upper 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil, or
- 6 in. (15 cm) starting within 10 in. (25 cm) of the soil surface.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This is one of the most commonly observed hydric soil indicators at wetland boundaries. Redox concentrations including iron/ manganese soft masses or pore linings, or both, are required in soils with matrix values/chromas of 4/1, 4/2, and 5/2 (Figures 23 and 24). If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. Redox concentrations are not required in soils with matrix values of 5 or more and chroma of 1, or values of 6 or more and chromas of 2 or 1. The low-chroma matrix must be caused by wetness and not be a relict or parent material feature. See the Glossary (Appendix A) for the definition of a depleted matrix.

Figure 23. Example of indicator F3 (Depleted Matrix), in which redox concentrations extend nearly to the surface.

Figure 24. This soil has a depleted matrix with redox concentrations in a low-chroma matrix.

Indicator F6: Redox Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer that is at least 4 in. (10 cm) thick, is entirely within the upper 12 in. (30 cm) of the mineral soil, and has a:

- matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less and 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses or pore linings, or
- matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 2 or less and 5 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses or pore linings.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This is a very common indicator used to delineate wetlands. Redox concentrations are often small and difficult to see in mineral soils that have dark (value of 3 or less) surface layers due to high organic-matter content (Figure 25). The organic matter masks some or all of the concentrations that may be present; it also masks the diffuse boundaries of

Figure 25. Redox features can be small and difficult to see within a dark soil layer.

the concentrations and makes them appear to be more sharp. Careful examination is required to see what are often brownish redox concentrations in the darkened materials. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry at least to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. In some cases, further drying of the samples makes the concentrations (if present) easier to see. A hand lens may be helpful in seeing and describing small redox concentrations. Care should be taken to examine the interior of soil peds for redox concentrations. Dry colors, if used, also must have matrix chromas of 1 or 2, and the redox concentrations must be distinct or prominent. For soils with thick, dark surface layers, see also indicators A11 (Depleted Below Dark Surface) and A12 (Thick Dark Surface).

In soils that are wet because of subsurface saturation, the layer immediately below the dark epipedon will likely have a depleted or gleyed matrix (see the Glossary for definitions). Soils that are wet because of ponding or have a shallow, perched layer of saturation may not always have a depleted/gleyed matrix below the dark surface. This morphology has been observed in soils that have been compacted by tillage and other means. It is recommended that delineators evaluate the hydrologic source and examine and describe the layer below the dark-colored epipedon when applying this indicator.

Indicator F7: Depleted Dark Surface

Technical Description: Redox depletions with a value of 5 or more and chroma of 2 or less in a layer that is at least 4 in. (10 cm) thick, is entirely within the upper 12 in. (30 cm) of the mineral soil (Figure 26), and has a:

- matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less and 10 percent or more redox depletions, or
- matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 2 or less and 20 percent or more redox depletions.

Figure 26. Redox depletions (lighter colored areas) are scattered within the darker matrix. Scale is in centimeters.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: Care should be taken not to mistake the mixing of eluvial (leached) layers that have high value and low chroma (E horizon) or illuvial layers that have accumulated carbonates (calcic horizon) into the surface layer as depletions. Mixing of layers can be caused by burrowing animals or cultivation. Pieces of deeper layers that become incorporated into the surface layer are not redox depletions. Knowledge of local conditions is required in areas where light-colored eluvial layers and/or layers high in carbonates may be present. In soils that are wet because of subsurface saturation, the layer immediately below the dark surface is likely to have a depleted or gleyed matrix. Redox depletions are usually associated with microsites that have redox concentrations occurring as pore linings or masses within the depletion(s) or surrounding the depletion(s).

Indicator F8: Redox Depressions

Technical Description: In closed depressions subject to ponding, 5 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses or pore linings in a layer that is 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick and is entirely within the upper 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil (Figure 27).

Figure 27. In this example, the layer of redox concentrations begins at the soil surface and is slightly more than 2 in. (5 cm) thick.

Applicable Subregions: Applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator occurs on depressional landforms, such as vernal pools and potholes, but not microdepressions on convex landscapes. Closed depressions often occur within flats or floodplain landscapes. *Note that there is no color requirement for the soil matrix.* The layer containing redox concentrations may extend below 6 in. (15 cm) as long as at least 2 in. (5 cm) occurs within 6 in. (15 cm) of the surface. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. See the Glossary for definitions of distinct and prominent.

This is a common but often overlooked indicator found at the wetland/non-wetland boundary on depressional sites.

Hydric soil indicators for problem soils

The following indicators are not currently recognized for general application by the NTCHS, or they are not recognized in the specified geographic area. However, these indicators may be used in problem wetland situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region where there is evidence of wetland hydrology and hydrophytic vegetation, and the soil is believed to meet the definition of a hydric soil despite the lack of other indicators of a hydric soil. To use these indicators, follow the procedure described in the section on Problematic Hydric Soils in Chapter 5. If any of the following indicators is observed, it is recommended that the NTCHS be notified by following the protocol described in the "Comment on the Indicators" section of *Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States* (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

Indicator A10: 2 cm Muck

Technical Description: A layer of muck 0.75 in. (2 cm) or more thick with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less, starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in the Northcentral Forests (LRR K), Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L), and Long Island/Cape Cod (MLRA 149B of LRR S) Subregions.

User Notes: Normally the muck layer is at the soil surface; however, it may occur at any depth within 6 in. (15 cm) of the surface. Muck is sapric soil material with at least 12 to 18 percent organic carbon. Organic soil material is called muck if virtually all of the material has undergone sufficient decomposition to limit recognition of the plant parts. Hemic (mucky peat) and fibric (peat) soil materials do not qualify. To determine if muck is present, first remove loose leaves, needles, bark, and other easily identified plant remains. This is sometimes called leaf litter, a duff layer, or a leaf or root mat. Then examine for decomposed organic soil material. Generally, muck is black and has a greasy feel; sand grains should not be evident (see the Concepts section of this chapter for field methods to identify organic soil materials). Determination of this indicator is made below the leaf or root mat; however, root mats that meet the definition of hemic or fibric soil material are included in the decision-making process for indicators A1 (Histosol) and A2 (Histic Epipedon).

Indicator A16: Coast Prairie Redox

Technical Description: A layer starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface that is at least 4 in. (10 cm) thick and has a matrix chroma of 3 or less with 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region, *except* in the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S).

User Notes: These hydric soils occur mainly on depressional and intermound landforms. Redox concentrations occur mainly as iron-dominated pore linings. Common to many redox concentrations are required. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. Chroma 3 matrices are allowed because they may be the color of stripped sand grains, or because few to common sand-sized reddish particles may be present and may prevent obtaining a chroma of 2 or less.

Indicator S3: 5 cm Mucky Peat or Peat

Technical Description: A layer of mucky peat or peat 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 2 or less, starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface, and underlain by sandy soil material.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region, *except* in the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S).

User Notes: In this region, this indicator is applicable primarily to interdunal swales along the Great Lakes and Atlantic coast. Mucky peat (hemic soil material) and peat (fibric soil material) have at least 12 to 18 percent organic carbon. Organic soil material is called peat if virtually all of the plant remains are sufficiently intact to permit identification of plant remains. Mucky peat is an intermediate stage of decomposition between peat and highly decomposed muck. See the glossary of Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) for definitions. See the Concepts section of this chapter for field methods to identify organic soil materials.

Indicator S7: Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer 4 in. (10 cm) thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface with a matrix value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. The matrix color of the layer immediately below the dark layer must have the same colors as those described above or any color that has a chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in the Northcentral Forests (LRR K) and Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L) Subregions.

User Notes: This indicator is applicable to interdunal swales along the Great Lakes. See the User Notes for indicator S7 earlier in this chapter.

Indicator S8: Polyvalue Below Surface

Technical Description: A layer with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil surface. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles in this layer must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. Immediately below this layer, 5 percent or more of the soil volume has a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less and the remainder of the soil volume has a value of 4 or more and chroma of 1 or less to a depth of 12 in. (30 cm) or to the spodic horizon, whichever is less.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in the Northcentral Forests (LRR K) and Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L) Subregions.

User Notes: See the User Notes for indicator S8 earlier in this chapter.

Indicator S9: Thin Dark Surface

Technical Description: A layer 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick starting within the upper 6 in. (15 cm) of the soil, with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less. When viewed with a 10- or 15-power hand lens, at least 70 percent of the visible soil particles in this layer must be masked with organic material. When viewed without a hand lens, the material appears to be nearly 100 percent masked. This layer is underlain by a layer(s) with a value of 4 or less and chroma of 1 or less to a depth of 12 in. (30 cm) or to the spodic horizon, whichever is less.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in the Northcentral Forests (LRR K) and Central Great Lakes Forests (LRR L) Subregions.

User Notes: See the User Notes for indicator S9 earlier in this chapter.

Indicator F12: Iron-Manganese Masses

Technical Description: On floodplains, a layer 4 in. (10 cm) or more thick with 40 percent or more chroma of 2 or less and 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft iron-manganese masses with diffuse boundaries. The layer occurs entirely within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface. Iron-manganese masses have a value and chroma of 3 or less. Most commonly, they are black. The thickness requirement is waived if the layer is the mineral surface layer.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region, *except* in the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S).

User Notes: These iron-manganese masses generally are small (2 to 5 mm in size) and have value and chroma of 3 or less. They can be dominated by manganese and, therefore, have a color approaching black (Figure 28). If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible. The low matrix chroma must be the result of wetness and not be a relict or parent material feature. Iron-manganese masses should not be confused with the larger and redder iron nodules associated with plinthite or with concretions that have sharp boundaries. This indicator occurs on floodplains such as those of the Mississippi, Hudson, and Penobscot Rivers.

Figure 28. Iron-manganese masses (black spots) in a 40 percent depleted matrix. Scale is in inches.

Indicator F19: Piedmont Floodplain Soils

Technical Description: On active floodplains, a mineral layer at least 6 in. (15 cm) thick starting within 10 in. (25 cm) of the soil surface with a matrix (60 percent or more of the volume) chroma of less than 4 and 20 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses or pore linings.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in the Long Island/Cape Cod Subregion (MLRA 149B of LRR S) (Figure 18).

User Notes: This indicator is restricted to floodplains that are actively receiving sediments and groundwater discharge with high iron content (Figure 29). The soil chroma must be less than 4. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, it may be necessary to let it dry to a moist condition for redox features to become visible.

Figure 29. The Piedmont Floodplain Soils indicator is restricted to floodplains that are actively receiving sediments and groundwater discharge with high iron content. Photo by M. Rabenhorst. Scale in 4-in. (10-cm) increments.

Indicator F21: Red Parent Material

Technical Description: A layer derived from red parent materials (see glossary) that is at least 10 cm (4 inches) thick, starting within 25 cm (10 inches) of the soil surface with a hue of 7.5YR or redder. The matrix has a value and chroma greater than 2 and less than or equal to 4. The layer must contain 10 percent or more depletions and/or distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses or pore linings. Redox depletions should differ in color by having:

- value one or more higher and chroma one or more lower than the matrix, or
- value of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

User Notes: This indicator was developed for use in areas of red parent material. In order to confirm that it is appropriate to apply this indicator to particular soils, soils formed from similar parent materials in the area should have been evaluated to determine their Color Change Propensity Index (CCPI) and be shown to have CCPI values below 30 (Rabenhorst and Parikh, 2000.) It cannot be assumed that sediment overlying red colored bedrock is derived solely from that bedrock. The total percentage of all redox concentrations and redox depletions must add up to at least 10% to meet the threshold for this indicator.

This indicator is typically found at the boundary between hydric and non-hydric soils. Users that encounter a depleted matrix in the upper part should consider F3-Depleted Matrix. F3 is often found in sites that are anaerobic for a longer period. Users that encounter a dark soil surface (value 3 or less and chroma 2 or less) should consider F6-Redox Dark Surface or F7-Depleted Dark Surface. If the site is in a closed depression subject to ponding users should consider F8-Redox Depressions. See glossary for definition of Red Parent Material.

Indicator TA6: Mesic Spodic

Technical Description: A layer 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick starting within 6 in. (15 cm) of the mineral soil surface that has a value of 3 or less and chroma of 2 or less and is underlain by either:

- a layer(s) 3 in. (8 cm) or more thick starting within 12 in. (30 cm) of the mineral soil surface that has a value and chroma of 3 or less and shows evidence of spodic development; or
- a layer(s) 2 in. (5 cm) or more thick starting within 12 in. (30 cm) of the mineral soil surface that has a value of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and is directly underlain by a layer(s) 3 in. (8 cm) or more thick with a value and chroma of 3 or less that shows evidence of spodic development.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils in MLRAs 144A and 145 of LRR R and MLRA 149B of LRR S (Figure 30).

User Notes: This indicator is used to identify wet soils with spodic materials or that meet the definition of a Spodosol in MLRAs 144A and 145 of LRR R and MLRA 149B of LRR S only. The layer that has a value of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less is typically described as an E or Eg horizon. These typically have color patterns described as stripped or partially stripped matrices. The layer with evidence of spodic development is typically described as a Bh, Bhs, Bhsm, Bsm, or Bs horizon. These layers typically have color patterns or cementation indicative of the accumulation of translocated iron, aluminum, and/or organic matter.

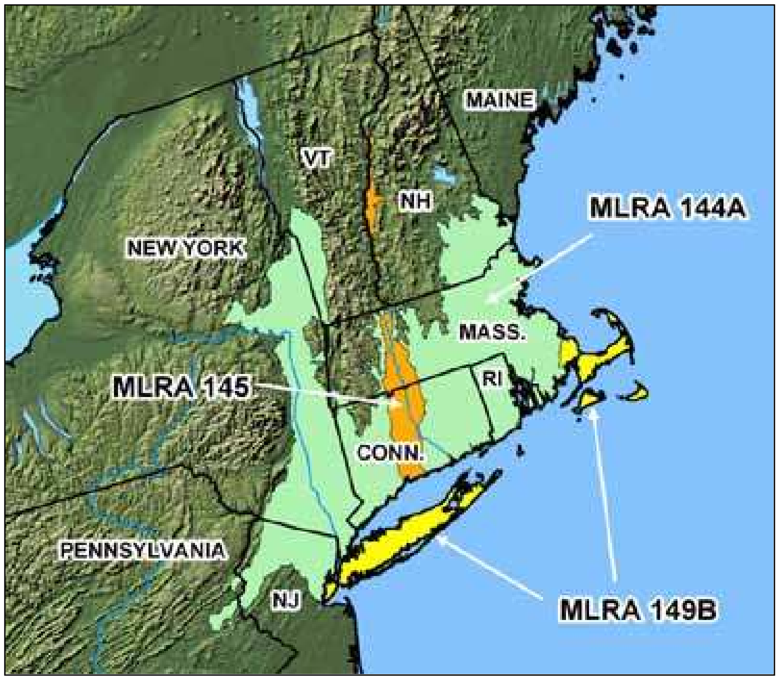


Figure 30. Location of MLRAs 144A and 145 in LRR R and MLRA 149B in LRR S.

Indicator TF12: Very Shallow Dark Surface

Technical Description: In depressions and other concave landforms, one of the following:

- If bedrock occurs between 6 in. (15 cm) and 10 in. (25 cm), a layer at least 6 in. (15 cm) thick starting within 4 in. (10 cm) of the soil surface with a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less, and the remaining soil to bedrock must have the same colors as above or any other color that has a chroma of 2 or less.
- If bedrock occurs within 6 in. (15 cm), more than half of the soil thickness must have a value of 3 or less and chroma of 1 or less, and the remaining soil to bedrock must have the same colors as above or any other color that has a chroma of 2 or less.

Applicable Subregions: For use with problem soils throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

4 Wetland Hydrology Indicators

Introduction

Wetland hydrology indicators are used in combination with indicators of hydric soil and hydrophytic vegetation to determine whether an area is a wetland under the Corps Manual. Indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soil generally reflect a site's medium- to long-term wetness history. They provide readily observable evidence that episodes of inundation or soil saturation lasting more than a few days during the growing season have occurred repeatedly over a period of years and that the timing, duration, and frequency of wet conditions have been sufficient to produce a characteristic wetland plant community and hydric soil morphology. If hydrology has not been altered, vegetation and soils provide strong evidence that wetland hydrology is present (National Research Council 1995). Wetland hydrology indicators provide evidence that the site has a *continuing* wetland hydrologic regime and that hydric soils and hydrophytic vegetation are not relicts of a past hydrologic regime. Wetland hydrology indicators confirm that an episode of inundation or soil saturation occurred recently, but may provide little additional information about the timing, duration, or frequency of such events (National Research Council 1995).

Hydrology indicators are often the most transitory of wetland indicators. Some hydrology indicators are naturally temporary or seasonal, and many are affected by recent or long-term meteorological conditions. For example, indicators involving direct observation of surface water or saturated soils often are present only during the normal wet portion of the growing season and may be absent during the dry season or during drier-than-normal years. Hydrology indicators also may be subject to disturbance or destruction by natural processes or human activities. Most wetlands in the Northcentral and Northeast Region will exhibit one or more of the hydrology indicators presented in this chapter. However, some wetlands may lack any of these indicators due to temporarily dry conditions, disturbance, or other factors. Therefore, the lack of an indicator is not evidence for the absence of wetland hydrology. See Chapter 5 (Difficult Wetland Situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region) for help in identifying wetlands that may lack wetland hydrology indicators at certain times.

The Northcentral and Northeast Region has a humid, temperate climate with cold, snowy winters and moderate-to-abundant spring and summer rainfall in most areas and years. The dry season is less pronounced in this region than in the adjacent regions, but increased evapotranspiration during June, July, and August causes water tables to drop and surface water to recede from wetland margins. Particularly in seasonally saturated wetlands, hydrology indicators may be difficult to find during dry periods. On the other hand, some indicators may be present on non-wetland sites immediately after a heavy rain or during periods of unusually high precipitation, river stages, reservoir releases, runoff, or snowmelt. Therefore, it is important to consider weather and climatic conditions prior to the site visit to minimize both false-positive and false-negative wetland hydrology decisions. An understanding of normal seasonal and annual variations in rainfall, temperature, and other climatic conditions is important in interpreting hydrology indicators in the region. Some useful sources of climatic data are described in Chapter 5.

Areas that have hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soils generally also have wetland hydrology unless the hydrologic regime has changed due to natural events or human activities (National Research Council 1995). Therefore, when wetland hydrology indicators are absent from an area that has indicators of hydric soil and hydrophytic vegetation, further information may be needed to determine whether or not wetland hydrology is present. If possible, one or more site visits should be scheduled to coincide with the normal wet portion of the growing season, the period of the year when the presence or absence of wetland hydrology indicators is most likely to reflect the true wetland/non-wetland status of the site. In addition, aerial photography or other remote-sensing data, stream gauge data, monitoring well data, runoff estimates, scope-and-effect equations for ditches and subsurface drainage systems, or groundwater modeling are tools that may help to determine whether wetland hydrology is present when indicators are equivocal or lacking (e.g., USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997). Off-site procedures developed under the National Food Security Act Manual (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1994), which use wetland mapping conventions developed by NRCS state offices, can help identify areas that have wetland hydrology on agricultural lands. The technique is based on wetness signatures visible on standard high-altitude aerial photographs or on annual crop-compliance slides taken by the USDA Farm Service Agency. Finally, on highly disturbed or problematic sites, direct hydrologic monitoring may be needed to determine whether wetland hydrology is present. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2005) provides a technical standard for monitoring hydrology on such sites. This standard requires 14 or more consecutive days of flooding, ponding, and/or a water table 12 in. (30 cm) or less below the soil surface, during the growing season, at a minimum frequency of 5 years in 10 (50 percent or higher probability) (National Research Council 1995) unless an alternative standard has been established for a particular region or wetland type. See Chapter 5 for further information on these techniques.

Growing season

Beginning and ending dates of the growing season may be needed to evaluate certain wetland indicators, such as visual observations of flooding, ponding, or shallow water tables on potential wetland sites. In addition, growing season dates are needed in the event that recorded hydrologic data, such as stream gauge or water-table monitoring data, must be analyzed to determine whether wetland hydrology is present on highly disturbed or problematic sites.

Depletion of oxygen and the chemical reduction of nitrogen, iron, and other elements in saturated soils during the growing season is the result of biological activity occurring in plant roots and soil microbial populations (National Research Council 1995). Two indicators of biological activity that are readily observable in the field are (1) above-ground growth and development of vascular plants, and (2) soil temperature as an indicator of soil microbial activity (Megonigal et al. 1996, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1999). If information about growing season is needed and on-site data gathering is practical, the following approaches should be used in this region to determine growing season dates in a given year. The growing season has begun and is ongoing if either of these conditions is met. Therefore, the beginning of the growing season in a given year is indicated by whichever condition occurs earlier, and the end of the growing season is indicated by whichever condition persists later.

1. The growing season has begun on a site in a given year when two or more different non-evergreen vascular plant species growing in the wetland or surrounding areas exhibit one or more of the following indicators of biological activity:

    a. Emergence of herbaceous plants from the ground

b. Appearance of new growth from vegetative crowns (e.g., in graminoids, bulbs, and corms)
c. Coleoptile/cotyledon emergence from seed
d. Bud burst on woody plants (i.e., some green foliage is visible between spreading bud scales)
e. Emergence or elongation of leaves of woody plants
f. Emergence or opening of flowers

The end of the growing season is indicated when woody deciduous species lose their leaves or the last herbaceous plants cease flowering and their leaves become dry or brown, whichever occurs latest. These changes generally take place in the fall due to cold temperatures or reduced moisture availability. Early plant senescence due to the initiation of the summer dry season in some areas does not necessarily indicate the end of the growing season and alternative procedures (e.g., soil temperature) should be used.

Determinations of the beginning or the end of the growing season should not include evergreen species, including such herbaceous species as *Polystichum acrostichoides* and *Lycopodium* spp. or deciduous species that retain their leaves into the winter (e.g., *Rhamnus cathartica*). Certain herbaceous plants, such as *Alliaria petiolata*, *Carex blanda*, *Geum canadense*, and *Hesperis matronalis*, have basal rosettes and lower stem leaves that retain chlorophyll and remain green throughout the year, including winter (Figure 31). The winter presence of green tissue in these species is not considered a vegetative signal that the growing season has begun. These types of herbaceous species do not indicate the beginning or end of the growing season. If limited to using these types of species, look for new growth from the vegetative crowns to meet the biological activity indicator.

Observations should be made in the wetland or in surrounding areas subject to the same climatic conditions (e.g., similar elevation and aspect); however, soil moisture conditions and plant communities may differ. Supporting data should be reported on the data form, in field notes, or in the delineation report, and should include the species observed (if identifiable), their abundance and location relative to the potential wetland, and type of biological activity observed. A one-time observation of biological activity during a single site visit is sufficient, but is not required unless growing season information is necessary to evaluate particular wetland hydrology indicators. However, if long-term hydrologic monitoring is planned, then plant growth, maintenance, and senescence should be monitored for continuity over the same period.

Figure 31. A caution in determining the start of the growing season using the "green up" indicator. Certain herbaceous species produce overwintering green leaves. An example is Dame's rocket (*Hesperis matronalis*) where the stem, stem leaves, and flowers die back at the end of the growing season, but a basal rosette of green leaves persists under the snowpack. The photograph above, which was taken immediately following the first exposure of the ground surface after snowmelt, illustrates this characteristic.

2. The growing season has begun in spring, and is still in progress, when soil temperature measured at 12 in. (30 cm) depth is 41 °F (5 °C) or higher. A one-time temperature measurement during a single site visit is sufficient, but is not required unless growing season information is necessary to evaluate particular wetland hydrology indicators. However, if long-term hydrologic monitoring is planned, then soil temperature should also be monitored to ensure that it remains continuously at or above 41 °F during the monitoring period. Soil temperature can be measured directly in the field by inserting a soil thermometer into the wall of a freshly dug soil pit. Measurements should be made in the wetland or in surrounding areas subject to the same climatic conditions (e.g., similar elevation and aspect); however, soil moisture conditions may differ.

If the timing of the growing season based on vegetation growth and development and/or soil temperature is unknown and on-site data collection is not practical, such as when analyzing previously recorded stream-gauge or monitoring-well data, then growing season dates may be approximated by the median dates (i.e., 5 years in 10, or 50 percent probability) of 28 °F (−2.2 °C) air temperatures in spring and fall, based on long-term records gathered at National Weather Service meteorological stations (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 2005). These dates are reported in WETS tables available from the NRCS National Water and Climate Center (http://www.wcc.nrcs.usda.gov/climate/wetlands.html) for the nearest appropriate weather station.

Wetland hydrology indicators

In this chapter, wetland hydrology indicators are presented in four groups. Indicators in Group A are based on the direct observation of surface water or groundwater during a site visit. Group B consists of evidence that the site is subject to flooding or ponding, although it may not be inundated currently. These indicators include water marks, drift deposits, sediment deposits, and similar features. Group C consists of other evidence that the soil is saturated currently or was saturated recently (e.g., oxidized rhizospheres surrounding living roots and the presence of reduced iron or sulfur in the soil profile). Group D consists of landscape, soil, and vegetation features that indicate contemporary rather than historical wet conditions. Wetland hydrology indicators are intended as one-time observations of site conditions that are sufficient evidence of wetland hydrology. Unless otherwise noted, all indicators are applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Within each group, indicators are divided into two categories – *primary* and *secondary* – based on their estimated reliability in this region. One primary indicator from any group is sufficient to conclude that wetland hydrology is present; the area is a wetland if indicators of hydric soil and hydrophytic vegetation are also present. In the absence of a primary indicator, two or more secondary indicators from any group are required to conclude that wetland hydrology is present. Indicators of wetland hydrology include, but are not necessarily limited to, those listed in Table 10 and described on the following pages. Other evidence of wetland hydrology may also be used with appropriate documentation.

Table 10. Wetland hydrology indicators for the Northcentral and Northeast Region

Indicator	Category	
	Primary	Secondary
Group A – Observation of Surface Water or Saturated Soils		
A1 – Surface water	X	
A2 – High water table	X	
A3 – Saturation	X	
Group B – Evidence of Recent Inundation		
B1 – Water marks	X	
B2 – Sediment deposits	X	
B3 – Drift deposits	X	
B4 – Algal mat or crust	X	
B5 – Iron deposits	X	
B7 – Inundation visible on aerial imagery	X	
B8 – Sparsely vegetated concave surface	X	
B9 – Water-stained leaves	X	
B13 – Aquatic fauna	X	
B15 – Marl deposits	X	
B6 – Surface soil cracks		X
B10 – Drainage patterns		X
B16 – Moss trim lines		X
Group C – Evidence of Current or Recent Soil Saturation		
C1 – Hydrogen sulfide odor	X	
C3 – Oxidized rhizospheres along living roots	X	
C4 – Presence of reduced iron	X	
C6 – Recent iron reduction in tilled soils	X	
C7 – Thin muck surface	X	
C2 – Dry-season water table		X
C8 – Crayfish burrows		X
C9 – Saturation visible on aerial imagery		X
Group D – Evidence from Other Site Conditions or Data		
D1 – Stunted or stressed plants		X
D2 – Geomorphic position		X
D3 – Shallow aquitard		X
D4 – Microtopographic relief		X
D5 – FAC-neutral test		X

In this supplement, wetland hydrology indicators that have depth requirements (e.g., indicator A2 – High Water Table) are evaluated from the mineral soil surface or the top of any organic soil layer, whichever is shallower. Organic layers consist of dead and decomposing plant matter. Therefore, observations should start below any living material (e.g., a living mat of mosses, lichens, etc.). The organic layer, if present, can be either saturated or unsaturated and of any thickness. Therefore, on some sites, the surface for hydric soil determinations (see Chapter 3) and wetland hydrology determinations may differ.

Group A – Observation of Surface Water or Saturated Soils

Indicator A1: Surface water

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of the direct, visual observation of surface water (flooding or ponding) during a site visit (Figure 32).

Cautions and User Notes: Care must be used in applying this indicator because surface water may be present in non-wetland areas immediately after a rainfall event or during periods of unusually high precipitation, runoff, tides, or river stages. Furthermore, some non-wetlands flood frequently for brief periods. Surface water observed during the non-growing season may be an acceptable indicator if experience and professional judgment suggest that wet conditions normally extend into the growing season for sufficient duration in most years. If this is questionable and other hydrology indicators are absent, a follow-up visit during the growing season may be needed. Water perched on seasonally frozen soil is included in this indicator if the resulting inundation is normally present well into the growing season. Note that surface water may be absent from a wetland during the normal dry season or during extended periods of drought. Even under normal rainfall conditions, some wetlands do not become inundated or saturated every year (i.e., wetlands are inundated or saturated at least 5 out of 10 years, or 50 percent or higher probability). In addition, groundwater-dominated wetland systems may never or rarely contain surface water.

Figure 32. Wetland with surface water present.

Indicator A2: High water table

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of the direct, visual observation of the water table 12 in. (30 cm) or less below the surface in a soil pit, auger hole, or shallow monitoring well (Figure 33). This indicator includes water tables derived from perched water, throughflow, and discharging groundwater (e.g., in seeps) that may be moving laterally near the soil surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Sufficient time must be allowed for water to infiltrate into a newly dug hole and to stabilize at the water-table level. The required time will vary depending upon soil texture. In some cases, the water table can be determined by examining the wall of the soil pit and identifying the upper level at which water is seeping into the pit. A water table within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface observed during the non-growing season may be an acceptable indicator if experience and professional

Figure 33. High water table observed in a soil pit.

judgment suggest that wet conditions normally extend into the growing season for sufficient duration in most years. If this is questionable and other hydrology indicators are absent, a follow-up visit during the growing season may be needed. Water perched on seasonally frozen soil is included in this indicator if the resulting high water table is normally present well into the growing season. Care must be used in interpreting this indicator because water-table levels normally vary seasonally and are a function of both recent and long-term precipitation. Even under normal rainfall conditions, some wetlands do not become inundated or saturated every year (i.e., wetlands are inundated or saturated at least 5 out of 10 years, or 50 percent or higher probability). For an accurate determination of the water-table level, the soil pit, auger hole, or well should not penetrate any restrictive soil layer capable of perching water near the surface.

Indicator A3: Saturation

Category: Primary

General Description: Visual observation of saturated soil conditions 12 in. (30 cm) or less from the soil surface as indicated by water glistening on the surfaces and broken interior faces of soil samples removed from the pit or auger hole (Figure 34). This indicator must be associated with an existing water table located immediately below the saturated zone; however, this requirement is waived under episaturated conditions if there is a restrictive soil layer or bedrock within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface.

Figure 34. Water glistens on the surface of a saturated soil sample.

Cautions and User Notes: Glistening is evidence that the soil sample was taken either below the water table or within the saturated capillary fringe above the water table. Recent rainfall events and the proximity of the water table at the time of sampling must be considered in applying and interpreting this indicator. Water observed in soil cracks or on the faces of soil aggregates (peds) does not meet this indicator unless ped interiors are also saturated. Depth to the water table must be recorded on the data form or in field notes. A water table is not required below the saturated zone under episaturated conditions if the restrictive layer or bedrock is present within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface. Note the restrictive layer in the soils section of the data form. The restrictive layer may be at the surface.

Group B – Evidence of Recent Inundation

Indicator B1: Water marks

Category: Primary

General Description: Water marks are discolorations or stains on the bark of woody vegetation, rocks, bridge supports, buildings, fences, or other fixed objects as a result of inundation (Figure 35).

Figure 35. Water marks (light-colored areas) on trees in a seasonally flooded wetland.

Cautions and User Notes: When several water marks are present, the highest reflects the maximum extent of inundation. Water marks indicate a water-level elevation and can be extrapolated from nearby objects across lower elevation areas. Water marks on different trees or other objects should form a level plane that can be viewed from one object to another. Use caution with water marks that may have been caused by extreme, infrequent, or very brief flooding events, or by flooding that occurred outside the growing season. In areas with altered hydrology, use care with relict water marks that may reflect the historic rather than the current hydrologic regime. In regulated systems, such as reservoirs, water-level records can be used to distinguish unusually high pools from normal operating levels. This indicator does not include lines caused by ice scour or abrasion, which are indicated by bark or tissue damage.

Indicator B2: Sediment deposits

Category: Primary

General Description: Sediment deposits are thin layers or coatings of fine-grained mineral material (e.g., silt or clay) or organic matter (e.g., pollen), sometimes mixed with other detritus, remaining on tree bark (Figure 36), plant stems or leaves, rocks, and other objects after surface water recedes.

Figure 36. Silt deposit left after a recent high-water event forms a tan coating on these tree trunks (upper edge indicated by the arrow).

Cautions and User Notes: Sediment deposits most often occur in riverine backwater and ponded situations and indicate where water has stood for sufficient time to allow suspended sediment to settle. The upper edge of the sediment deposit reflects a water-surface elevation that can be extrapolated across lower elevation areas. Sediment deposits may remain for considerable periods before being removed by precipitation or subsequent inundation. Use caution with sediment left after infrequent high flows or very brief flooding events, such as those caused by ice jams. This indicator does not include thick accumulations of sand or gravel in fluvial channels that may reflect historic flow conditions or recent extreme events. Use caution in areas where silt and other material trapped in the snowpack may be deposited directly on the ground surface during spring thaw.

Indicator B3: Drift deposits

Category: Primary

General Description: Drift deposits consist of rafted debris that has been deposited on the ground surface or entangled in vegetation or other fixed objects. Debris consists of remnants of vegetation (e.g., branches, stems, and leaves), man-made litter, or other waterborne materials. Drift material may be deposited at or near the high water line in ponded or flooded areas, piled against the upstream sides of trees, rocks, and other fixed objects (Figure 37), or widely distributed within the dewatered area.

Figure 37. Drift deposit on the upstream side of a sapling in a floodplain wetland.

Cautions and User Notes: Deposits of drift material are often found adjacent to streams or other sources of flowing water in wetlands. They also occur in tidal marshes, along lake shores, and in other ponded areas. The elevation of a drift line can be extrapolated across lower elevation areas. Use caution with drift lines that may have been caused by extreme, infrequent, or very brief flooding events, debris piles not related to flooding or ponding, and in areas with functioning drainage systems capable of removing excess water quickly.

Indicator B4: Algal mat or crust

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of a mat or dried crust of algae, perhaps mixed with other detritus, left on or near the soil surface after dewatering.

Cautions and User Notes: Algal deposits include but are not limited to those produced by green algae (Chlorophyta) and blue-green algae (cyanobacteria). They may be attached to low vegetation or other fixed objects, or may cover the soil surface (Figure 38). Dried crusts of blue-green algae may crack and curl at plate margins (Figure 39). Algal deposits are usually seen in seasonally ponded areas, lake fringes (e.g., *Cladophora* in the Great Lakes), tidal areas, and low-gradient stream margins. They reflect prolonged wet conditions sufficient for algal growth and development.

Figure 38. Dried algal deposit clinging to low vegetation.

Indicator B5: Iron deposits

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of a thin orange or yellow crust or gel of oxidized iron on the ground surface or on objects near the surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Iron deposits form in areas where reduced iron discharges with groundwater and oxidizes upon exposure to air. The oxidized iron forms a film or sheen on standing water and an orange or yellow deposit (Figures 40 and 41) on the ground surface or objects above the surface after dewatering.

Figure 39. Dried crust of blue-green algae on the soil surface.

Figure 40. Iron deposit (orange streaks) in a small channel.

Figure 41. At this site, ferrous iron moves with the groundwater from a cattail marsh to a shallow ditch, where it oxidizes when exposed to the air and forms an orange-colored iron deposit.

Indicator B7: Inundation visible on aerial imagery

Category: Primary

General Description: One or more recent aerial photographs or satellite images show the site to be inundated.

Cautions and User Notes: Care must be used in applying this indicator because surface water may be present on a non-wetland site immediately after a heavy rain or during periods of unusually high precipitation, runoff, tides, or river stages. See Chapter 5 for procedures to evaluate the normality of precipitation. Surface water observed during the non-growing season may be an acceptable indicator if experience and professional judgment suggest that wet conditions normally extend into the growing season for sufficient duration in most years. If this is questionable and other hydrology indicators are absent, additional photos or a site visit during the growing season may be needed. Surface water may be absent from a wetland during the normal dry season or during extended periods of drought. Even under normal rainfall conditions, some wetlands do not become inundated or saturated every year (i.e., wetlands are inundated or saturated at least 5 out of 10 years, or 50 percent or higher probability). It is recommended that multiple years of photography be evaluated. If 5 or more years of aerial photography are available, the procedure described by the USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (1997, section 650.1903) is recommended (see Chapter 5, section on Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology, for additional information). Record the date and source of the photography in the remarks section of the data form or in the delineation report.

Indicator B8: Sparsely vegetated concave surface

Category: Primary

General Description: On concave land surfaces (e.g., depressions and swales), the ground surface is either unvegetated or sparsely vegetated (less than 5 percent ground cover) due to long-duration ponding during the growing season (Figure 42).

Figure 42. A sparsely vegetated, seasonally ponded depression. Note the watermarks on trees.

Cautions and User Notes: Ponding during the growing season can limit the establishment and growth of ground-layer vegetation. Sparsely vegetated concave surfaces should contrast with vegetated slopes and convex surfaces in the same area. A woody overstory of trees or shrubs may or may not be present. Examples in the region include concave positions on floodplains, potholes, and seasonally ponded depressions in forested areas.

Indicator B9: Water-stained leaves

Category: Primary

General Description: Water-stained leaves are fallen or recumbent dead leaves that have turned grayish or blackish in color due to inundation for long periods.

Cautions and User Notes: Water-stained leaves are most often found in depressional wetlands (e.g., vernal pools) and along streams in shrub-dominated or forested habitats; however, they also occur in herbaceous communities. Staining often occurs in leaves that are in contact with the soil surface while inundated for long periods (Figure 43). Overlapping leaves may become matted together due to wetness and decomposition. Water-stained leaves maintain their blackish or grayish colors when dry. They should contrast strongly with fallen leaves in nearby non-wetland landscape positions.

Figure 43. Water-stained leaves in a seasonally ponded depression, with an unstained leaf (right center) for comparison.

Indicator B13: Aquatic fauna

Category: Primary

General Description: Presence of live individuals, diapausing insect eggs or crustacean cysts, or dead remains of aquatic fauna, such as, but not limited to, clams, aquatic snails, aquatic insects, ostracods, shrimp, other crustaceans, tadpoles, or fish, either on the soil surface or clinging to plants or other emergent objects.

Cautions and User Notes: Examples of dead remains include clam shells, chitinous exoskeletons, insect head capsules, aquatic snail shells (Figure 44), and skins or skeletons of aquatic amphibians or fish (Figure 45). Aquatic fauna or their remains should be reasonably abundant; one or two individuals are not sufficient. Use caution in areas where faunal remains may have been transported by high winds, unusually high water, or other animals into non-wetland areas. Shells and exoskeletons are resistant to tillage but may be moved by equipment beyond the boundaries of the wetland. They may also persist in the soil for years after dewatering.

Figure 44. Shells of aquatic snails in a seasonally ponded fringe wetland.

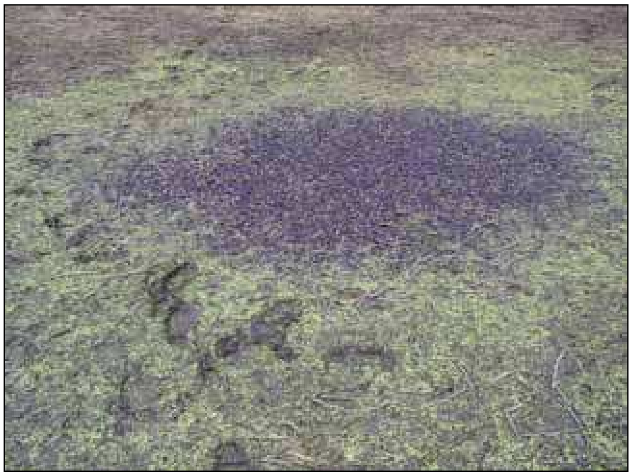



Figure 45. Dead green frogs (*Rana clamitans melanota*) in a drying seasonal pool.

Indicator B15: Marl deposits

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of the presence of marl on the soil surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Marl deposits consist mainly of calcium carbonate precipitated from standing or flowing water through the action of algae or diatoms. Marl appears as a tan or whitish deposit on the soil surface after dewatering (Figure 46) and may form thick deposits in some areas. Subsurface marl layers in some soils do not qualify for this indicator. Marl deposits are found mainly in calcareous fens, seeps, or white cedar swamps in areas underlain by limestone bedrock.

Indicator B6: Surface soil cracks

Category: Secondary

General Description: Surface soil cracks consist of shallow cracks that form when fine-grained mineral or organic sediments dry and shrink, often creating a network of cracks or small polygons (Figure 47).

Cautions and User Notes: Surface soil cracks are often seen in fine sediments and in areas where water has ponded long enough to destroy surface soil structure in depressions, lake fringes, and floodplains. Use caution, however, as they may also occur in temporary ponds and puddles

Figure 46. Marl deposit (tan-colored areas) and iron sheen in a calcareous fen.

Figure 47. Surface soil cracks in a seasonally ponded depression.

in non-wetlands and in areas that have been effectively drained. This indicator does not include deep cracks due to shrink-swell action in clay soils, such as those in the Lake Champlain Valley and in Vertisols.

Indicator B10: Drainage patterns

Category: Secondary

General Description: This indicator consists of flow patterns visible on the soil surface or eroded into the soil, low vegetation bent over in the direction of flow, absence of leaf litter or small woody debris due to flowing water, and similar evidence that water flowed across the ground surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Drainage patterns are usually seen in areas where water flows broadly over the surface and is not necessarily confined to a channel, such as in areas adjacent to streams, in seeps, and swales that convey surface water (Figures 48, 49, and 50). Use caution in areas subject to high winds or affected by recent unusual flooding events, and in vegetated swales in upland areas.

Figure 48. Drainage patterns seen during typical early spring flows in a forested wetland. The patterns are also evident when the wetland is dry.

Figure 49. Drainage patterns in a slope wetland.

Figure 50. Vegetation bent over in the direction of water flow across a stream terrace.

Indicator B16: Moss trim lines

Category: Secondary

General Description: Presence of moss trim lines on trees or other upright objects in seasonally inundated areas.

Cautions and User Notes: Moss trim lines (Figure 51) are formed when water-intolerant mosses growing on tree trunks and other upright objects are killed by prolonged inundation, forming an abrupt lower edge to the moss community at the high-water level (Carr et al. 2006). They are occasionally seen in floodplains and ponded areas throughout the region. Trim lines on different trees in the inundated area should indicate the same water-level elevation. The elevation of a trim line can be extrapolated across lower elevation areas in the vicinity. This indicator does not include lines caused by ice scour or abrasion, which are indicated by bark or tissue damage, and does not include trim lines in lichens which, due to slow regrowth, may reflect unusually high or infrequent flooding events. Certain species of aquatic mosses and liverworts are tolerant of long-duration inundation and occur on trees and other objects below the high-water level. Therefore, the lack of a trim line does not indicate that the site does not pond or flood.

Figure 51. Moss trim lines in a seasonally flooded wetland. Trim lines indicate a recent high-water level.

Group C – Evidence of Current or Recent Soil Saturation

Indicator C1: Hydrogen sulfide odor

Category: Primary

General Description: A hydrogen sulfide (rotten egg) odor within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Hydrogen sulfide is a gas produced by soil microbes in response to prolonged saturation in soils where oxygen, nitrogen, manganese, and iron have been largely reduced and there is a source of sulfur. For hydrogen sulfide to be detectable, the soil must be saturated at the time of sampling and must have been saturated long enough to become highly reduced. These soils are often permanently saturated and anaerobic at or near the surface. To apply this indicator, dig the soil pit no deeper than 12 in. to avoid release of hydrogen sulfide from deeper in the profile. Hydrogen sulfide odor serves as both an indicator of hydric soil and wetland hydrology. This single observation proves that the soil meets the definition of a hydric soil (i.e., anaerobic in the upper part), plus has an ongoing wetland hydrologic regime. Often these soils have a high water table (wetland hydrology indicator A2), but the hydrogen sulfide odor provides further proof that the soil has been saturated for a long period of time.

Indicator C3: Oxidized rhizospheres along living roots

Category: Primary

General Description: Presence of a layer of any thickness containing 2 percent or more iron-oxide coatings or plaques on the surfaces of living roots and/or iron-oxide coatings or linings on soil pores immediately surrounding living roots within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Oxidized rhizospheres are the result of oxygen leakage from living roots into the surrounding anoxic soil, causing oxidation of ferrous iron present in the soil solution. They are evidence of saturated and reduced soil conditions during the plant's lifetime. Iron concentrations or plaques may form on the immediate root surface or may coat the soil pore adjacent to the root (Figures 52 and 53). In either case, the oxidized iron must be associated with living roots to indicate

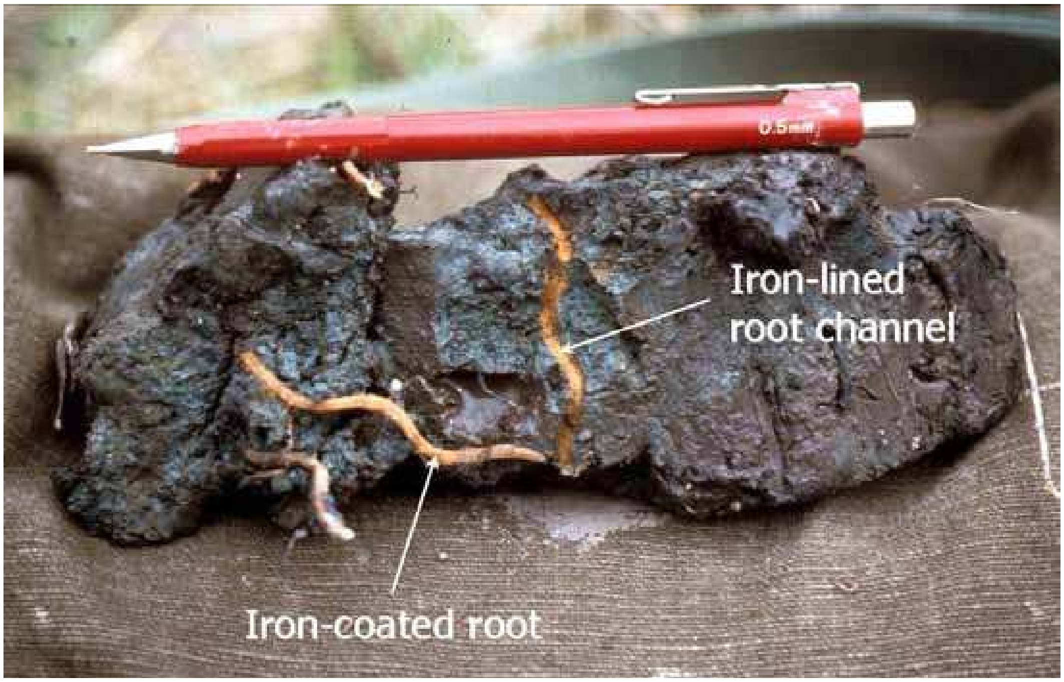


Figure 52. Iron-oxide plaque (orange coating) on a living root. Iron also coats the channel or pore from which the root was removed.

Figure 53. This soil has many oxidized rhizospheres associated with living roots.

contemporary wet conditions and to distinguish these features from other pore linings. Care must be taken to distinguish iron-oxide coatings from organic matter associated with plant roots. Viewing with a hand lens may help to distinguish mineral from organic material and to identify oxidized rhizospheres along fine roots and root hairs. Iron coatings sometimes show concentric layers in cross section and may transfer iron stains to the fingers when rubbed. Note the location and abundance of oxidized rhizospheres in the soil profile description or remarks section of the data form. There is no minimum thickness requirement for the layer containing oxidized rhizospheres. Oxidized rhizospheres must occupy at least 2 percent of the volume of the layer.

Indicator C4: Presence of reduced iron

Category: Primary

General Description: Presence of a layer containing reduced (ferrous) iron in the upper 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil profile, as indicated by a ferrous iron test or by the presence of a soil that changes color upon exposure to the air.

Cautions and User Notes: The reduction of iron occurs in soils that have been saturated long enough to become anaerobic and chemically reduced. Ferrous iron is converted to oxidized forms when saturation ends and the soil reverts to an aerobic state. Thus, the presence of ferrous iron indicates that the soil is saturated and/or anaerobic at the time of sampling. The presence of ferrous iron can be verified with alpha, alpha-dipyridyl reagent (Figure 54) or by observing a soil that changes color upon exposure to air (i.e., reduced matrix). A positive reaction to alpha, alpha-dipyridyl should occur over more than 50 percent of the soil layer in question. The reagent does not react when wetlands are dry; therefore, a negative test result is not evidence that the soil is not reduced at other times of year. Soil samples should be tested or examined immediately after opening the soil pit because ferrous iron may oxidize and colors change soon after the sample is exposed to the air. Avoid areas of the soil that may have been in contact with iron digging tools. Soils that contain little weatherable iron may not react even when saturated and reduced. There are no minimum thickness requirements or initial color requirements for the soil layer in question.

Figure 54. When alpha, alpha-dipyridyl is applied to a soil containing reduced iron, a positive reaction is indicated by a pink or red coloration to the treated area.

Indicator C6: Recent iron reduction in tilled soils

Category: Primary

General Description: Presence of a layer containing 2 percent or more redox concentrations as pore linings or soft masses in the tilled surface layer of soils cultivated within the last two years. The layer containing redox concentrations must be within the tilled zone or within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface, whichever is shallower.

Cautions and User Notes: Cultivation breaks up or destroys redox features in the plow zone. The presence of redox features that are continuous and unbroken indicates that the soil was saturated and reduced since the last episode of cultivation (Figure 55). Redox features often form around organic material, such as crop residue, incorporated into the tilled soil. Use caution with older features that may be broken up but not destroyed by tillage. Newly formed redox concentrations should have diffuse boundaries. The indicator is most reliable in areas that are cultivated regularly, so that soil aggregates and older redox features are more likely to be broken up. If not obvious, information about the timing of last cultivation may be available from the land owner, other knowledgeable

Figure 55. Redox concentrations in the tilled surface layer of a recently cultivated soil.

individuals, aerial photography, or the Farm Service Agency. A plow zone of 6 to 8 in. (15 to 20 cm) in depth is typical but may extend deeper. There is no minimum thickness requirement for the layer containing redox concentrations.

Indicator C7: Thin muck surface

Category: Primary

General Description: This indicator consists of a layer of muck 1 in. (2.5 cm) or less thick at the soil surface.

Cautions and User Notes: Muck is highly decomposed (i.e., sapric) organic material that is associated with wetness (see the Concepts section of Chapter 3 for guidance on identifying muck). In this region, muck accumulates where soils are saturated to the surface for long periods each year. A thin muck layer on the soil surface indicates an active wetland hydrologic regime because thin muck surfaces disappear quickly or become incorporated into mineral horizons when wetland hydrology is withdrawn. On the other hand, thick muck layers can persist for years after wetland hydrology is effectively removed, as in many drained muck soils that are used to grow vegetable crops throughout the region.

Although thick muck layers also occur in wetlands, a muck layer greater than 1 in. thick does not qualify for this indicator. Use caution in areas with folistic surface layers (see the Concepts section of Chapter 3).

Indicator C2: Dry-season water table

Category: Secondary

General Description: Visual observation of the water table between 12 and 24 in. (30 and 60 cm) below the surface during the normal dry season or during a drier-than-normal year.

Cautions and User Notes: Due to normal seasonal fluctuations, water tables in wetlands often drop below 12 in. during the summer dry season. A water table between 12 and 24 in. during the dry season, or during an unusually dry year, likely indicates a normal wet-season water table within 12 in. of the surface. Sufficient time must be allowed for water to infiltrate into a newly dug hole and to stabilize at the water-table level. The required time will vary depending upon soil texture. In some cases, the water table can be determined by examining the wall of the soil pit and identifying the upper level at which water is seeping into the pit. For an accurate determination of the water-table level, the soil pit, auger hole, or well should not penetrate any restrictive soil layer capable of perching water near the surface. Water tables in wetlands often drop well below 24 in. during dry periods. Therefore, a dry-season water table below 24 in. does not necessarily indicate a lack of wetland hydrology. See Chapter 5 (section on Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology) to determine average dry-season dates and drought periods. In the Remarks section of the data form or in a separate report, provide documentation for the conclusion that the site visit occurred during the normal dry season, recent rainfall has been below normal, or the area has been affected by drought. This indicator does not apply in agricultural areas that have controlled drainage structures for subsurface irrigation.

Indicator C8: Crayfish burrows

Category: Secondary

General Description: Presence of crayfish burrows, as indicated by openings in soft ground up to 2 in. (5 cm) in diameter, often surrounded by chimney-like mounds of excavated mud.

Cautions and User Notes: Crayfish breathe with gills and require at least periodic contact with water. Some species dig burrows for refuge and breeding (Figure 56). Crayfish burrows are usually found near streams, ditches, and ponds in areas that are seasonally inundated or have seasonal high water tables at or near the surface. They are also found in wet meadows and pastures where there is no open water. Crayfish may extend their burrows 10 ft (3 m) or more in depth to keep pace with a falling water table; thus, the eventual depth of the burrow does not reflect the level of the seasonal high water table.

Figure 56. Crayfish burrow in a saturated wetland.

Indicator C9: Saturation visible on aerial imagery

Category: Secondary

General Description: One or more recent aerial photographs or satellite images indicate soil saturation. Saturated soil signatures must correspond to field-verified hydric soils, depressions or drainage patterns, differential crop management, or other evidence of a seasonal high water table.

Cautions and User Notes: This indicator is useful when plant cover is sparse or absent and the ground surface is visible from above. Saturated areas generally appear as darker patches within the field (Figure 57).

Figure 57. Aerial photograph of an agricultural field with saturated soils indicated by darker colors.

Saturated areas are often more evident on color infrared imagery. Inundated (indicator B7) and saturated areas may be present in the same field; if they cannot be distinguished, then use indicator C9 for the entire wet area. Care must be used in applying this indicator because saturation may be present on a non-wetland site immediately after a heavy rain or during periods of abnormally high precipitation, runoff, or river stages. Saturation observed during the non-growing season may be an acceptable indicator if experience and professional judgment suggest that wet conditions normally extend into the growing season for sufficient duration in most years. If this is questionable and other hydrology indicators are absent, additional photos or a site visit during the growing season may be needed. Saturation may be absent from a wetland during the normal dry season or during extended periods of drought. Even under normal rainfall conditions, some wetlands do not become inundated or saturated every year (i.e., wetlands are inundated or saturated at least 5 out of 10 years, or 50 percent or higher probability). It is recommended that multiple years of photography be evaluated. If 5 or more years of aerial photography are available, the procedure described by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (1997, section 650.1903, and associated state wetland mapping conventions) is recommended in actively farmed areas. Use caution, as similar signatures may be caused by factors other than saturation. This indicator requires on-site verification that saturation signatures seen on photos correspond to hydric soils or other evidence of a seasonal high water table. This may be a useful tool for identifying the presence and location of subsurface drainage lines in current or former agricultural fields, and multiple years of photos may be helpful in evaluating the frequency and extent of soil saturation. This method may be inconclusive in areas with dark soil surfaces. Record the date and source of the photography in the Remarks section of the data form or in a separate report.

Group D – Evidence from Other Site Conditions or Data

Indicator D1: Stunted or stressed plants

Category: Secondary

General Description: This indicator is present if individuals of the same species growing in the potential wetland are clearly of smaller stature, less vigorous, or stressed compared with individuals growing in nearby non-wetland situations (Figures 58 and 59).

Cautions and User Notes: Some plant species can become established and grow in both wetlands and non-wetlands but may exhibit obvious stunting, yellowing, or stress in wet situations. This indicator is applicable to natural plant communities as well as agricultural crops and other introduced or planted vegetation. For this indicator to be present, a majority of individuals in the stand must be stunted or stressed. The comparison with

Figure 58. Stunted corn due to wet spots in an agricultural field in New Hampshire.

Figure 59. Black spruce in the wetland (foreground) are stressed and stunted compared with spruce in the adjacent areas (background).

individuals in non-wetland situations may be accomplished over a broad area and is not limited to the project site. Use caution in areas where stunting of plants on non-wetland sites may be caused by low soil fertility, excessively drained soils, cold temperatures, uneven application of agricultural chemicals, salinity, or other factors. In this region, this indicator is often seen in black spruce, red spruce, and balsam fir, as well as agricultural crops and other introduced or planted species.

Indicator D2: Geomorphic position

Category: Secondary

General Description: This indicator is present if the immediate area in question is located in a depression, drainageway, concave position within a floodplain, at the toe of a slope, on the low-elevation fringe of a pond or other water body, or in an area where groundwater discharges.

Cautions and User Notes: Excess water from precipitation and snowmelt naturally accumulates in certain geomorphic positions in the landscape, particularly in low-lying areas such as depressions, drainageways, toe slopes (Figure 6), and fringes of water bodies below any obvious terraces (Figure 60). These areas often, but not always, exhibit wetland hydrology. This indicator is not applicable in areas with functioning drainage systems and does not include concave positions on rapidly permeable soils (e.g., floodplains with sand and gravel substrates) that do not have wetland hydrology unless the water table is near the surface.

Figure 60. Fringes of water bodies, such as this estuarine fringe, are likely to exhibit wetland hydrology.

Indicator D3: Shallow aquitard

Category: Secondary

General Description: This indicator consists of the presence of an aquitard within 24 in. (60 cm) of the soil surface that is potentially capable of perching water within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface.

Cautions and User Notes: An aquitard is a relatively impermeable soil layer or bedrock that slows the downward infiltration of water, and can produce a perched water table. In some cases, the aquitard may be at the surface (e.g., in clay soils) and cause water to pond on the surface. Potential aquitards in this region include dense glacial till, lacustrine deposits, fragipans, iron-cemented layers (e.g., ortstein), and clay layers. An aquitard can often be identified by the limited root penetration through the layer and/or the presence of redoximorphic features in the layer(s) above the aquitard. Local experience and professional judgment should indicate that the perched water table is likely to occur during the growing season for sufficient duration in most years. Soil layers that are seasonally frozen do not qualify as aquitards unless they are observed to perch water for long periods during the growing season. Use caution in areas with functioning drainage systems that are capable of removing perched water quickly.

Indicator D4: Microtopographic Relief

Category: Secondary

General Description: This indicator consists of the presence of microtopographic features that occur in areas of seasonal inundation or shallow water tables, such as hummocks, tussocks, and flark-and-strang topography, with microhighs less than 36 in. (90 cm) above the base soil level (Figure 61).

Figure 61. This hemlock-dominated wetland has trees growing on hummocks and herbaceous plants growing in tussocks.

Cautions and User Notes: These features are the result of vegetative and geomorphic processes in wetlands and produce the characteristic microtopographic diversity of some wetland systems. Microtopographic lows are either inundated or have shallow water tables for long periods each year. Microtopographic highs may or may not have wetland hydrology, but usually are small, narrow, or fragmented, often occupying less than half of the surface area. If indicators of hydrophytic vegetation or hydric soil are absent from microhighs, see the procedure for wetland/non-wetland mosaics in Chapter 5. This indicator does not include uneven topography due to vegetation-covered rocks, logs, or other debris, or trampling by livestock.

Indicator D5: FAC-neutral test

Category: Secondary

General Description: The plant community passes the FAC-neutral test.

Cautions and User Notes: The FAC-neutral test is performed by compiling a list of dominant plant species across all strata in the community, and dropping from the list any species with a Facultative indicator status (i.e., FAC). The FAC-neutral test is met if more than 50 percent of the remaining dominant species are rated FACW and/or OBL. This indicator can be used in communities that contain no FAC dominants. If there are an equal number of dominants that are OBL and FACW versus FACU and UPL, or if all dominants are FAC, non-dominant species should be considered.

5 Difficult Wetland Situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region

Introduction

Some wetlands can be difficult to identify because wetland indicators may be missing due to natural processes or recent disturbances. This chapter provides guidance for making wetland determinations in difficult-to-identify wetland situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region. It includes regional examples of problem area wetlands and atypical situations as defined in the Corps Manual, as well as other situations that can make wetland delineation more challenging. Problem area wetlands are naturally occurring wetland types that lack indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soil, or wetland hydrology periodically due to normal seasonal or annual variability, or permanently due to the nature of the soils or plant species on the site. Atypical situations are wetlands in which vegetation, soil, and/or hydrology indicators are absent due to recent human activities or natural events. In addition, this chapter addresses certain procedural problems (e.g., wetland/non-wetland mosaics) that can make wetland determinations in the region difficult or confusing. The chapter is organized into the following sections:

- Lands Used for Agriculture and Silviculture
- Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation
- Problematic Hydric Soils
- Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology
- Wetland/Non-Wetland Mosaics

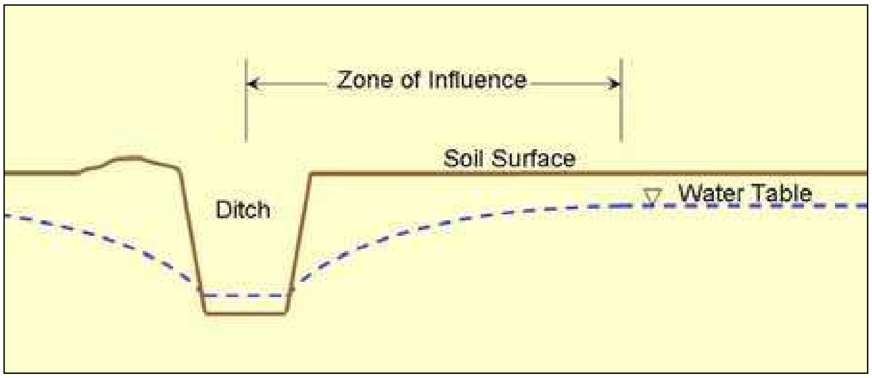
The list of difficult wetland situations presented in this chapter is not intended to be exhaustive and other problematic situations may exist in the region. See the Corps Manual for general guidance. Furthermore, more than one wetland factor (i.e., vegetation, soil, and/or hydrology) may be disturbed or problematic on a given site. In general, *wetland determinations on difficult or problematic sites must be based on the best information available to the field inspector, interpreted in light of his or her professional experience and knowledge of the ecology of wetlands in the region.*

Lands used for agriculture and silviculture

Agriculture and silviculture are important land uses in the Northcentral and Northeast Region, and both of these activities present challenges to wetland identification and delineation. Wetlands used for agriculture or silviculture often lack a natural plant community and may be planted to crops, pasture species, or desirable tree species and may be altered by mowing, grazing, herbicide use, or other management practices. Soils may be disturbed by cultivation, land clearing, grading, or bedding, at least in the surface layers, and hydrology may or may not be manipulated. Some areas that are used for agriculture or silviculture still retain wetland hydrology. In other areas, historic wetlands have been effectively drained and no longer meet wetland hydrology standards. Relict wetland indicators may still be present in these areas, making it difficult to distinguish current wetlands from those that have been effectively drained. In addition, agricultural activities can include improved groundwater management, involving the manipulation of water tables to conserve both water and nutrients (e.g., Frankenberger et al. 2006).

Agricultural and silvicultural drainage systems use ditches, subsurface drainage lines or "tiles," and water-control structures to manipulate the water table and improve conditions for crops or other desired species. A freely flowing ditch or drainage line depresses the water table within a certain lateral distance or zone of influence (Figure 62). The effectiveness of drainage in an area depends in part on soil characteristics, the timing and amount of rainfall, and the depth and spacing of ditches or drains. Wetland determinations on current and former agricultural or silvicultural lands must consider whether a drainage system is present, how it is designed to function, and whether it is effective in removing wetland hydrology from the area.

A number of information sources and tools are listed below to help determine whether wetlands are present on lands where vegetation, soils, hydrology, or a combination of these factors have been manipulated. Some of these options are discussed in more detail later in this chapter under the appropriate section headings.



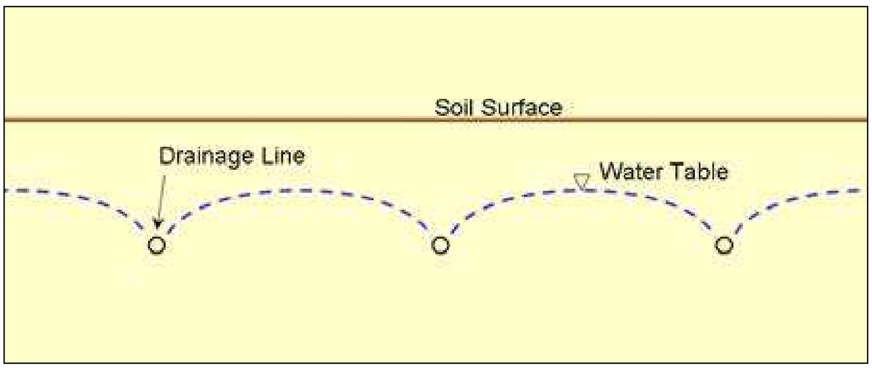


Figure 62. Effects of ditches (upper) and parallel subsurface drainage lines (lower) on the water table.

1. **Vegetation** – The goal is to determine the plant community that would occupy the site under normal circumstances, if the vegetation were not cleared or manipulated.

    a. Examine the site for volunteer vegetation that emerges between cultivations, plantings, mowings, or other treatments.
    b. Examine the vegetation on an undisturbed reference area with soils and hydrology similar to those on the site.
    c. Check NRCS soil survey reports for information on the typical vegetation on soil map units (hydrology of the site must be unaltered).
    d. If the conversion to agriculture or silviculture was recent and the hydrology of the site was not manipulated, examine pre-disturbance aerial photography, NWI maps, and other sources for information on the previous vegetation.
    e. Cease the clearing, cultivation, or manipulation of the site for one or more growing seasons with normal rainfall and examine the plant community that develops.

2. **Soils** – Tilling of agricultural land mixes the surface layer(s) of the soil and may cause compaction below the tilled zone (i.e., a "plow pan") due to the weight and repeated passage of farm machinery. Similar disturbance to surface soils may also occur in areas managed for silviculture. Nevertheless, a standard soil profile description and examination for hydric soil indicators are often sufficient to determine whether hydric soils are present. Other options and information sources include the following:

    a. Examine NRCS soil survey maps and the local hydric soils list for the likely presence of hydric soils on the site.
    b. Examine the soils on an undisturbed reference area with landscape position, parent materials, and hydrology similar to those on the site.
    c. Use alpha, alpha-dipyridyl reagent to check for the presence of reduced iron during the normal wet portion of the growing season, or note whether the soil changes color upon exposure to the air.
    d. Monitor the site in relation to the appropriate wetland hydrology or hydric soils technical standard.

3. **Hydrology** – The goal is to determine whether wetland hydrology is present on a managed site under normal circumstances, as defined in the Corps Manual and subsequent guidance. These sites may or may not have been hydrologically manipulated.

    a. Examine the site for existing indicators of wetland hydrology. If the natural hydrology of the site has been permanently altered, discount any indicators known to have been produced before the alteration (e.g., relict water marks or drift lines).
    b. In agricultural areas (e.g., row crops, hayfields, tree farms, nurseries, orchards, and others) examine five or more years of aerial photographs for wetness signatures listed in Part 513.30 of the National Food Security Act Manual (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1994) or in wetland mapping conventions available from NRCS offices or online in the electronic Field Office Technical Guide (eFOTG) (http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/efotg/). Use the procedure given by the USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (1997) to determine whether wetland hydrology is present.
    c. Estimate the effects of ditches and subsurface drainage systems using scope-and-effect equations (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997). A web application to analyze data using various models is available at http://www.wli.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/web_tool/tools_java.html.

Scope-and-effect equations are approximations only and may not reflect actual field conditions. Their results should be verified by comparison with other techniques for evaluating drainage and should not overrule onsite evidence of wetland hydrology.

d. Use state drainage guides to estimate the effectiveness of an existing drainage system (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997). Drainage guides may be available from NRCS offices. Cautions noted in item *c* above also apply to the use of drainage guides. In addition, Corps of Engineers district offices should be consulted for locally developed techniques to evaluate wetland drainage.
e. Use hydrologic models (e.g., runoff, surface water, and groundwater models) to determine whether wetland hydrology is present (e.g., USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997).
f. Monitor the hydrology of the site in relation to the appropriate wetland hydrology technical standard (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 2005).

Problematic hydrophytic vegetation

Description of the problem

Many factors affect the structure and composition of plant communities in the region, including climatic variability, spread of exotic species, agricultural and silvicultural use, and other human land-use practices. As a result, some wetlands may exhibit indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology but lack any of the hydrophytic vegetation indicators presented in Chapter 2, at least at certain times. To identify and delineate these wetlands may require special sampling procedures or additional analysis of factors affecting the site. To the extent possible, the hydrophytic vegetation decision should be based on the plant community that is normally present during the wet portion of the growing season in a normal rainfall year. The following procedure addresses several examples of problematic vegetation situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region.

Procedure

Problematic hydrophytic vegetation can be identified using a combination of observations made in the field and/or supplemental information from the scientific literature and other sources. These procedures should be applied only where indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present, unless one or both of these factors is also disturbed or problematic, but no indicators of hydrophytic vegetation are evident. The following procedures are recommended:

1. Verify that at least one indicator of hydric soil and one primary or two secondary indicators of wetland hydrology are present. If indicators of either hydric soil or wetland hydrology are absent, the area is likely non-wetland unless soil and/or hydrology are also disturbed or problematic. If indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present (or are absent due to disturbance or other problem situations), proceed to step 2.

2. Verify that the area is in a landscape position that is likely to collect or concentrate water. If the landscape setting is appropriate, proceed to step 3. Appropriate settings include the following.

    a. Concave surface (e.g., depression or swale)
    b. Active floodplain or low terrace
    c. Level or nearly level area (e.g., 0- to 3-percent slope)
    d. Toe slope (Figure 6) or an area of convergent slopes (Figure 5)
    e. Fringe of another wetland or water body
    f. Area with a restrictive soil layer or aquitard within 24 in. (60 cm) of the surface
    g. Area where groundwater discharges (e.g., a seep)
    h. Other (explain in field notes why this area is likely to be inundated or saturated for long periods)

3. Use one or more of the approaches described in step 4 (Specific Problematic Vegetation Situations below) or step 5 (General Approaches to Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation on page 131) to determine whether the vegetation is hydrophytic. In the remarks section of the data form or in the delineation report, explain the rationale for concluding that the plant community is hydrophytic even though indicators of hydrophytic vegetation described in Chapter 2 were not observed.

4. Specific Problematic Vegetation Situations

    a. *Temporal shifts in vegetation*. As described in Chapter 2, the species composition of some wetland plant communities in the region can change in response to seasonal weather patterns and long-term climatic fluctuations. Wetland types that are influenced by these shifts include Great Lakes coastal wetlands, vernal pools, interdunal swales, wet meadows, wet prairies, seeps, and springs. Lack of hydrophytic vegetation during the dry season, when FACU and UPL warm-season grasses and annuals dominate many areas, should not immediately eliminate a site from consideration as a wetland, because the site may have been dominated by wetland species earlier in the growing season. A site qualifies for further consideration if the plant community at the time of sampling does not exhibit hydrophytic vegetation indicators, but indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present or known to be disturbed or problematic. The following sampling and analytical approaches are recommended in these situations:

(1) Seasonal Shifts in Plant Communities

(a) If possible, return to the site during the normal wet portion of the growing season (generally in early spring) and re-examine the site for indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.
(b) Examine the site for identifiable plant remains, either alive or dead, or other evidence that the plant community that was present during the normal wet portion of the growing season was hydrophytic.
(c) Use off-site data sources to determine whether the plant community that is normally present during the wet portion of the growing season is hydrophytic. Appropriate data sources include early growing season aerial photography, NWI maps, soil survey reports, remotely sensed data, public interviews, state wetland conservation plans, and previous reports about the site. If necessary, re-examine the site early in the growing season to verify the hydrophytic vegetation determination.
(d) If the vegetation on the site is substantially the same as that on a wetland reference site having similar soils, landscape position, and known wetland hydrology, then consider the vegetation to be hydrophytic (see step *5c* in this procedure for more information).
(e) If the hydrophytic status of the vegetation during the normal wet portion of the growing season in a normal rainfall year cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

(2) Prolonged Dry to Drought Conditions (lasting more than one growing season)

(a) Investigate climate records (e.g., WETS tables, drought indices) to determine if the area is under the influence of a drought or prolonged dry conditions (for more information, see the section on Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology later in this chapter). If so, evaluate any off-site data that provide information on the plant community that exists on the site during normal years, including aerial photography, Farm Service Agency annual crop slides, NWI maps, other remote sensing data, soil survey reports, public interviews, NRCS hydrology tools (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997), and previous site reports. Determine whether the vegetation that is present during normal years is hydrophytic.
(b) If the vegetation on the affected site is substantially the same as that on a wetland reference site in the same general area having similar soils and known wetland hydrology, then consider the vegetation to be hydrophytic (see step *5c* in this procedure).
(c) If the hydrophytic status of the vegetation during the normal wet portion of the growing season in a normal rainfall year cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

(3) Long-Term Fluctuations in Lake Levels. Water levels in lakes and ponds rise and fall depending upon annual precipitation patterns. These changes may induce short- or long-term shifts in fringing vegetation depending upon the duration of the wet or dry conditions. The Great Lakes have experienced significant periodic fluctuations in water levels since the early part of the twentieth century. During years with high lake levels, large areas of coastal vegetation may be inundated and converted to open water. During periods with low lake levels, some fringe wetlands may dry out and their vegetation may shift to non-hydrophytic plant communities. Similar vegetation changes may be observed on a smaller scale around the margins of other lakes and ponds across the North-central and Northeast Region (Tiner 2005). To determine the plant community that is present during normal lake levels, the following approaches are recommended.

(a) Determine whether water levels have been higher or lower than the long-term average by examining current and historical water-level data, such as those available for the Great Lakes from the Corps of Engineers Detroit District (http://www.lre.usace.army.mil/greatlakes/hh/greatlakeswaterlevels/). If water levels have been appreciably higher or lower than average for two or more consecutive years, examine off-site data sources to determine whether the plant community that is present on the site during years with normal lake levels is hydrophytic. Appropriate data sources include early growing-season aerial photography taken during normal years, NWI maps, soil survey reports, other remotely sensed data, interviews with the land owner and other knowledgeable people, state wetland conservation plans, and previous reports about the site.

(b) Examine the existing vegetation on the site, emphasizing long-lived woody and other perennial plant species. Discount annual and other short-lived species that may have become established during the period of unusually high or low lake levels.

(c) If the vegetation on the site is substantially the same as that on a wetland reference site on the same lake having similar soils, landscape position, and known wetland hydrology, then consider the vegetation to be hydrophytic (see step *5c* in this procedure for more information).

(d) If the hydrophytic status of the vegetation during years with normal lake levels cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

b. *Vernal pools*. Vernal pools are small, seasonal water bodies that pond water from the time of snowmelt into early to mid-summer. They are common throughout the glaciated Northcentral and Northeast Region, although most remaining pools are located in forested settings. The pools may be situated within wetlands or non-wetlands. They are characterized by vernal-pool-specific fauna, particularly amphibians and invertebrates that require the pools to complete their life cycles (Colburn 2004). The vegetation in and around these pools is influenced by the seasonal hydrology. During the early part of the growing season, they may lack herbaceous vegetation due to inundation and it may be necessary to base the hydrophytic vegetation decision solely on woody plants. Where woody vegetation is lacking, herbaceous vegetation should be examined later in the growing season. In pools that retain water for very long periods, vegetation may not become well established even during drier periods. During the driest times of the year, or in drought years, some pools become dominated by upland plants, particularly annuals. The following approaches are recommended for evaluating vernal pools where indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present, but hydrophytic vegetation is not evident at the time of the site visit.

(1) If the pool is filled with water at the time of the visit, emergent vegetation is absent, and a follow-up site visit is practical, then return to the site soon after seasonal draw-down and check for indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.

(2) If the site is visited during the dry season, vegetation in the potential pool area is dominated by upland species (particularly annuals), and a follow-up site visit is practical, then revisit the site during the normal wet portion of the growing season and check again for indicators of hydrophytic vegetation.

(3) If the hydrophytic status of the vegetation during the normal wet portion of the growing season in a normal rainfall year cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

c. *Areas affected by grazing*. Both short- and long-term grazing can cause shifts in dominant species in the vegetation. For instance, trampling by large herbivores can cause soil compaction, altering soil permeability and infiltration rates, and affecting the plant community. Grazers can also influence the abundance of plant species by selectively grazing certain palatable species or avoiding less palatable species. This shift in species composition due to grazing can influence the hydrophytic vegetation determination. Be aware that shifts in both directions, favoring either wetland species or upland species, can occur in these situations. Limited grazing does not necessarily affect the outcome of a hydrophytic vegetation decision. However, the following approaches are recommended in cases where the effects of grazing are so great that the hydrophytic vegetation determination would be unreliable or misleading.

(1) Examine the vegetation on a nearby, ungrazed reference site having similar soils and hydrologic conditions. Ungrazed areas may be present on adjacent properties or in fenced exclosures or streamside management zones. Assume that the same plant community would exist on the grazed site, in the absence of grazing.

(2) If feasible, remove livestock or fence representative livestock exclusion areas to allow the vegetation time to recover from grazing, and reevaluate the vegetation during the next growing season.

(3) If grazing was initiated recently, use offsite data sources such as aerial photography, NWI maps, and interviews with the land owner and other persons familiar with the site or area to determine what plant community was present on the site before grazing began. If the previously ungrazed community was hydrophytic, then consider the current vegetation to be hydrophytic.

(4) If an appropriate ungrazed area cannot be located or if the ungrazed vegetation condition cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soils and wetland hydrology.

d. *Managed plant communities*. Natural plant communities throughout the region have been replaced with agricultural crops or are otherwise managed to meet human goals. Examples include clearing of woody species on grazed pasture land; periodic disking, plowing, or mowing; planting of native and non-native species (including cultivars or planted species that have escaped and become established on other sites); use of herbicides; silvicultural activities; and suppression of wildfires. These actions can result in elimination of certain species and their replacement with other species, changes in abundance of certain plants, and shifts in dominant species, possibly influencing a hydrophytic vegetation determination. The following approaches are recommended if the natural vegetation has been altered through management to such an extent that a hydrophytic vegetation determination is not possible or would be unreliable:

(1) Examine the vegetation on a nearby, unmanaged reference site having similar soils and hydrologic conditions. Assume that the same plant community would exist on the managed site in the

absence of human alteration.

(2) For recently cleared or tilled areas (not planted or seeded), leave representative areas unmanaged for at least one growing season with normal rainfall and reevaluate the vegetation.

(3) If management was initiated recently, use offsite data sources such as aerial photography, NWI maps, and interviews with the land owner and other persons familiar with the area to determine what plant community was present on the site before the management occurred.

(4) If the unmanaged vegetation condition cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

e. *Areas affected by fires, floods, and other natural disturbances*. Fires, floods, and other natural disturbances can dramatically alter the vegetation on a site. Vegetation can be completely or partially removed, or its composition altered, depending upon the intensity of the disturbance. Limited disturbance does not necessarily affect the investigator's ability to determine whether the plant community is or is not hydrophytic. However, if the vegetation on a site has been removed or made unidentifiable by a recent fire, flood, or other disturbance, then one or more of the following approaches may be used to determine whether the vegetation present before the disturbance was hydrophytic. Additional guidance can be found in Part IV, Section F (Atypical Situations) of the Corps Manual.

(1) Examine the vegetation on a nearby, undisturbed reference site having similar soils and hydrologic conditions. Assume that the same plant community would exist on the disturbed site in the absence of disturbance.

(2) Use offsite data sources such as aerial photography, NWI maps, and interviews with knowledgeable people to determine what plant community was present on the site before the disturbance.

(3) If the undisturbed vegetation condition cannot be determined, make the wetland determination based on indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology.

f. *Areas dominated exclusively by non-vascular plants*. In areas that lack vascular plants but are dominated by peat mosses (e.g., *Sphagnum* spp.), the vegetation should be considered to be hydrophytic if indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present, the landscape position is appropriate for wetlands, and hydrology has not been altered.

5. General Approaches to Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation. The following general procedures are provided to identify hydrophytic vegetation in difficult situations not necessarily associated with specific vegetation types or management practices, including wetlands dominated by FACU, NI, NO, or unlisted species that are functioning as hydrophytes. The following recommended approaches should be applied only where indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present (or are absent due to disturbance or other problem situations) and the landscape position is appropriate to collect or concentrate water, but indicators of hydrophytic vegetation are not evident.

a. *FACU species that commonly dominate wetlands*. The following FACU species occur in and dominate many wetlands in the Northcentral and Northeast Region and may cause a wetland plant community to fail to meet any of the hydrophytic vegetation indicators described in Chapter 2: eastern hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis*), eastern white pine (*Pinus strobus*), red spruce (*Picea rubens*), pitch pine (*Pinus rigida*), Virginia creeper (*Parthenocissus quinquefolia*), springbeauty (*Claytonia virginica*), and the following non-native species: common buckthorn (*Rhamnus cathartica*), multiflora rose (*Rosa multiflora*), tartarian honeysuckle (*Lonicera tatarica*), and Morrow's honeysuckle (*L. morrowii*) (indicator statuses may vary by plant list region). If the potential wetland area lacks hydrophytic vegetation indicators due to the presence of one or more of the FACU species listed above, use the following procedure to make the hydrophytic vegetation determination:

(1) At each sampling point in the potential wetland, drop any FACU species listed above from the vegetation data, and compile the species list and coverage data for the remaining species in the community.

(2) Reevaluate the remaining vegetation using hydrophytic vegetation indicators 2 (Dominance Test) and/or 3 (Prevalence Index). If either indicator is met, then the vegetation is hydrophytic.

b. *Direct hydrologic observations*. Verify that the plant community occurs in an area subject to prolonged inundation or soil saturation during the growing season. This can be done by visiting the site at 2- to 3-day intervals during the portion of the growing season when surface water is most likely to be present or water tables are normally high. Hydrophytic vegetation is considered to be present, and the site is a wetland, if surface water is present and/or the water table is 12 in. (30 cm) or less from the surface for 14 or more consecutive days during the growing season during a period when antecedent precipitation has been normal or drier than normal. If necessary, microtopographic highs and lows should be evaluated separately. The normality of the current year's rainfall must be considered in interpreting field results, as well as the likelihood that wet conditions will occur on the site at least every other year (for more information, see the section on "Wetlands that Periodically Lack Indicators of Wetland Hydrology" in this chapter).

c. *Reference sites with known hydrology*. If indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology are present, the site may be considered to be a wetland if the landscape setting, topography, soils, and vegetation are substantially the same as those on nearby wetland reference areas whose hydrology is known. Hydrologic characteristics of wetland reference areas should be documented through long-term monitoring or by application of the procedure described in item *5b* above. Reference sites should be minimally disturbed and provide long-term access. Soils, vegetation, and hydrologic conditions should be thoroughly documented and the data kept on file in the district or field office.

d. *Technical literature*. Published and unpublished scientific literature may be used to support a decision to treat specific FACU species or species with no assigned indicator status (e.g., NI, NO, or unlisted) as hydrophytes or certain plant communities as hydrophytic. Preferably, this literature should discuss the species' natural distribution along the moisture gradient, its capabilities and adaptations for life in wetlands, wetland types in which it is typically found, or other wetland species with which it is commonly associated.

Problematic hydric soils

Description of the problem

Soils with faint or no indicators

Some soils that meet the hydric soil definition may not exhibit any of the indicators presented in Chapter 3. These problematic hydric soils exist for a number of reasons and their proper identification requires additional information, such as landscape position, presence or absence of restrictive soil layers, or information about hydrology. This section describes several soil situations in the Northcentral and Northeast Region that are considered to be hydric if additional requirements are met. In some cases, these hydric soils may appear to be non-hydric due to the color of the parent material from which the soils developed. In others, the lack of hydric soil indicators is due to conditions (e.g., red parent materials) that inhibit the development of redoximorphic features despite prolonged soil saturation and anoxia. In addition, recently developed wetlands may lack hydric soil indicators because insufficient time has passed for their development. Examples of problematic hydric soils in the region include, but are not limited to, the following.

1. **Sandy Soils.** The development of hydric soil indicators can be inhibited in some sandy soils due to low iron or manganese content and/or low organic-matter content. To help identify the hydric soil boundary, examine soils in obvious wetland and non-wetland locations to determine what features to look for in soil profiles near the boundary. Use caution in areas where soil disturbances, such as plowing, may have brought red or black soil material from below to create what appear to be redoximorphic features near the surface.
2. **Red Parent Materials.** Soils derived from red parent materials are a challenge for hydric soil identification because the red, iron-rich materials contain minerals that are resistant to weathering and chemical reduction under anaerobic conditions. This inhibits the formation of redoximorphic features and typical hydric soil morphology. These soils are found in scattered locations throughout the region in areas of Mesozoic geologic materials or alluvium derived from these formations, including the Great Lakes region and river valleys in Connecticut and Massachusetts. A transect sampling approach can be helpful in making a hydric soil determination in soils derived from red parent materials. This involves describing the soil profile in an obvious non-wetland location and an

obvious wetland location to identify particular soil features that are related to the wetness gradient. Relevant features may include a change in soil matrix chroma (e.g., from 4 to 3) or the presence of redox depletions or reddish-black manganese concentrations. Hydric soil indicators F8 (Redox Depressions), F12 (Iron-Manganese Masses), and F21 (Red Parent Material) may be useful in identifying hydric soils in areas with red parent materials.

3. **Dark Parent Materials.** These soils formed in dark-colored (gray and black) parent materials derived from carboniferous and phyllitic bedrock. They occur in the Narragansett Basin of Rhode Island, parts of south-eastern and western Massachusetts, throughout Vermont, and in extreme western New Hampshire. The inherited soil colors commonly are low chroma and low value, making it difficult to assess soil wetness using conventional morphological indicators. Low-chroma colors, depleted matrices, and redox depletions typically are masked by the dark mineralogy. Some features may be observable under magnification (Stolt et al. 2001).
4. **Fluvial Deposits within Floodplains.** These soils commonly occur on vegetated bars within the active channel and above the bankfull level of rivers and streams. In some cases, these soils lack hydric soil indicators due to seasonal or annual deposition of new soil material, low iron or manganese content, and/or low organic-matter content. Redox concentrations can sometimes be found between soil stratifications in areas where organic matter gets buried, such as along the fringes of floodplains.
5. **Recently Developed Wetlands.** Recently developed wetlands include mitigation sites, wetland management areas (e.g., for waterfowl), other wetlands intentionally or unintentionally produced by human activities, and naturally occurring wetlands that have not been in place long enough to develop hydric soil indicators.
6. **Seasonally Ponded Soils.** Seasonally ponded, depressional wetlands occur throughout the region. Many are perched systems with water ponding above a restrictive soil layer, such as a hardpan or clay layer that is at or near the surface. Ponded depressions also occur in floodplains where receding floodwaters, precipitation, and local runoff are held above a slowly permeable soil layer. Some of these wetlands lack hydric soil indicators due to the limited saturation depth.
7. **Wet Soils with High-Chroma Subsoils.** Several problematic soil situations occur in the region that result in the formation and persistence of high-chroma, wet soils. For example, in the oak openings region of Ohio, Indiana, and Michigan, along the interface between LRRs L and M,

some wetlands lack hydric soil indicators due to high-chroma subsoils (often a chroma of 4 or more) beneath a surface layer that may or may not exhibit hydric soil indicators. These soils formed in sandy beach deposits that originated along ancient lake shores during the Pleistocene period. Surface soil textures are often fine sands, fine sandy loams, and loamy fine sands. Underlying dense glacial till slows the infiltration of snowmelt and spring rainfall, causing water to perch for long periods within the sandy deposits above. Wind erosion in the oak openings can also transport soil material and bury natural soil horizons.

In addition, along the shorelines of the Great Lakes within LRRs L and K, some wetlands lack hydric soil indicators due to the presence of high-chroma sands (often a chroma of 3 or more). These high-chroma, sandy soils occur at the landward edge of coastal marshes, in interdunal wetlands, and in dune-and-swale complexes. They do not meet a hydric soil indicator due to matrix chromas greater than 2. These soils often exhibit redox concentrations as pore linings and/or soft masses within 12 in. (30 cm) of the surface. In adjacent upland areas, redox concentrations are absent or are only observed at depth. It may be helpful to involve a soil scientist or wetland scientist familiar with these problem soils.

8. **Discharge Areas for Iron-Enriched Groundwater.** Discharge of iron-enriched groundwater occurs in many locations throughout the region. The seasonal input of iron from the groundwater produces soil chromas generally greater than 3 and as high as 6 below the surface layer(s). These soils are usually found in seepage areas in glacial till, such as in areas with converging slopes or near-surface stratigraphic discontinuities. They can also occur on foot or toe slopes associated with sandy parent materials. Investigators should look for redox concentrations and depletions in the layer with high chroma and a depleted matrix below the layer of iron concentration. Wetland hydrology indicator B5 (Iron Deposits) can help to identify the presence of this problem soil (Figure 63).

Soils with relict hydric soil indicators

Some soils in the region exhibit redoximorphic features and hydric soil indicators that formed in the recent or distant past when conditions may have been wetter than they are today. These features have persisted even though wetland hydrology may no longer be present. Examples include soils associated with abandoned river courses and areas adjacent to deeply incised stream channels. In addition, wetlands drained for agricultural

Figure 63. Red areas in this photograph are iron deposits on the soil surface that are a result of high iron concentrations in the groundwater.

purposes starting in the 1800s may contain persistent hydric soil features. Wetland soils drained during historic times are still considered to be hydric but may lack the hydrology to support wetlands. Relict hydric soil features may be difficult to distinguish from contemporary features. However, if indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are present, then hydric soil indicators can be assumed to be contemporary.

Non-hydric soils that may be misinterpreted as hydric

In well-drained and aerated soils, iron translocation is also a normal process. Infiltrating water from precipitation or snowmelt moves downward through the soil profile and, together with organic acids derived from the litter layer, leaches or washes iron from the mineral layers near the surface. The iron moves downward in solution and accumulates in lower layers. As the near-surface layers are continually leached, their colors become similar to those of redox depletions. The accumulation of iron in the lower horizons may result in colors similar to redox concentrations. This coloration is most pronounced in Spodosols.

Spodosols are a common soil order in the Northcentral and Northeast Region. They form in relatively acidic soil materials and can be either hydric or non-hydric. In Spodosols, organic carbon, iron, and aluminum are leached from a layer near the soil surface. This layer, known as the E horizon, has a bleached light-gray appearance and consists of relatively clean particles of sand and silt. The materials leached from the E horizon are deposited lower in the soil in the spodic horizon (e.g., Bhs or Bs horizon). If sufficient iron has been leached and redeposited, the spodic horizon will have a strong reddish color. In some Spodosols, E-horizon and spodic-horizon colors can be confused with the redox depletions and concentrations produced under anaerobic soil conditions. Normally, E horizons and spodic horizons are present in the soil in relatively continuous horizontal bands. Chemical weathering in an aerated soil is accomplished by the downward movement of water; therefore, the layers or horizons are relatively parallel to the soil surface and consistent across the soil. Transitions are relatively abrupt between the organic-enriched surface, the leached E horizon, and the iron-enriched B horizon. Below the B horizon, the transition becomes more gradual as the red hue of the iron-enriched B horizon gradually changes to the yellower hue of the underlying C horizon. However, if E horizons are thin or there are extensive plant roots, they may be discontinuous. Tree throw can also mix and break the horizons of aerated upland soils, so care should be taken to examine all site characteristics before concluding that a soil is hydric.

Generally, non-hydric Spodosols occur in the more mountainous portions of the region where temperatures are cooler. They tend to have thin, white-colored E horizons and spodic horizons that are less than 1 in. (2.5 cm) thick and not cemented. Hydric Spodosols are generally sandy in texture, have thicker gray-colored E horizons, and cemented spodic horizons (ortstein) that are greater than 1 in. (2.5 cm) thick.

Procedure

Soils that are thought to meet the definition of a hydric soil but do not exhibit any of the indicators described in Chapter 3 can be identified by the following recommended procedure. This procedure should be used only where indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology are present (or are absent due to disturbance or other problem situations), but indicators of hydric soil are not evident.

1. Verify that one or more indicators of hydrophytic vegetation are present or that vegetation is problematic or has been altered (e.g., by tillage or other land alteration). If so, proceed to step 2.

2. Verify that at least one primary or two secondary indicators of wetland hydrology are present or that indicators are absent due to disturbance or other factors. If so, proceed to step 3. If indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and/or wetland hydrology are absent, then the area is probably nonwetland and no further analysis is required.
3. Thoroughly describe and document the soil profile and landscape setting. Verify that the area is in a landscape position that is likely to collect or concentrate water. If the landscape setting is appropriate, proceed to step 4. Appropriate settings include the following.

    a. Concave surface (e.g., depression or swale)
    b. Active floodplain or low terrace
    c. Level or nearly level area (e.g., 0- to 3-percent slope)
    d. Toe slope (Figure 6) or an area of convergent slopes (Figure 5)
    e. Fringe of another wetland or water body
    f. Area with a restrictive soil layer or aquitard within 24 in. (60 cm) of the surface
    g. Area where groundwater discharges (e.g., a seep)
    h. Other (explain in field notes why this area is likely to be inundated or saturated for long periods)

4. Use one or more of the following approaches to determine whether the soil is hydric. In the remarks section of the data form or in the delineation report, explain why it is believed that the soil lacks any of the NTCHS hydric soil indicators described in Chapter 3 and why it is believed that the soil meets the definition of a hydric soil.

    a. Determine whether one or more of the following indicators of problematic hydric soils is present. See the descriptions of each indicator given in Chapter 3. If one or more indicators are present, then the soil is hydric.

        (1) 2 cm Muck (A10) (applicable to LRR K, L, and MLRA 149B of LRR S)
        (2) Coast Prairie Redox (A16) (applicable to LRR K, L, and R)
        (3) 5 cm Mucky Peat or Peat (S3) (applicable to LRR K, L, and R)
        (4) Dark Surface (S7) (applicable to LRR K, L, and M)
        (5) Polyvalue Below Surface (S8) (applicable to LRR K and L)
        (6) Thin Dark Surface (S9) (applicable to LRR K and L)
        (7) Iron-Manganese Masses (F12) (applicable to LRR K, L, and R)

(8) Piedmont Floodplain Soils (F19) (applicable to MLRA 149B of LRR S)
(9) Mesic Spodic (TA6) (applicable to MLRAs 144A and 145 of LRR R and MLRA 149B of LRR S)
(10) Red Parent Material (F21) (applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region in areas containing soils derived from red parent materials)
(11) Very Shallow Dark Surface (TF12) (applicable throughout the Northcentral and Northeast Region)

b. Determine whether one or more of the following problematic soil situations is present. If present, consider the soil to be hydric.

(1) Sandy Soils
(2) Red Parent Materials
(3) Dark Parent Materials
(4) Fluvial Deposits within Floodplains
(5) Recently Developed Wetlands
(6) Seasonally Ponded Soils
(7) Wet Soils with High-Chroma Subsoils
(8) Discharge Areas for Iron-Enriched Groundwater
(9) Other (in field notes, describe the problematic soil situation and explain why it is believed that the soil meets the hydric soil definition)

c. Soils that have been saturated for long periods and have become chemically reduced may change color when exposed to air due to the rapid oxidation of ferrous iron (Fe^{2+}) to Fe^{3+} (i.e., a reduced matrix) (Figures 64 and 65). If the soil contains sufficient iron, this can result in an observable color change, especially in hue or chroma. The soil is hydric if a mineral layer 4 in. (10 cm) or more thick starting within 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface that has a matrix value of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less becomes redder by one or more pages in hue and/or increases one or more in chroma when exposed to air within 30 minutes (Vepraskas 1992).

Care must be taken to obtain an accurate color of the soil sample immediately upon excavation. The colors should be observed closely and examined again after several minutes. Do not allow the sample to become dry. Dry soils will usually have a different color than wet or moist soils. As always, do not attempt to determine colors while wearing sunglasses or tinted lenses. Colors must be determined in the field under natural light and not under artificial light.

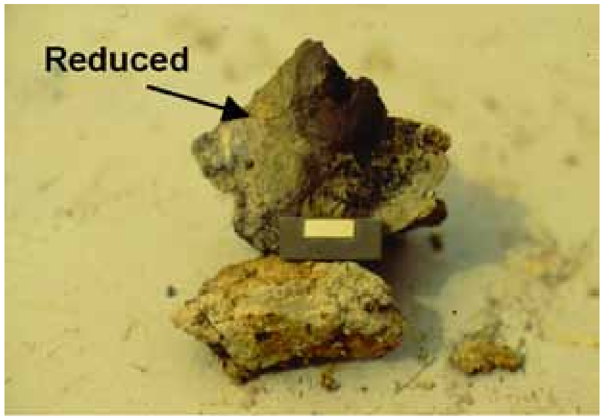


Figure 64. This soil exhibits colors associated with reducing conditions. Scale is 1 cm.

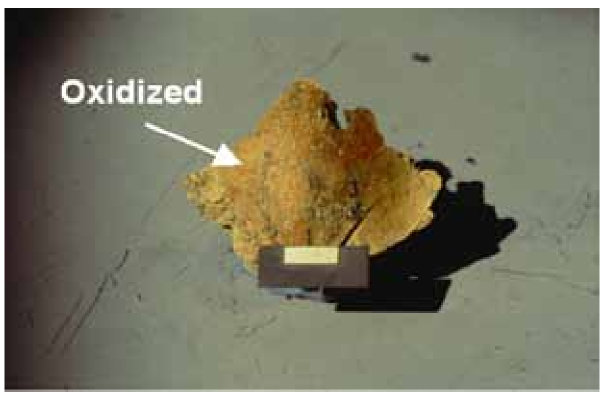


Figure 65. The same soil as in Figure 63 after exposure to the air and oxidation has occurred.

d. If the soil is saturated at the time of sampling, alpha, alpha-dipyridyl reagent can be used in the following procedure to determine if reduced (ferrous) iron is present. If ferrous iron is present as described below, then the soil is hydric.

   Alpha, alpha-dipyridyl is a reagent that reacts with reduced iron. In some cases, it can be used to provide evidence that a soil is hydric when it lacks other hydric soil indicators. The soil is likely to be hydric if application of alpha, alpha-dipyridyl to mineral soil material in at least 60 percent of a layer at least 4 in. (10 cm) thick within a depth of 12 in. (30 cm) of the soil surface results in a positive reaction within 30 seconds evidenced by a pink or red coloration to the reagent during the growing season.

Using a dropper, apply a small amount of reagent to a freshly broken ped face to avoid any chance of a false positive test due to iron contamination from digging tools. Look closely at the treated soil for evidence of color change. If in doubt, apply the reagent to a sample of known upland soil and compare the reaction to the sample of interest. A positive reaction will not occur in soils that lack iron and may not occur in soils with high pH. The lack of a positive reaction to the reagent does not preclude the presence of a hydric soil. Specific information about the use of alpha, alpha-dipyridyl can be found in NRCS Hydric Soils Technical Note 8 (http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/ntchs/tech_notes/index.html).

e. Using gauge data, water-table monitoring data, or repeated direct hydrologic observations, determine whether the soil is ponded or flooded, or the water table is 12 in. (30 cm) or less from the surface, for 14 or more consecutive days during the growing season in most years (at least 5 years in 10, or 50 percent or higher probability) (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 2005). If so, then the soil is hydric. Furthermore, any soil that meets the NTCHS hydric soil technical standard (NRCS Hydric Soils Technical Note 11, http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/ntchs/tech_notes/index.html) is hydric.

Wetlands that periodically lack indicators of wetland hydrology

Description of the problem

Wetlands are areas that are flooded or ponded, or have soils that are saturated with water, for long periods during the growing season in most years. If the site is visited during a time of normal precipitation amounts and it is inundated or the water table is near the surface, then the wetland hydrology determination is straight forward. During the dry season, however, surface water recedes from wetland margins, water tables drop, and many wetlands dry out completely. Superimposed on this seasonal cycle is a long-term pattern of multi-year droughts alternating with years of higher-than-average rainfall. Wetlands in general are inundated or saturated at least 5 years in 10 (50 percent or higher probability) over a long-term record. However, some wetlands in the Northcentral and Northeast Region do not become inundated or saturated in some years and, during drought cycles or prolonged dry conditions, may not inundate or saturate for several years in a row.

Wetland hydrology determinations are based on indicators, many of which were designed to be used during dry periods when the direct observation of surface water or a shallow water table is not possible. However, some wetlands may lack any of the listed hydrology indicators, particularly during the dry season or in a dry year. Examples in the region include vernal pools and potholes, floodplain wetlands, flatwoods, interdunal swales, wet prairies, sedge meadows, and other wet meadows. The evaluation of wetland hydrology requires special care on any site where indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soil are present but hydrology indicators appear to be absent. Among other factors, this evaluation should consider the timing of the site visit in relation to normal seasonal and annual hydrologic variability, and whether the amount of rainfall prior to the site visit has been normal. This section describes a number of approaches that can be used to determine whether wetland hydrology is present on sites where indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soil are present but hydrology indicators may be lacking due to normal variations in rainfall or runoff, human activities that destroy hydrology indicators, and other factors.

Procedure

1. Verify that indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soil are present, or are absent due to disturbance or other problem situations. If so, proceed to step 2.
2. Verify that the site is in a landscape position that is likely to collect or concentrate water. If the landscape setting is appropriate, proceed to step 3. Appropriate settings are listed below.

    a. Concave surface (e.g., depression or swale)
    b. Active floodplain or low terrace
    c. Level or nearly level area (e.g., 0- to 3-percent slope)
    d. Toe slope (Figure 6) or an area of convergent slopes (Figure 5)
    e. Fringe of another wetland or water body
    f. Area with a restrictive soil layer or aquitard within 24 in. (60 cm) of the surface
    g. Area where groundwater discharges (e.g., a seep)
    h. Other (explain in field notes why this area is likely to be inundated or saturated for long periods)

3. Use one or more of the following approaches to determine whether wetland hydrology is present and the site is a wetland. In the remarks section

of the data form or in the delineation report, explain the rationale for concluding that wetland hydrology is present even though indicators of wetland hydrology described in Chapter 4 were not observed.

a. *Site visits during the dry season*. Determine whether the site visit occurred during the normal annual "dry season." The dry season, as used in this supplement, is the period of the year when soil moisture is normally being depleted and water tables are falling to low levels in response to decreased precipitation and/or increased evapotranspiration, usually during late spring and summer. It also includes the beginning of the recovery period in late summer or fall. The Web-Based Water-Budget Interactive Modeling Program (WebWIMP) is one source for approximate dates of wet and dry seasons for any terrestrial location based on average monthly precipitation and estimated evapotranspiration (http://climate.geog.udel.edu/~wimp/). In general, the dry season in a typical year is indicated when potential evapotranspiration exceeds precipitation (indicated by negative values of DIFF in the WebWIMP output), resulting in drawdown of soil moisture storage (negative values of DST) and/or a moisture deficit (positive values of DEF, also called the unmet atmospheric demand for moisture). Actual dates for the dry season vary by locale and year.

   In many wetlands, direct observation of flooding, ponding, or a shallow water table would be unexpected during the dry season. Wetland hydrology indicators, if present, would most likely be limited to indirect evidence, such as water marks, drift deposits, or surface cracks. In some situations, hydrology indicators may be absent during the dry season. If the site visit occurred during the dry season on a site that contains hydric soils and hydrophytic vegetation and no significant hydrologic manipulation (e.g., no dams, levees, water diversions, land grading, etc., and the site is not within the zone of influence of any ditches or subsurface drains), then consider the site to be a wetland. If necessary, revisit the site during the normal wet season and check again for the presence or absence of wetland hydrology indicators, or use one or more of the following evaluation methods.

b. *Periods with below-normal rainfall*. Determine whether the amount of rainfall that occurred in the 2 to 3 months preceding the site visit was normal, above normal, or below normal based on the normal range reported in WETS tables. WETS tables are provided by the

NRCS National Water and Climate Center (http://www.wcc.nrcs.usda.gov/climate/wetlands.html) and are calculated from long-term (30-year) weather records gathered at National Weather Service meteorological stations. To determine whether precipitation was normal prior to the site visit, actual rainfall in the current month and previous 2 to 3 months should be compared with the normal ranges for each month given in the WETS table (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997, Sprecher and Warne 2000). The lower and upper limits of the normal range are indicated by the columns labeled "30% chance will have less than" and "30% chance will have more than" in the WETS table. The USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (1997, Section 650.1903) also gives a procedure that can be used to weight the information from each month and determine whether the entire period was normal, wet, or dry.

When precipitation has been below normal, wetlands may not flood, pond, or develop shallow water tables even during the typical wet portion of the growing season and may not exhibit other indicators of wetland hydrology. Therefore, if precipitation was below normal prior to the site visit, and the site contains hydric soils and hydrophytic vegetation and no significant hydrologic manipulation (e.g., no dams, levees, water diversions, land grading, etc., and the site is not within the zone of influence of any ditches or subsurface drains), then consider the site to be a wetland. If necessary, revisit the site during a period of normal rainfall and check again for hydrology indicators, or use one or more of the other evaluation methods described in this section.

c. *Drought years*. Determine whether the area has been subject to drought. Drought periods can be identified by comparing annual rainfall totals with the normal range of annual rainfall given in WETS tables or by examining trends in drought indices, such as the Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) (Sprecher and Warne 2000). PDSI takes into account not only precipitation but also temperature, which affects evapotranspiration, and soil moisture conditions. The index is usually calculated on a monthly basis for major climatic divisions within each state. Therefore, the information is not site-specific. PDSI ranges potentially between –6 and +6 with negative values indicating dry periods and positive values indicating wet periods. An index of -1.0 indicates mild drought, –2.0 indicates moderate drought, -3.0 indicates severe drought, and –4.0 indicates extreme drought.

Time-series plots of PDSI values by month or year are available from the National Climatic Data Center at (http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/oa/climate/onlineprod/drought/xmgr.html#ds). If wetland hydrology indicators appear to be absent on a site that has hydrophytic vegetation and hydric soils, no significant hydrologic manipulation (e.g., no dams, levees, water diversions, land grading, etc., and the site is not within the zone of influence of any ditches or subsurface drains), and the region has been affected by drought, then consider the site to be a wetland. If necessary, revisit the site during a normal rainfall year and check again for wetland hydrology indicators, or use one or more of the other methods described in this section.

d. *Reference sites*. If indicators of hydric soil and hydrophytic vegetation are present on a site that lacks wetland hydrology indicators, the site may be considered to be a wetland if the landscape setting, topography, soils, and vegetation are substantially the same as those on nearby wetland reference areas with known hydrology. Hydrology of wetland reference areas should be documented through long-term monitoring (see item *g* below) or by application of the procedure described in item *5b* on page 132 (Direct Hydrologic Observations) of the procedure for Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation in this chapter. Reference sites should be minimally disturbed and provide long-term access. Soils, vegetation, and hydrologic conditions should be thoroughly documented and the data kept on file in the District or field office.

e. *Hydrology tools*. The “Hydrology Tools” (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997) is a collection of methods that can be used to determine whether wetland hydrology is present on a potential wetland site that lacks indicators due to disturbance or other reasons, particularly on lands used for agriculture. Generally they require additional information, such as aerial photographs or stream-gauge data, or involve hydrologic modeling and approximation techniques. These methods are not intended to overrule an indicator-based wetland determination on a site that is not disturbed or problematic. A hydrologist may be needed to help select and carry out the proper analysis. The seven hydrology tools are used to:

(1) Analyze stream and lake gauge data

(2) Estimate runoff volumes and determine duration and frequency of ponding in depressional areas, based on precipitation and temperature data, soil characteristics, land cover, and other inputs
(3) Evaluate the frequency of wetness signatures on repeated aerial photography (see item *f* below for additional information)
(4) Model water-table fluctuations in fields with parallel drainage systems using the DRAINMOD model
(5) Estimate the "scope and effect" of ditches or subsurface drain lines
(6) Use NRCS state drainage guides to estimate the effectiveness of agricultural drainage systems
(7) Analyze data from groundwater monitoring wells (see item *g* below for additional information)

f. *Evaluating multiple years of aerial photography*. Each year, the Farm Service Agency (FSA) takes low-level aerial photographs in agricultural areas to monitor the acreages planted in various crops for USDA programs. NRCS has developed an off-site procedure that uses these photos, or repeated aerial photography from other sources, to make wetland hydrology determinations (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1997, Section 650.1903). The method is intended for use on agricultural lands where human activity has altered or destroyed other wetland indicators. However, the same approach may be useful in other environments.

The procedure uses five or more years of growing-season photography and evaluates each photo for wetness signatures that are listed in "wetland mapping conventions" developed by NRCS state offices. Wetland mapping conventions can be found in the electronic Field Office Technical Guide (eFOTG) for each state (http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/efotg/). From the national web site, choose the appropriate state, then select any county (the state's wetland mapping conventions are the same in every county). Wetland mapping conventions are listed among the references in Section I of the eFOTG. However, not all states have wetland mapping conventions.

Wetness signatures for a particular state may include surface water, saturated soils, flooded or drowned-out crops, stressed crops due to wetness, differences in vegetation patterns due to different planting dates, inclusion of wet areas into set-aside programs, unharvested crops, isolated areas that are not farmed with the rest of the field, patches of greener vegetation during dry periods, and other evidence of wet conditions (see Part 513.30 of USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 1994). For each photo, the procedure described in item *b* above is used to determine whether the amount of rainfall in the 2 to 3 months prior to the date of the photo was normal, below normal, or above normal. Only photos taken in normal rainfall years, or an equal number of wetter-than-normal and drier-than-normal years, are used in the analysis. If wetness signatures are observed on photos in more than half of the years included in the analysis, then wetland hydrology is present. Data forms that may be used to document the wetland hydrology determination are given in section 650.1903 of USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (1997).

g. *Long-term hydrologic monitoring*. On sites where the hydrology has been manipulated by man (e.g., with ditches, subsurface drains, dams, levees, water diversions, land grading) or where natural events (e.g., downcutting of streams) have altered conditions such that hydrology indicators may be missing or misleading, direct monitoring of surface and groundwater may be needed to determine the presence or absence of wetland hydrology. The U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (2005) provides minimum standards for the design, construction, and installation of water-table monitoring wells, and for the collection and interpretation of groundwater monitoring data, in cases where direct hydrologic measurements are needed to determine whether wetlands are present on highly disturbed or problematic sites. This standard calls for 14 or more consecutive days of flooding, ponding, or a water table 12 in. (30 cm) or less below the soil surface during the growing season at a minimum frequency of 5 years in 10 (50 percent or higher probability), unless a different standard has been established for a particular geographic area or wetland type. A disturbed or problematic site that meets this standard has wetland hydrology. This standard is not intended (1) to overrule an indicator-based wetland determination on a site that is not disturbed or problematic, or (2) to test or validate existing or proposed wetland indicators.

Wetland/non-wetland mosaics

Description of the problem

In this supplement, "mosaic" refers to a landscape where wetland and non-wetland components are too closely associated to be easily delineated or mapped separately. These areas often have complex microtopography, with repeated small changes in elevation occurring over short distances. Tops of ridges and hummocks are often non-wetland but are interspersed throughout a wetland matrix having clearly hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology. Potential examples of wetland/non-wetland mosaics in the Northcentral and Northeast Region include ridge-and-swale topography on floodplains; dune-and-swale systems near the Great Lakes and Atlantic coast; current and former flatwoods, such as those on the Lake Superior clay plain in northeastern Minnesota and northern Wisconsin; areas that exhibit bedding from agricultural or silvicultural operations; areas containing numerous vernal pools; and areas where wind-thrown trees have created pit-and-mound or cradle/knoll topography.

Wetland components of a mosaic are often not difficult to identify. The problem for the wetland delineator is that microtopographic features are too small and intermingled, and there are too many such features per acre, to delineate and map them accurately. Instead, the following sampling approach can be used to estimate the percentage of wetland in the mosaic. From this, the number of acres of wetland on the site can be calculated, if needed.

Procedure

First, identify and flag all contiguous areas of either wetland or non-wetland on the site that are large enough to be delineated and mapped separately. The remaining area should be mapped as "wetland/non-wetland mosaic" and the approximate percentage of wetland within the area determined by the following procedure.

1. Establish one or more continuous line transects across the mosaic area, as needed. Measure the total length of each transect. A convenient method is to stretch a measuring tape along the transect and leave it in place while sampling. If the site is shaped appropriately and multiple transects are used, they should be arranged in parallel with each transect starting from a random point along one edge of the site. However, other arrangements of transects may be needed for oddly shaped sites.
2. Use separate data forms for the swales or troughs and for the ridges or hummocks. Sampling of vegetation, soil, and hydrology should follow the general procedures described in the Corps Manual and this supplement. Plot sizes and shapes for vegetation sampling must be adjusted to fit the microtopographic features on the site. Plots intended to sample the

troughs should not overlap adjacent hummocks, and vice versa. Only one or two data forms are required for each microtopographic position, and do not need to be repeated for similar features or plant communities.

3. Identify every wetland boundary in every trough or swale encountered along each transect. Each boundary location may be marked with a pin flag or simply recorded as a distance along the stretched tape.
4. Determine the total distance along each transect that is occupied by wetlands and non-wetlands until the entire length of the line has been accounted for. Sum these distances across transects, if needed. Determine the percentage of wetland in the wetland/non-wetland mosaic by the following formula.

$$\%\ wetland = \frac{Total\ wetland\ distance\ along\ all\ transects}{Total\ length\ of\ all\ transects} \times 100$$

An alternative approach involves point-intercept sampling at fixed intervals along transects across the area designated as wetland/non-wetland mosaic. This method avoids the need to identify wetland boundaries in each swale, and can be carried out by pacing rather than stretching a measuring tape across the site. The investigator uses a compass or other means to follow the selected transect line. At a fixed number of paces (e.g., every two steps) the wetland status of that point is determined by observing indicators of hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soil, and wetland hydrology. Again, a completed data form is not required at every point but at least one representative swale and hummock should be documented with completed forms. After all transects have been sampled, the result is a number of wetland sampling points and a number of non-wetland points. Estimate the percentage of wetland in the wetland/non-wetland mosaic by the following formula:

$$\%\ wetland = \frac{Number\ of\ wetland\ points\ along\ all\ transects}{Total\ number\ of\ points\ sampled\ along\ all\ transects} \times 100$$

If high-quality aerial photography is available for the site, a third approach to estimating the percentage of wetland in a wetland/non-wetland mosaic is to use a dot grid, planimeter, or geographic information system (GIS) to determine the percentage of ridges (non-wetlands) and swales (wetlands) through photo interpretation of topography and vegetation patterns. This technique requires onsite verification that most ridges qualify as non-wetlands and most swales qualify as wetlands.

References

Bailey, R. G. 1995. *Description of the ecoregions of the United States, second edition*. Miscellaneous Publication 1391 (revised). Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. (http://www.fs.fed.us/land/ecosysmgmt/ecoreg1_home.html)

Barbour, M. G., and W. D. Billings, eds. 1988. *North American terrestrial vegetation*. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press.

Barbour, M. G., J. H. Burk, W. D. Pitts, F. S. Gilliam, and M. W. Schwartz. 1999. *Terrestrial plant ecology, 3rd edition*. Toronto, Canada: Addison Wesley.

Barkley, T. M., ed. 1986. *Flora of the Great Plains*. Lawrence, KS: University Press of Kansas.

Braun, E. L. 1950. *Deciduous forests of eastern North America*. Philadelphia, PA: Blakiston.

Brohman, R. J., and L. D. Bryant, eds. 2005. *Existing vegetation classification and mapping technical guide, version 1.0*. General Technical Report WO-67. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.

Carr, D. W., D. A. Leeper, and T. F. Rochow. 2006. Comparison of six biologic indicators of hydrology and the landward extent of hydric soils in west-central Florida, USA, cypress domes. *Wetlands* 26:1012–1019.

Colburn, E. A. 2004. *Vernal pools: Natural history and conservation*. Blacksburg, VA: McDonald and Woodward.

Cox, G. 1990. *Laboratory manual of general ecology, sixth edition*. Dubuque, IA: William C. Brown.

Curtis, J. 1971. *The vegetation of Wisconsin*. Madison, WI: University of Wisconsin Press.

Davis, M. B. 1981. Quaternary history and the stability of forest communities. In *Forest succession: Concepts and application,* ed. D. C. West, H. H. Shugart, and D. B. Botkin, 132–153. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Eggers, S., and D. Reed. 1997. *Wetland plants and plant communities of Minnesota and Wisconsin*. St. Paul, MN: St. Paul District, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

Embleton, C., and C. A. M. King. 1968. *Glacial and periglacial geomorphology*. New York, NY: St. Martin's Press.

Environmental Laboratory. 1987. *Corps of Engineers wetlands delineation manual*. Technical Report Y-87-1. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station. (http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/wetlands/pdfs/wlman87.pdf)

Foster, D. R., and G. A. King. 1984. Landscape features, vegetation and developmental history of a patterned fen in south-eastern Labrador, Canada. *Journal of Ecology* 72: 115-143.

Frankenberger, J., E. Kladivko, G. Sands, D. Jaynes, N. Fausey, M. Helmers, R. Cooke, J. Strock, K. Nelson, and L. Brown. 2006. *Questions and answers about drainage water management for the Midwest*. Report WQ-44. West Lafayette, IN: Purdue University Cooperative Extension Service. (http://www.ces.purdue.edu/extmedia/WQ/WQ-44.pdf)

Freeze, R. A. and J. A. Cherry. 1979. *Groundwater*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Gretag/Macbeth. 2000. *Munsell® color*. New Windsor, NY.

Johnson, C. 1985. *Bogs of the Northeast*. Hanover, NH: University Press of New England.

Kent, M., and P. Coker. 1992. Vegetation description and analysis: A practical approach. New York, NY: Wiley.

Maine Geological Survey. 2005. *Surficial geologic history of Maine*. Augusta, ME. http://maine.gov/doc/nrimc/mgs/explore/surficial/facts/surficial.htm; accessed 9 May 2008.

Martini, I. P., M. E. Brookfield, and S. Sadura. 2001. *Principles of glacial geomorphology and geology*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Megonigal, J. P., S. P. Faulkner, and W. H. Patrick. 1996. The microbial activity season in southeastern hydric soils. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 60:1263–1266.

Metzler, K., and R. W. Tiner. 1992. *Wetlands of Connecticut*. Report of Investigations No. 13. Hartford, CT: State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut, Department of Environmental Protection.

Minnesota Department of Natural Resources. 2003. *Field guide to the native plant communities of Minnesota: The Laurentian mixed forest province*. St. Paul, MN: Ecological Land Classification Program, Minnesota County Biological Survey, and Natural Heritage and Nongame Research Program.

Mueller-Dombois, D., and H. Ellenberg. 1974. *Aims and methods of vegetation ecology*. New York, NY: Wiley.

National Research Council. 1995. *Wetlands: Characteristics and boundaries*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Rabenhorst, M.C. and S. Parikh. 2000. Propensity of soils to develop redoximorphic color changes. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 64:1904-1910.

Reed, P. B., Jr. 1988. *National list of plant species that occur in wetlands: 1988 national summary*. Biological Report 88(24). Washington, DC: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. (http://www.usace.army.mil/CECW/Documents/cecwo/reg/plants/list88.pdf)

Reschke, C. 1990. *Ecological communities of New York State*. Latham, NY: New York State Natural Heritage Program, Department of Environmental Conservation.

Russell, E. W. B. 1983. Indian-set fires in the forests of the northeastern United States. *Ecology* 64:78–88.

Sperduto, D. D. 2005. *Natural community systems of New Hampshire*. Concord, NH: New Hampshire Natural Heritage Bureau and The Nature Conservancy.

Sprecher, S. W., and A. G. Warne. 2000. *Accessing and using meteorological data to evaluate wetland hydrology*. ERDC/EL TR-WRAP-00-1. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center. (http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/elpubs/pdf/wrap00-1/wrap00-1.pdf)

Stein, B. A., L. S. Kutner, and J. S. Adams. 2000. *Precious heritage: The status of biodiversity in the United States*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Stolt, M. H., B. C. Lesinski, and W. Wright. 2001. Micromorphology of seasonally saturated soils in carboniferous glacial till. *Soil Science* 166:406–414.

Stone, J., and G. M. Ashley. 1992. Ice-wedge casts, pingo scars, and the drainage of glacial Lake Hitchcock. In *84th annual meeting of the New England intercollegiate geological conference: Guidebook for field trips in the Connecticut Valley region of Massachusetts and adjacent states*, 305–331. Amherst, MA: University of Massachusetts, Department of Geology and Geography.

Stuckey, R. L., and T. M. Barkley. 1993. Weeds in North America. Vol. 1, Chapter 8 in *Flora of North America north of Mexico,* ed. Flora of North America Editorial Committee. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Tiner, R. W. 1989. *Wetlands of Rhode Island*. Newton Corner, MA: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Northeast Region.

Tiner, R. W. 1999. *Wetland indicators: A guide to wetland identification, delineation, classification, and mapping*. Boca Raton, FL: Lewis Publishers.

Tiner, R. W. 2005. *In search of swampland: A wetland sourcebook and field guide, second edition*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press.

Tiner, R. W. 2008. *Field guide to tidal wetland plants of the northeastern United States and neighboring Canada*. Amherst, MA: University of Massachusetts Press.

U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2005. *Technical standard for water-table monitoring of potential wetland sites*. ERDC TN-WRAP-05-02. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center. (http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/wrap/pdf/tnwrap05-2.pdf)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 1994. *National food security act manual, third edition* (as amended). Washington, DC. (http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/programs/compliance/index.html)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 1997. *Hydrology tools for wetland determination*. Chapter 19, Engineering Field Handbook. Fort Worth, TX: U.S. Department of Agriculture. (http://policy.nrcs.usda.gov/OpenNonWebContent.aspx?content=17556.wba)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 1999. *Soil taxonomy: A basic system of soil classification for making and interpreting soil surveys*. Agriculture Handbook 436. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture. (http://soils.usda.gov/technical/classification/taxonomy/)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 2002. *Field book for describing and sampling soils, version 2.0*. ed. P. J. Schoeneberger, D. A. Wysocki, E. C. Benham, and W. D. Broderson. Lincoln, NE: National Soil Survey Center. (http://soils.usda.gov/technical/fieldbook/)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 2005. *National soil survey handbook, part 629, glossary*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture. (ftp://ftp-fc.sc.egov.usda.gov/NSSC/Soil_Survey_Handbook/629_glossary.pdf)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 2006. *Land resource regions and major land resource areas of the United States, the Caribbean, and the Pacific Basin*. Agriculture Handbook 296. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture. (http://soils.usda.gov/survey/geography/mlra/index.html)

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service. 2010. *Field indicators of hydric soils in the United States, Version 7.0*. ed. L. M. Vasilas, G. W. Hurt, and C. V. Noble. Washington, DC: USDA NRCS in cooperation with the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils. (http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/)

USDA Soil Conservation Service. 1994. Changes in hydric soils of the United States. *Federal Register* 59(133):35680–35681, July 13, 1994.

U.S. Department of the Interior (USDI) Bureau of Land Management. 1996. *Sampling vegetation attributes*. BLM/RS/ST-96/002+1730. Denver, CO.

Vepraskas, M. J. 1992. *Redoximorphic features for identifying aquic conditions*. Technical Bulletin 301. Raleigh, NC: North Carolina Agricultural Research Service, North Carolina State Univ.

Vepraskas, M. J., and S. W. Sprecher 1997. *Aquic conditions and hydric soils: The problem soils*. Special Publication Number 50. Madison, WI: Soil Science Society of America.

Wakeley, J. S., and R. W. Lichvar. 1997. Disagreement between plot-based prevalence indices and dominance ratios in evaluations of wetland vegetation. *Wetlands* 17:301–309.

Wentworth, T. R., G. P. Johnson, and R. L. Kologiski. 1988. Designation of wetlands by weighted averages of vegetation data: A preliminary evaluation. *Water Resources Bulletin* 24:389–396.

Wright, H., B. Coffin, and N. Aaseng, eds. 1992. *The patterned peatlands of Minnesota*. Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota Press.

Appendix A: Glossary

This glossary is intended to supplement those given in the Corps Manual and other available sources. See the following publications for terms not listed here:

- Corps Manual (Environmental Laboratory 1987) (http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/wetlands/pdfs/wlman87.pdf).
- Field Indicators of Hydric Soils in the United States (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010) (http://soils.usda.gov/use/hydric/).
- National Soil Survey Handbook, Part 629 (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2005) (ftp://ftp-fc.sc.egov.usda.gov/NSSC/Soil_Survey_Handbook/629_glossary.pdf).

Absolute cover. In vegetation sampling, the percentage of the ground surface that is covered by the aerial portions (leaves and stems) of a plant species when viewed from above. Due to overlapping plant canopies, the sum of absolute cover values for all species in a community or stratum may exceed 100 percent. In contrast, "relative cover" is the absolute cover of a species divided by the total coverage of all species in that stratum, expressed as a percent. Relative cover cannot be used to calculate the prevalence index.

Aquitard. A layer of soil or rock that retards the downward flow of water and is capable of perching water above it. For the purposes of this supplement, the term aquitard also includes the term aquiclude, which is a soil or rock layer that is incapable of transmitting significant quantities of water under ordinary hydraulic gradients.

Contrast. The color difference between a redox concentration and the dominant matrix color. Differences are classified as faint, distinct, or prominent and are defined in the glossary of USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (2010) and illustrated in Table A1.

Table A1. Tabular key for contrast determinations using Munsell notation.

Hues are the same (Δ h = 0)		
Δ Value	**Δ Chroma**	**Contrast**
0	≤1	Faint
0	2	Distinct
0	3	Distinct
0	≥4	Prominent
1	≤1	Faint
1	2	Distinct
1	3	Distinct
1	≥4	Prominent
≤2	≤1	Faint
≤2	2	Distinct
≤2	3	Distinct
≤2	≥4	Prominent
3	≤1	Distinct
3	2	Distinct
3	3	Distinct
3	≥4	Prominent
≥4	---	Prominent

Hues differ by 2 pages (Δ h = 2)		
Δ Value	**Δ Chroma**	**Contrast**
0	0	Faint
0	1	Distinct
0	≥2	Prominent
1	≤1	Distinct
1	≥2	Prominent
≥2	—	Prominent

Hues differ by 1 page (Δ h = 1)		
Δ Value	**Δ Chroma**	**Contrast**
0	≤1	Faint
0	2	Distinct
0	≥3	Prominent
1	≤1	Faint
1	2	Distinct
1	≥3	Prominent
2	≤1	Distinct
2	2	Distinct
2	≥3	Prominent
≥3	---	Prominent

Hues differ by 3 or more pages (Δ h ≥ 3)		
Δ Value	**Δ Chroma**	**Contrast**
Color contrast is prominent, except for low chroma and value.		Prominent

Note: If both colors have values of ≤3 and chromas of ≤2, the color contrast is Faint (regardless of the difference in hue).

Adapted from USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (2002)

Depleted matrix. The volume of a soil horizon or subhorizon from which iron has been removed or transformed by processes of reduction and translocation to create colors of low chroma and high value. A, E, and calcic horizons may have low chromas and high values and may therefore be mistaken for a depleted matrix. However, they are excluded from the concept of depleted matrix unless common or many, distinct or prominent redox concentrations as soft masses or pore linings are present. In some places the depleted matrix may change color upon exposure to air (reduced matrix); this phenomenon is included in the concept of depleted matrix. The following combinations of value and chroma identify a depleted matrix:

- Matrix value of 5 or more and chroma of 1, with or without redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings, or
- Matrix value of 6 or more and chroma of 2 or 1, with or without redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings, or
- Matrix value of 4 or 5 and chroma of 2, with 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings, or
- Matrix value of 4 and chroma of 1, with 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations occurring as soft masses and/or pore linings (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

Common (2 to less than 20 percent) to many (20 percent or more) redox concentrations (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2002) are required in soils with matrix colors of 4/1, 4/2, and 5/2 (Figure A1). Redox concentrations include iron and manganese masses and pore linings (Vepraskas 1992). See “contrast” in this glossary for the definitions of “distinct” and “prominent.”

Diameter at breast height (DBH). A standard method of expressing the diameter of the trunk or bole measured at 1.37 meters (4.5 ft) above the ground. On sloping ground, measurements should be taken from the uphill side of the trunk.

Diapause. A period during which growth or development is suspended and physiological activity is diminished, as in certain aquatic invertebrates in response to drying of temporary wetlands.

Distinct. See Contrast.

Figure A1. Illustration of values and chromas that require 2 percent or more distinct or prominent redox concentrations and those that do not, for hue 10YR, to meet the definition of a depleted matrix. *Due to inaccurate color reproduction, do not use this page to determine soil colors in the field.* Background image from the Munsell Soil Color Charts reprinted courtesy of Munsell Color Services Lab, a part of X-Rite, Inc. (Gretag/Macbeth 2000).

Episaturation. Condition in which the soil is saturated with water at or near the surface, but also has one or more unsaturated layers below the saturated zone. The zone of saturation is perched on top of a relatively impermeable layer.

Flark-and-strang topography. Microtopographic relief consisting of flarks (linear pools or swales) and strangs or strings (low ridges) oriented perpendicular to the direction of water flow in patterned fens, bogs, and other peatlands (Foster and King 1984).

Fragmental soil material. Soil material that consists of 90 percent or more rock fragments; less than 10 percent of the soil consists of particles 2 mm or smaller (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

Gleyed matrix. A gleyed matrix has one of the following combinations of hue, value, and chroma and the soil is not glauconitic (Figure A2):

- 10Y, 5GY, 10GY, 10G, 5BG, 10BG, 5B, 10B, or 5PB with value of 4 or more and chroma of 1; or
- 5G with value of 4 or more and chroma of 1 or 2; or
- N with value of 4 or more (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2010).

Growing season. In the Northcentral and Northeast Region, growing season dates are determined through onsite observations of the following indicators of biological activity in a given year: (1) above-ground growth and development of vascular plants and/or (2) soil temperature (see Chapter 4 for details). If onsite data gathering is not practical, growing season dates may be approximated by using WETS tables available from the NRCS National Water and Climate Center to determine the median dates of 28 °F (−2.2 °C) air temperatures in spring and fall based on long-term records gathered at the nearest appropriate National Weather Service meteorological station.

High pH. pH of 7.9 or higher. Includes Moderately Alkaline, Strongly Alkaline, and Very Strongly Alkaline (USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service 2002).

Hummock. A low mound, ridge, or microtopographic high. In wet areas, plants growing on hummocks may avoid some of the deleterious effects of inundation or shallow water tables.

Layer(s). A soil horizon, subhorizon, or combination of contiguous horizons or subhorizons sharing at least one property referred to in the indicators.

Figure A2. For hydric soil determinations, a gleyed matrix has the hues and chroma identified in this illustration with a value of 4 or more. *Due to inaccurate color reproduction, do not use this page to determine soil colors in the field.* Background image from the Munsell Soil Color Charts reprinted courtesy of Munsell Color Services Lab, a part of X-Rite, Inc. (Gretag/Macbeth 2000).

Nodules and concretions. Irregularly shaped, firm to extremely firm accumulations of iron and manganese oxides. When broken open, nodules have uniform internal structure whereas concretions have concentric layers (Vepraskas 1992).

Ped. A unit of soil structure, such as a block, column, granule, plate, or prism, formed by natural processes.

Prominent. See Contrast.

Red parent material. Parent material with a natural inherent reddish color attributable to the presence of iron oxides occurring as coatings on and occluded within the mineral grains. Soils that formed in red parent material have conditions that greatly retard the development and extent of the redoximorphic features that normally occur under prolonged aquic conditions. Most commonly, the material consists of dark red, consolidated Mesozoic or Paleozoic sedimentary rocks, such as shale, siltstone, and sandstone, or alluvial materials derived from such rocks. Assistance from a local soil scientist may be needed to determine where red parent material occurs.

Reduced matrix. Soil matrix that has a low chroma in situ due to presence of reduced iron, but whose color changes in hue or chroma when exposed to air as Fe^{2+} is oxidized to Fe^{3+} (Vepraskas 1992).

Saturation. For wetland delineation purposes, a soil layer is saturated if virtually all pores between soil particles are filled with water (National Research Council 1995, Vepraskas and Sprecher 1997). This definition includes part of the capillary fringe above the water table (i.e., the tension-saturated zone) in which soil water content is approximately equal to that below the water table (Freeze and Cherry 1979).

Tussock. A plant growth form, generally in grasses or sedges, in which plants grow in tufts or clumps bound together by roots and elevated above the substrate.

Within. When referring to specific hydric soil indicator depth requirements, “within” means not beyond in depth. “Within a depth of 15 cm,” for example indicates that the depth is less than or equal to 15 cm.

Appendix B: Point-Intercept Sampling Procedure for Determining Hydrophytic Vegetation

The following procedure for point-intercept sampling is an alternative to plot-based sampling methods to estimate the abundance of plant species in a community. The approach may be used with the approval of the appropriate Corps of Engineers District to evaluate vegetation as part of a wetland delineation. Advantages of point-intercept sampling include better quantification of plant species abundance and reduced bias compared with visual estimates of cover. The method is useful in communities with high species diversity, and in areas where vegetation is patchy or heterogeneous, making it difficult to identify representative locations for plot sampling. Disadvantages include the increased time required for sampling and the need for vegetation units large enough to permit the establishment of one or more transect lines within them. The approach also assumes that soil and hydrologic conditions are uniform across the area where transects are located. In particular, transects should not cross the wetland boundary. Point-intercept sampling is generally used with a transect-based prevalence index (see below) to determine whether vegetation is hydrophytic.

In point-intercept sampling, plant occurrence is determined at points located at fixed intervals along one or more transects established in random locations within the plant community or vegetation unit. If a transect is being used to sample the vegetation near a wetland boundary, the transect should be placed parallel to the boundary and should not cross either the wetland boundary or into other communities. Usually a measuring tape is laid on the ground and used for the transect line. Transect length depends upon the size and complexity of the plant community and may range from 100 to 300 ft (30 to 90 m) or more. Plant occurrence data are collected at fixed intervals along the line, for example every 2 ft (0.6 m). At each interval, a “hit” on a species is recorded if a vertical line at that point would intercept the stem or foliage of that species. Only one “hit” is recorded for a species at a point even if the same species would be intercepted more than once at that point. Vertical intercepts can be determined using a long pin or rod protruding into and through the various vegetation layers, a sighting device (e.g., for the canopy), or an imaginary vertical line. The total number of “hits” for each species along the transect is then determined. The result is a list of species and their frequencies of occurrence along the line (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974; Tiner 1999). Species are then categorized by wetland indicator status (i.e., OBL, FACW, FAC, FACU, or UPL), the total number of hits determined within each category, and the data used to calculate a transect-based prevalence index. The formula is similar to that given in Chapter 2 for the plot-based prevalence index (see Indicator 3), except that frequencies are used in place of cover estimates. The community is hydrophytic if the prevalence index is 3.0 or less. To be valid, more than 80 percent of “hits” on the transect must be of species that have been identified correctly and placed in an indicator category.

The transect-based prevalence index is calculated using the following formula:

$$PI = \frac{F_{OBL} + 2F_{FACW} + 3F_{FAC} + 4F_{FACU} + 5F_{UPL}}{F_{OBL} + F_{FACW} + F_{FAC} + F_{FACU} + F_{UPL}}$$

where:

PI = Prevalence index;
F_{OBL} = Frequency of obligate (OBL) plant species;
F_{FACW} = Frequency of facultative wetland (FACW) plant species;
F_{FAC} = Frequency of facultative (FAC) plant species;
F_{FACU} = Frequency of facultative upland (FACU) plant species;
F_{UPL} = Frequency of upland (UPL) plant species.

Appendix C: Data Form

WETLAND DETERMINATION DATA FORM – Northcentral and Northeast Region

Project/Site: ____________________ City/County: ____________________ Sampling Date: __________

Applicant/Owner: ____________________ State: ______ Sampling Point: __________

Investigator(s): ____________________ Section, Township, Range: ____________________

Landform (hillslope, terrace, etc.): __________ Local relief (concave, convex, none): __________ Slope (%): ______

Subregion (LRR or MLRA): __________ Lat: __________ Long: __________ Datum: __________

Soil Map Unit Name: ____________________ NWI classification: __________

Are climatic / hydrologic conditions on the site typical for this time of year? Yes ______ No ______ (If no, explain in Remarks.)

Are Vegetation ______, Soil ______, or Hydrology ______ significantly disturbed? Are "Normal Circumstances" present? Yes ______ No______

Are Vegetation ______, Soil ______, or Hydrology ______ naturally problematic? (If needed, explain any answers in Remarks.)

SUMMARY OF FINDINGS – Attach site map showing sampling point locations, transects, important features, etc.

Hydrophytic Vegetation Present? Yes _______ No Hydric Soil Present? Yes _______ No Wetland Hydrology Present? Yes _______ No	**Is the Sampled Area within a Wetland?** **Yes _______ No** If yes, optional Wetland Site ID: ____________________

Remarks: (Explain alternative procedures here or in a separate report.)

HYDROLOGY

Wetland Hydrology Indicators:

Primary Indicators (minimum of one is required; check all that apply)

___ Surface Water (A1)
___ High Water Table (A2)
___ Saturation (A3)
___ Water Marks (B1)
___ Sediment Deposits (B2)
___ Drift Deposits (B3)
___ Algal Mat or Crust (B4)
___ Iron Deposits (B5)
___ Inundation Visible on Aerial Imagery (B7)
___ Sparsely Vegetated Concave Surface (B8)
___ Water-Stained Leaves (B9)
___ Aquatic Fauna (B13)
___ Marl Deposits (B15)
___ Hydrogen Sulfide Odor (C1)
___ Oxidized Rhizospheres on Living Roots (C3)
___ Presence of Reduced Iron (C4)
___ Recent Iron Reduction in Tilled Soils (C6)
___ Thin Muck Surface (C7)
___ Other (Explain in Remarks)

Secondary Indicators (minimum of two required)

___ Surface Soil Cracks (B6)
___ Drainage Patterns (B10)
___ Moss Trim Lines (B16)
___ Dry-Season Water Table (C2)
___ Crayfish Burrows (C8)
___ Saturation Visible on Aerial Imagery (C9)
___ Stunted or Stressed Plants (D1)
___ Geomorphic Position (D2)
___ Shallow Aquitard (D3)
___ Microtopographic Relief (D4)
___ FAC-Neutral Test (D5)

Field Observations:

Surface Water Present? Yes _____ No _____ Depth (inches):

Water Table Present? Yes _____ No _____ Depth (inches):

Saturation Present? (includes capillary fringe) Yes _____ No _____ Depth (inches):

Wetland Hydrology Present? Yes ______ No

Describe Recorded Data (stream gauge, monitoring well, aerial photos, previous inspections), if available:

Remarks:

VEGETATION – Use scientific names of plants.

Sampling Point: ____________

Tree Stratum (Plot size: ______________)	Absolute % Cover	Dominant Species?	Indicator Status
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
	________ = Total Cover		
Sapling/Shrub Stratum (Plot size: ______________)			
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
	________ = Total Cover		
Herb Stratum (Plot size: ______________)			
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			
10.			
11.			
12.			
	________ = Total Cover		
Woody Vine Stratum (Plot size: ______________)			
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
	________ = Total Cover		

Dominance Test worksheet:

Number of Dominant Species That Are OBL, FACW, or FAC: ____________ (A)

Total Number of Dominant Species Across All Strata: ____________ (B)

Percent of Dominant Species That Are OBL, FACW, or FAC: ____________ (A/B)

Prevalence Index worksheet:

Total % Cover of:		Multiply by:	
OBL species	__________	x 1 =	__________
FACW species	__________	x 2 =	__________
FAC species	__________	x 3 =	__________
FACU species	__________	x 4 =	__________
UPL species	__________	x 5 =	__________
Column Totals:	__________ (A)		__________ (B)

Prevalence Index = B/A =

Hydrophytic Vegetation Indicators:

- ___ 1 - Rapid Test for Hydrophytic Vegetation
- ___ 2 - Dominance Test is >50%
- ___ 3 - Prevalence Index is ≤3.0[1]
- ___ 4 - Morphological Adaptations[1] (Provide supporting data in Remarks or on a separate sheet)
- ___ Problematic Hydrophytic Vegetation[1] (Explain)

[1]Indicators of hydric soil and wetland hydrology must be present, unless disturbed or problematic.

Definitions of Vegetation Strata:

Tree – Woody plants 3 in. (7.6 cm) or more in diameter at breast height (DBH), regardless of height.

Sapling/shrub – Woody plants less than 3 in. DBH and greater than or equal to 3.28 ft (1 m) tall.

Herb – All herbaceous (non-woody) plants, regardless of size, and woody plants less than 3.28 ft tall.

Woody vines – All woody vines greater than 3.28 ft in height.

Hydrophytic Vegetation Present? **Yes** ______ **No**

Remarks: (Include photo numbers here or on a separate sheet.)

SOIL

Sampling Point: __________

Profile Description: (Describe to the depth needed to document the indicator or confirm the absence of indicators.)

Depth	Matrix		Redox Features					
(inches)	Color (moist)	%	Color (moist)	%	Type[1]	Loc[2]	Texture	Remarks

[1]Type: C=Concentration, D=Depletion, RM=Reduced Matrix, MS=Masked Sand Grains. [2]Location: PL=Pore Lining, M=Matrix.

Hydric Soil Indicators:

___ Histosol (A1)
___ Histic Epipedon (A2)
___ Black Histic (A3)
___ Hydrogen Sulfide (A4)
___ Stratified Layers (A5)
___ Depleted Below Dark Surface (A11)
___ Thick Dark Surface (A12)
___ Sandy Mucky Mineral (S1)
___ Sandy Gleyed Matrix (S4)
___ Sandy Redox (S5)
___ Stripped Matrix (S6)
___ Dark Surface (S7) (**LRR R, MLRA 149B**)
___ Polyvalue Below Surface (S8) (**LRR R, MLRA 149B**)
___ Thin Dark Surface (S9) (**LRR R, MLRA 149B**)
___ Loamy Mucky Mineral (F1) (**LRR K, L**)
___ Loamy Gleyed Matrix (F2)
___ Depleted Matrix (F3)
___ Redox Dark Surface (F6)
___ Depleted Dark Surface (F7)
___ Redox Depressions (F8)

Indicators for Problematic Hydric Soils[3]:

___ 2 cm Muck (A10) (**LRR K, L, MLRA 149B**)
___ Coast Prairie Redox (A16) (**LRR K, L, R**)
___ 5 cm Mucky Peat or Peat (S3) (**LRR K, L, R**)
___ Dark Surface (S7) (**LRR K, L, M**)
___ Polyvalue Below Surface (S8) (**LRR K, L**)
___ Thin Dark Surface (S9) (**LRR K, L**)
___ Iron-Manganese Masses (F12) (**LRR K, L, R**)
___ Piedmont Floodplain Soils (F19) (**MLRA 149B**)
___ Mesic Spodic (TA6) (**MLRA 144A, 145, 149B**)
___ Red Parent Material (F21)
___ Very Shallow Dark Surface (TF12)
___ Other (Explain in Remarks)

[3]Indicators of hydrophytic vegetation and wetland hydrology must be present, unless disturbed or problematic.

Restrictive Layer (if observed):

Type:____________________________

Depth (inches):__________________

Hydric Soil Present? Yes ______ No ______

Remarks:

REPORT DOCUMENTATION PAGE

Form Approved
OMB No. 0704-0188

1. REPORT DATE ***(DD-MM-YYYY)***	**2. REPORT TYPE**	**3. DATES COVERED** ***(From - To)***
January 2012	Final report	

4. TITLE AND SUBTITLE

Regional Supplement to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual: Northcentral and Northeast Region (Version 2.0)

5a. CONTRACT NUMBER

5b. GRANT NUMBER

5c. PROGRAM ELEMENT NUMBER

6. AUTHOR(S)

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

5d. PROJECT NUMBER

5e. TASK NUMBER

5f. WORK UNIT NUMBER

7. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)

U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center
Environmental Laboratory
3909 Halls Ferry Road
Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199

8. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER

ERDC/EL TR-12-1

9. SPONSORING / MONITORING AGENCY NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)

Headquarters U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

10. SPONSOR/MONITOR'S ACRONYM(S)

11. SPONSOR/MONITOR'S REPORT NUMBER(S)

12. DISTRIBUTION / AVAILABILITY STATEMENT

Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

13. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

14. ABSTRACT

This document is one of a series of Regional Supplements to the Corps of Engineers Wetland Delineation Manual, which provides technical guidance and procedures for identifying and delineating wetlands that may be subject to regulatory jurisdiction under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act or Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act. The development of Regional Supplements is part of a nation-wide effort to address regional wetland characteristics and improve the accuracy and efficiency of wetland-delineation procedures. This supplement is applicable to the Northcentral and Northeast Region, which consists of all or portions of 15 states: Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Maine, Massachusetts, Michigan, Minnesota, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Wisconsin.

15. SUBJECT TERMS

Delineation	Plant communities	Vegetation
Hydrology	Soil	Wetlands

16. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF:			**17. LIMITATION OF ABSTRACT**	**18. NUMBER OF PAGES**	**19a. NAME OF RESPONSIBLE PERSON**
a. REPORT	**b. ABSTRACT**	**c. THIS PAGE**			**19b. TELEPHONE NUMBER** ***(include area code)***
UNCLASSIFIED	UNCLASSIFIED	UNCLASSIFIED		175	

Standard Form 298 (Rev. 8-98)
Prescribed by ANSI Std. 239.18

Appendix C – Sample Chain of Custody Form

TRACE

the science of compliance

phone 231.773.5998
toll-free 800.733.5998
fax 231.773.6537

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY RECORD

Trace Analytical Laboratories, Inc.
2241 Black Creek Road
Muskegon, MI 49444-2673
www.trace-labs.com

Page______of______

TRACE ID NO.

Report Results To:

Company Name:

Report to:

Mailing Address:

City, State, Zip Code:

Phone: Fax:

Email Address:

Cell #: Sampled by:

Project Name & #:

Bill To:

Billing Address (if different) __________

City, State, Zip Code __________

Attn:__________ Phone: __________ PO #: __________

TRACE USE ONLY

Logged By: Checked By:

Received on ice: Yes No Preservative Checked: Yes No N/A

Soil Volatiles Preserved: MeOH Low Level Lab Sampling Time:

Regulatory Requirements		Turnaround Requirements		Matrix Key	
MERA TMDL's	☐	Standard ☐		S = Soil/Solid	WI = Wipes
Drinking Water	☐	3 Day* ☐	4 Day* ☐	W = Water	LW = Liquid Waste
NPDES	☐	48 Hour* ☐	24 Hour* ☐	SL = Sludge	A = Air
Special	☐	* Requires Prior Approval		OI = Oil	D = Drinking Water

Request for Analytical Services

TRACE NO.	DATE TAKEN	TIME TAKEN	CLIENT SAMPLE ID	METALS FIELD FILTERED	MATRIX	NUMBER OF CONTAINERS	PRESERVATION: COOL	HCL	HNO3	H_2SO_4	NaOH	Other	ANALYSIS REQUESTED										REMARKS	Possible Health Hazards

Please Sign

RELEASED BY	RECEIVED BY	DATE	TIME	RELEASED BY	RECEIVED BY	DATE	TIME	RELEASED BY	RECEIVED BY	DATE	TIME
1)				2)				3)			
4)				5)				6)			